FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

MASTER OF BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION (MBA)

SEMESTER-II, PAPER-II

Lesson Writers

Prof. V. Chandra Sekhara Rao
Professor (Retd.),
Dept. of Commerce & Business Administration
Acharya Nagarjuna University,

Dr. R. Srinivasa Rao
Asst. Professor
Department of Commerce
T.J.P.S. College, Guntur

Dr. Venu Gopalarao Chowdary
Associate Professor
Department of MBA
KL University

Dr. Shaik Zakir Hussain
Dept. of International Business Studies
Acharya Nagarjuna University

Lesson Writer & Editor
Prof. R. Siva Rama Prasad
Dean, Faculty of Commerce & Management Studies
Acharya Nagarjuna University

Academic Advisor
Prof. R. Siva Rama Prasad
Dean, Faculty of Commerce & Management Studies
Acharya Nagarjuna University

DIRECTOR, I/c.
PROF. V. VENKATESWARLU
M.A., M.P.S., M.S.W., M.Phil., Ph.D.
CENTRE FOR DISTANCE EDUCATION
ACHARYA NAGARJUNA UNIVERSITY
NAGARJUNA NAGAR 522 510
Ph: 0863-2346222, 2346208
0863- 2346259 (Study Material)
Website www.anucde.info
E-mail: anucdedirector@gmail.com

M.B.A. : FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

First Edition : 2025

No. of Copies :

This book is exclusively prepared for the use of students of Master of Business Administration, Centre for Distance Education, Acharya Nagarjuna University and this book is meant for limited circulation only.

Published by:

Prof. V. Venkateswarlu,
Director
Centre for Distance Education,
Acharya Nagarjuna University

Printed at:

FOREWORD

Since its establishment in 1976, Acharya Nagarjuna University has been forging ahead in the path of progress and dynamism, offering a variety of courses and research contributions. I am extremely happy that by gaining 'A+' grade from the NAAC in the year 2024, Acharya Nagarjuna University is offering educational opportunities at the UG, PG levels apart from research degrees to students from over 221 affiliated colleges spread over the two districts of Guntur and Prakasam.

The University has also started the Centre for Distance Education in 2003-04 with the aim of taking higher education to the door step of all the sectors of the society. The centre will be a great help to those who cannot join in colleges, those who cannot afford the exorbitant fees as regular students, and even to housewives desirous of pursuing higher studies. Acharya Nagarjuna University has started offering B.Sc., B.A., B.B.A., and B.Com courses at the Degree level and M.A., M.Com., M.Sc., M.B.A., and L.L.M., courses at the PG level from the academic year 2003-2004 onwards.

To facilitate easier understanding by students studying through the distance mode, these self-instruction materials have been prepared by eminent and experienced teachers. The lessons have been drafted with great care and expertise in the stipulated time by these teachers. Constructive ideas and scholarly suggestions are welcome from students and teachers involved respectively. Such ideas will be incorporated for the greater efficacy of this distance mode of education. For clarification of doubts and feedback, weekly classes and contact classes will be arranged at the UG and PG levels respectively.

It is my aim that students getting higher education through the Centre for Distance Education should improve their qualification, have better employment opportunities and in turn be part of country's progress. It is my fond desire that in the years to come, the Centre for Distance Education will go from strength to strength in the form of new courses and by catering to larger number of people. My congratulations to all the Directors, Academic Coordinators, Editors and Lesson-writers of the Centre who have helped in these endeavors.

Prof. K. Gangadhara Rao
M.Tech., Ph.D.,
Vice-Chancellor I/c
Acharya Nagarjuna University.

Master of Business Administration (M.B.A)
Syllabus
202EM24: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

On successful completion of the course the learner will be able to:

1. To Provide an in-depth view of the process in financial management of the firm
2. Develop knowledge on the allocation, management and funding of financial resources.
3. Improving students' understanding of the time value of money concept and the role of a finance manager in the current competitive business scenario.
4. Enhancing student's ability in short-term dealing with day-to-day working capital decision and also longer-term dealing, which involves major capital investment decisions and raising long-term finance.
5. To know different short term and long-term finance markets

Unit- I: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT: -

Financial Management and the goals of the firm – Organization of finance function –Time Value of Money-Agency conflict

Unit-II: INVESTMENT DECISIONS:

Capital budgeting – Types of Capital budgeting process – Cash flows estimation and measurement – Investment criterion – Methods of appraisal: Traditional Techniques and Discounted Cash Flow Methods – NPV vs IRR - Capital rationing – Risk analysis in capital budgeting.

Unit-III: FINANCE DECISIONS:

Leverage – Concept of leverage – Operating Leverage – Break-even analysis – Financial leverage – EBIT – EPS analysis – Combined leverage.

CAPITAL STRUCTURE: Capital Structure Theories – Net Income approach – Net operating income approach – Traditional view – MM Hypothesis.

COST OF CAPITAL: Cost of debt – cost of preference capital – Cost of equity capital – cost of external equity – Cost of retained earnings - Weighted average cost of capital.

Unit-IV: DIVIDEND DECISIONS:–

Dividend Theories – Traditional position – Walter's Model – Gordon's Model – M-M Hypothesis.

Unit-V: WORKING CAPITAL MANAGEMENT:

Concepts of working capital – Determinants of working capital – Optimum level of current assets – Liquidity Vs. Profitability – Risk – Return tangle – Estimating working capital needs – Financing and control of working capital – Inventory Management – Cash Management.

Reference Books:

1. Jonthan Berk Financial Management, Pearson, 2010.
2. Van Home. James C. "Financial Management", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi.
3. Hampton, John J. "Financial Decision Making", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi.
4. Salmon,Ezra and Pringle,John.J."An Introduction to Financial Management ", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi.
5. Khan, M.Y. & Jain P.K "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub. Co. Ltd New Delhi.
6. Panday, I.M. "Financial Management", Vikas Publishing House (P) Ltd.
7. Chandra, Prasanna "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub.Co.Ltd, New Delhi.
8. Kulkarni, P.V. "Financial Management", Himalaya Publishing House, Bombay.

MODEL QUESTION PAPER

MBA – Semester II

202EM24: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Time: 3 Hours **Maximum Marks: 70**

SECTION – A : *(Short Answer Type Questions)*
Answer ANY FIVE questions
Each question carries 3 marks

(5 × 3 = 15 Marks)

1. Explain the goals of financial management.
2. What is Time Value of Money? Give an example.
3. Distinguish between NPV and IRR methods of capital budgeting.
4. What is Operating Leverage? How is it measured?
5. Define Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC).
6. Explain Walter's Model of dividend policy.
7. What are the determinants of working capital?
8. Write a brief note on Cash Management techniques.
9. List out the determinants of working capital
10. Explain the Net Income approach

SECTION – B : *(Essay Type / Analytical Questions)*
Answer ANY FIVE questions
Each question carries 8 marks

(5 × 8 = 40 Marks)

9. (a) Explain different methods of capital budgeting with their merits and limitations.

    (OR)

    (b) Define Financial management and Explain in detail about the goals of Firm
10. (a) Discuss Capital Structure theories — NI, NOI, Traditional, and MM Hypothesis.

    (OR)

    (b) Explain about the role and significance of risk analysis in capital budgeting

11. (a) Define Operating, Financial, and Combined Leverage. Demonstrate their relationship using suitable examples.

    (OR)

    (b) Explain about the concept of Leverage and differentiate the uses of Operating leverage and financial leverage
12. (a) Compare and contrast Walter's Model and Gordon's Model on dividend decisions.

    (OR)

    (b) Describe the main features of MM Hypothesis in dividend decisions

13. (a) Explain the concepts of Working Capital and discuss techniques for estimating working capital requirements in a firm.

    (OR)

    (b) Explain about the different sources of financing and techniques for Controlling working capital

SECTION – C

(Case Study / Numerical Problem – Compulsory)

(1 × 15 = 15 Marks)

14. **Case/Numerical Problem: Apollo Electronics Ltd. – Capital Budgeting Decision**

Apollo Electronics Ltd., a successful manufacturer of smart consumer appliances in India, is considering the launch of a **next-generation smart air purifier**. To support this product line, the company proposes to set up an **automated production facility**.

Project Investment Details

Particulars	Value
Initial Investment Required	₹20 crores
Estimated Useful Life	5 Years
Expected Annual Net Cash Inflows	₹6 crores
Estimated Salvage Value at end of year 5	₹2 crores
Corporate Tax Rate	30%
Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC)	12%

The finance team suggests evaluating the project using **NPV and IRR methods**, given the strategic importance and long-term financial impact.

Management emphasizes that any decision must consider:

- Risk associated with technological advancement in the market
- Potential cost advantages from automation
- Effect of expansion on shareholder value

The Board of Directors expects a thorough capital budgeting analysis before making a decision.

Discussion / Analytical Questions

(Students should answer all questions based on the given data)

1. **Compute the Net Present Value (NPV)** of the project and comment on whether the project should be accepted.
2. **Calculate the Internal Rate of Return (IRR)** and compare it with the company's WACC (12%). Should the project be considered financially viable?
3. Explain how inclusion of the **terminal salvage value** influences the capital budgeting decision.
4. Discuss at least **three strategic risks** that Apollo Electronics Ltd. must evaluate before finalizing the investment.
5. If cash inflows are uncertain due to rapid changes in smart device technology, which **risk analysis techniques** may be applied in capital budgeting

CONTENTS

LESSON - 1

INTRODUCTION TO FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:
• Define the concept and nature of financial management.
• Explain the scope and significance of financial management in business decision-making.
• Distinguish between profit maximization and wealth maximization objectives of a firm.
• Understand the primary goals of financial management and their impact on corporate value.
• Apply basic concepts of financial management to real-world business situations.

STRUCTURE

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Financial management is a critical and dynamic discipline that governs how an organization acquires, allocates and manages financial resources to achieve its goals. Serving as both an art and a science, it is deeply integrated into every aspect of business activity. Finance is often compared to the lifeblood of an organization — without it, no business can sustain operations, grow, or survive. This lesson explores the meaning, evolution, scope, functions, objectives, and real-world relevance of financial management.

1.2. MEANING AND DEFINITION OF FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Finance refers to the science of money, involving the acquisition of funds from savers and their allocation to productive uses. Financial management builds on this foundation by applying managerial principles to financial decisions of the firm.

Financial management is defined as the managerial activity concerned with planning, procuring, utilizing, and controlling the firm's financial resources. According to Solomon, it deals with "the efficient use of capital funds." S.C. Kuchal defines it as the process of procuring funds and using them effectively in business. J.L. Massie emphasizes its operational nature in ensuring the availability and utilization of funds for efficient operations.

Financial management guides decisions such as acquiring assets, financing operations, evaluating investments, and distributing profits. It is central to profitability, growth, risk management, and the long-term value of the firm.

1.3. EVOLUTION OF FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

1.3.1 Traditional Approach : In the period from the 1920s to 1940s, finance was viewed primarily as a function concerned with raising funds from external sources. The focus was on legal and institutional aspects of financing rather than internal resource allocation or profitability. Working capital management was largely ignored. This outsider-oriented approach restricted financial decision-making to procurement of long-term funds.:

1.3.2 Transition Period (1950s–1970s) : During the second half of the 20th century, the importance of optimal allocation of scarce capital resources emerged. The introduction of funds-flow statements, ratio analysis, cost of capital, EPS analysis, capital structure theories and portfolio theory transformed the field. Financial management began to incorporate analytical tools and quantitative techniques.

1.3.3 Modern Strategic Approach : The modern approach views financial management as an integral part of strategic business management. It includes raising funds, allocating resources, managing risk, optimizing capital structure, and maximizing shareholder value. Financial managers now interact with capital markets, evaluate investments, plan cash flows, manage foreign exchange and apply technology-driven analytics.

1.4. OBJECTIVES OF FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

Financial management revolves around a set of well-defined objectives that guide decision-making in all areas of corporate finance investment, financing, dividend policy, working capital, and risk management. These objectives determine how firms operate, grow, and create value for shareholders and other stakeholders.

Historically, the earliest objective was profit maximization, but as the business environment evolved, financial theory gradually shifted toward wealth maximization—today's globally accepted goal. Additional supporting objectives—such as liquidity, solvency, efficiency, and growth—ensure that financial decisions contribute to long-term stability and sustainability.

1.5 PROFIT MAXIMIZATION

Profit maximization refers to the ability of a business to generate the highest possible financial surplus from its operations. It evaluates decisions based on their effect on accounting profit or earnings per share (EPS). The logic is straightforward: higher profits indicate better performance and greater rewards for owners.
However, profit maximization suffers from key limitations:
It ignores risk, timing of returns, and long-term sustainability.
Numerical Example: Profit Maximization Without Risk Consideration

A company is evaluating two projects:

Project	Initial Investment	Expected Profit	Risk Level
A	₹10,00,000	₹2,50,000	High
B	₹10,00,000	₹2,50,000	Low

Under profit maximization, both projects are equal because profits are identical.
However, Project A carries a high probability of failure, while Project B is stable.
A profit-based decision might select either—but a rational manager would choose Project B, which has lower risk.
Interpretation : Profit maximization may drive short-term decisions—like cutting R&D—at the expense of long-term viability. Many companies that pursued aggressive profit strategies without addressing technological change (e.g., Nokia's fall in the smartphone era) suffered significant market losses.

1.6 WEALTH MAXIMIZATION

Wealth maximization (or value maximization) is the modern objective of financial management. Instead of focusing on immediate profit, it aims to maximize the market value of the firm's equity, reflecting the present value of future cash flows adjusted for risk.
This objective is superior because it:

- Considers risk: riskier cash flows are discounted more.
- Considers time value: future benefits are valued appropriately.
- Encourages long-term planning and investment.
- Aligns managerial decisions with shareholder interests.

Discounted Cash Flow (DCF) Equation for Wealth Maximization
The DCF model expresses the value of a firm (or project) as the present value of all expected future cash flows, discounted at an appropriate rate that reflects risk.
General Formula (short form of the equation) :

$$\text{Value of the Firm (V)} = \sum_{t=1}^{n} \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t}$$

If the investment has an initial outlay C_0, then:

$$\text{Net Present Value (NPV)} = \sum_{t=1}^{n} \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t} - C_0$$

Long Equation for Net Present Value (NPV)
For a project with an initial investment $C_0$and cash flows from Year 1 to Year n:

$$\text{NPV} = -C_0 + \frac{CF_1}{(1+r)^1} + \frac{CF_2}{(1+r)^2} + \frac{CF_3}{(1+r)^3} + \cdots + \frac{CF_{n-1}}{(1+r)^{n-1}} + \frac{CF_n}{(1+r)^n}$$

Explanation of the Equation
This expanded form shows:

- Each cash flow is discounted separately.
- Discounting increases with time (higher exponent).
- Initial investment is shown as a negative cash flow.
- The dots (⋯) represent continuation of the pattern for every period until year n.

This NPV is the foundation of wealth maximization.
Explanation of Notations
1. CF_t— Cash Flow at Time t

- Represents the expected net cash inflow the firm receives in period t.
- Includes revenues minus operating costs, taxes, and working capital changes.
- Can be monthly, quarterly, yearly, etc.

Examples:

- CF_1: Cash flow at the end of year 1
- CF_2: Cash flow at the end of year 2
- CF_3: Cash flow at the end of year 3, and so on.

2. r— Discount Rate

- Represents the required rate of return, cost of capital, or opportunity cost.
- Includes risk compensation.
- Higher risk → higher discount rate.

In practice:

- For firms → Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC)
- For risky projects → risk-adjusted rate

Example:
If investors require 12% return → $r = 0.12$
3. t— Time Period Index

- Denotes the time period (1,2,3, …, n) for which cash flow occurs.
- Expresses the principle of *time value of money*.
- Further cash flows are discounted more because they are less valuable today.

Example:

- $t = 1$: Year 1
- $t = 5$: Year 5
- $t = 10$: Year 10

4. n— Total Number of Periods

- The entire lifetime of the project or investment.
- Can be short-term (3 years) or long-term (20–30 years).

Example:

- A manufacturing plant might have $n = 15$years.
- A software project may have $n = 5$years.

5. C_0— Initial Investment (Cash Outflow)

- The amount invested at time zero (now).
- Included only in NPV calculation (not in the value equation).

Examples:

- Cost of machine purchase
- R&D investment
- Setting up a factory

In NPV formula, it is subtracted because it is a cash outflow.
Why This Formula Achieves Wealth Maximization

- It considers all future cash flows → holistic decision.
- It discounts them using appropriate risk-adjusted rate → incorporates uncertainty.
- It recognizes the time value of money — future cash flows are worth less today.
- A project adds value only if:

$$NPV > 0$$

Meaning: the project increases the wealth of shareholders.

Simple Numerical Example

Suppose an investment requires:

- $C_0 = ₹1,00,000$
- $r = 10\%$
- Cash flows expected:
  - $CF_1 = ₹50,000$
  - $CF_2 = ₹60,000$
  - $CF_3 = ₹70,000$

Step 1: Discount each cash flow

$$PV_1 = \frac{50,000}{1.10} = 45,455$$

$$PV_2 = \frac{60,000}{(1.10)^2} = 49,587$$

$$PV_3 = \frac{70,000}{(1.10)^3} = 52,634$$

Step 2: Add all present values

$$\text{PV of Cash Inflows} = 45,455 + 49,587 + 52,634 = 1,47,676$$

Step 3: Compute NPV

$$NPV = 1,47,676 - 1,00,000 = ₹47,676$$

Interpretation: Since NPV is positive, the project increases shareholder wealth and should be accepted.

Example 2 : Numerical Example for comparing Profit vs Wealth maximization

A company considers two projects:

Year	Project X Profit	Project Y Cash Flow
1–3	₹1,00,000 per year	₹50,000, ₹2,00,000, ₹3,00,000 (1,2, 3 years respectively)

Profit Maximization:

Project X yields steady annual profit → looks better.

Wealth Maximization (NPV-based at 10%):

PV(Y) =

$50,000/1.10 + 2,00,000/1.10^2 + 3,00,000/1.10^3$

$= 45,455 + 165,289 + 225,394 = ₹4,36,138$

Project X NPV (assuming same investment):

$1,00,000/1.10 + 1,00,000/1.10^2 + 1,00,000/1.10^3$

$= 90,909 + 82,645 + 75,132 = ₹2,48,686$

Wealth Maximization → Select Project Y

even though its first-year profit is lower than Project X.

This example shows wealth maximization provides a more realistic evaluation.

4.3 Supporting Objectives of Financial Management

Although wealth maximization is the central goal, several supporting objectives ensure the firm's financial health.

A. Liquidity Maintenance

Liquidity ensures the firm has sufficient cash to meet day-to-day obligations.
Numerical Example

A company has:
Cash: ₹50,000
Receivables: ₹1,50,000
Inventory: ₹3,00,000
Current Liabilities: ₹4,00,000
Current Ratio = 5,00,000 / 4,00,000 = 1.25
If the ideal ratio is 2:1, the company is liquidity-stressed.
This affects supplier confidence, operations, and credit ratings.

B. Solvency Preservation
Solvency ensures long-term financial stability.
Solvency ratio example:
Total Assets = ₹30,00,000
Total Debt = ₹18,00,000
Debt Ratio = 18,00,000 / 30,00,000 = 0.6 (High)
Such high leverage increases bankruptcy risk.

C. Operational Efficiency
Efficiency enhances profitability and competitiveness.
Example: Inventory Turnover
Cost of Goods Sold = ₹24,00,000
Average Inventory = ₹3,00,000
Inventory Turnover = 24,00,000 / 3,00,000 = 8 times
Higher turnover means better efficiency.

D. Growth and Expansion
Firms must grow to survive, enter new markets, and innovate.
Examples: Reliance Jio investing massively in telecom infrastructure.
TCS expanding into AI services.
Tesla investing in gigafactories for global expansion.

E. Compliance and Corporate Governance
Following legal frameworks (SEBI, Companies Act, Accounting Standards) ensures:
Correct disclosures ; Audit integrity ; Investor confidence
Failure here leads to penalties and reputational damage.

F. Balancing Stakeholder Interests
Stakeholders include employees, suppliers, customers, government, and society.
Examples: CSR spending by Indian corporates (mandatory 2%).
Fair wages for employees.
Environmentally responsible waste management.
Firms that maintain strong stakeholder relations often enjoy better market valuation.

1.7. CORE FINANCIAL DECISIONS

Financial management is built on three key decisions:

1.7.1 Investment Decisions

Investment decisions involve allocation of funds to long-term and short-term assets.

- Capital Budgeting (Long-term): Investment in fixed assets such as machinery, land or technology. Tools include NPV, IRR, payback, profitability index and real options.
  Example: Tata Motors evaluating a new EV manufacturing plant.

- Working Capital Decisions (Short-term): Managing cash, receivables, inventory and payables.
  Example: Reliance Retail optimizing inventory turnover to reduce working capital needs.

1.7.2 Financing Decisions

Financing decisions determine the combination of debt and equity used to finance assets, called the capital structure.
Firms choose from internal funds (retained earnings), external equity (shares), and debt (loans, debentures, bonds).
Example: Infosys using a mix of internal accruals and equity for expansion while minimizing costly long-term debt.

1.7.3 Dividend Decisions

Dividend decisions concern how much of the firm's profits should be distributed to shareholders and how much retained for reinvestment.
Factors include growth opportunities, shareholder preferences, cash flow conditions and taxation.
Example: Mature companies like ITC maintain steady dividends, while startups retain profits for reinvestment.

1.8. SCOPE AND FUNCTIONS OF FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

The modern scope includes both procurement and utilization of funds. Major functions include:

- Financial planning and forecasting
- Raising capital
- Investment and asset allocation
- Cash and treasury management
- Working capital management
- Dividend and profit distribution
- Financial control and analysis
- Corporate governance and compliance

Finance is now integrated with strategy, risk management, and performance monitoring.

1.9. CAPITAL STRUCTURE AND SOURCES OF FINANCE

Capital structure refers to the proportion of debt and equity used to finance the firm.
Factors influencing capital structure include risk, cost of capital, financial flexibility, tax advantages of debt, asset structure and management preferences.
Sources of finance include:

- Internal: Retained earnings, depreciation funds
- External: Shares, debentures, loans, leases, venture capital
- International: GDRs, ADRs, foreign currency loans, ECBs

Example: Adani Group uses a mix of international bonds and domestic loans for infrastructure development.

1.10. INVESTMENT APPRAISAL AND RISK–RETURN ANALYSIS

Investment appraisal uses quantitative techniques to evaluate project viability.
Key tools include:

- Net Present Value (NPV)
- Internal Rate of Return (IRR)
- Payback Period
- Profitability Index

- Real Options
- Sensitivity and Scenario Analysis

Risk–Return Trade-off:
Higher expected returns come with higher risk. Financial managers balance risk using diversification, hedging, insurance and risk assessment tools.
Example: Airlines hedge fuel price risk through futures and options contracts.

1.11. WORKING CAPITAL AND LIQUIDITY MANAGEMENT

Working capital management ensures the firm has sufficient short-term assets to meet liabilities.
Key components include:

- Cash Management
- Inventory Management
- Receivables Management
- Payables Management

Example: FMCG companies like Hindustan Unilever maintain low inventory cycles to reduce carrying costs.
Treasury management handles cash forecasting, investments, liquidity, and bank relations.

1.12. FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND OTHER BUSINESS FUNCTIONS

Financial management interacts with every other business discipline:

- Economics: Marginal analysis, supply-demand, macroeconomic impacts
- Accounting: Financial statements for decision-making
- Production: Capacity expansion, costing decisions
- Marketing: Product pricing, promotion budgets
- HR: Compensation decisions
- Law & Taxation: Compliance, tax planning
- IT: ERP systems, MIS, automation
- Operations & Supply Chain: Inventory and logistics financing

Example: New product launches require coordinated planning between marketing, production, and finance.

1.13. CORPORATE GOVERNANCE, REGULATION AND ETHICS

Financial managers must comply with:

- Company law
- SEBI guidelines
- Stock exchange regulations
- Tax laws
- International reporting standards

Ethical responsibilities include transparent reporting, fair disclosure, avoidance of fraud and responsible use of corporate funds.
Corporate governance ensures accountability, integrity and protection of stakeholder interests.

1.14. INTERNATIONAL AND TECHNOLOGICAL DIMENSIONS OF FINANCE

Globalization has made international financial management essential. Firms need to manage:

- Foreign exchange rate risk
- International financing opportunities
- Cross-border investments

- Transfer pricing
- International taxation

Technology has transformed finance through:

- ERP systems
- Data analytics
- Artificial intelligence
- Algorithmic forecasting
- Digital payments
- Blockchain applications

Example: Amazon uses predictive analytics and automated financial dashboards for global cash flow management.

1.15. PERFORMANCE MEASUREMENT AND VALUE CREATION

Performance is measured using:

- Accounting measures: ROA, ROE, margins
- Market measures: Share price, P/E ratio
- Value-based measures: EVA, MVA, DCF

These metrics guide decisions and align managerial actions with shareholder value.

1.16. CONTEMPORARY ISSUES AND REAL-WORLD APPLICATIONS

Modern financial management deals with:

- ESG (Environmental, Social, Governance) finance
- Sustainability reporting
- Cybersecurity threats
- Fintech disruptions
- Global supply chain volatility
- Inflation and interest rate shocks

Real-world examples include:

- Companies issuing green bonds
- Firms hedging commodity and currency risks
- Startups raising funds via digital platforms

Financial management is a broad, dynamic, and strategic function central to business success. It integrates investment, financing, and dividend decisions with risk management, working capital control, corporate governance, international finance and technological advancements. Its primary objective—shareholder wealth maximization—is achieved by making informed, analytical and ethical financial decisions that sustain long-term value.

1.17 SUMMARY

Financial management is the science and art of managing money in a business. It involves planning, acquiring, utilizing, and controlling financial resources to achieve the primary objective of maximizing the wealth of shareholders. Finance is often described as the lifeblood of business because no activity—whether routine operations or major expansion—can be carried out without adequate funds. Early definitions of financial management emphasized the efficient use of capital funds and the responsibility of obtaining and effectively utilizing financial resources. Over time, the focus broadened from merely raising funds to making strategic decisions that determine the size, growth, and financial direction of the firm.

The nature and scope of financial management have evolved significantly. During the 1930s and 1940s, the traditional approach confined financial management to the procurement of funds and the maintenance of liquidity, paying little attention to allocation and working capital. With the development of analytical tools in the 1950s and later decades, the modern approach expanded financial management to include the effective deployment of funds, evaluation of investment opportunities, cost of capital, capital structure, risk analysis, and financial control. Today, financial management covers three major decision areas: investment decisions, financing decisions, and dividend decisions. Investment decisions relate to the allocation of funds in long-term assets through capital budgeting and in short-term assets through working capital management. Financing decisions involve selecting appropriate sources of capital, determining the mix of debt and equity, and planning for future financial needs. Dividend decisions concern the distribution of profits between shareholders and retained earnings, balancing investor expectations with the firm's long-term financial strategy.

Financial management is a central and indispensable function of business. It is integrated with all other managerial activities and draws upon economics, accounting, law, mathematics, information technology, production, marketing, and quantitative techniques. Financial managers rely on economic principles such as marginal analysis, understand accounting information for performance evaluation, consider marketing and production strategies for estimating financial needs, and use legal and taxation knowledge for compliance and planning. The financial function also interfaces with banking, insurance, international finance, and treasury operations, especially in a globally interconnected business environment.

The objectives of financial management have also shifted from profit maximization to wealth maximization. Profit maximization, though important, is limited because it ignores risk, timing of returns, and long-term sustainability. Wealth maximization, on the other hand, focuses on increasing the market value of the firm and considers the time value of money, risk factors, cash flows, and dividend policies. This makes it a more comprehensive and widely accepted objective. Thus, financial management today is recognized as a strategic function essential for ensuring the survival, growth, and long-term value creation of the business.

1.18 KEY TERMS

Financial management, capital budgeting, capital structure, working capital, profit maximization, wealth maximization, shareholder value.

1.18.1 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

1.18.2 Short Questions

1. Define financial management.
2. What are the main functions of a financial manager?
3. Differentiate between profit maximization and wealth maximization.
4. List any three importance of financial management.

1.18.3 Essay Questions

1. Discuss the nature and scope of financial management.
2. Explain the importance of financial management in achieving business objectives.
3. Compare and contrast profit maximization and wealth maximization as objectives of a firm.

1.18.4 Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. The primary goal of financial management is to:
   a) Maximize profits
   b) Minimize costs
   c) Maximize shareholder wealth
   d) Increase sales
2. The financing decision deals with:
   a) Investment in fixed assets
   b) Sources of funds
   c) Dividend policy
   d) None of the above
3. Working capital management relates to:
   a) Long-term assets
   b) Short-term assets and liabilities
   c) Dividend payout
   d) Capital budgeting

1.19 CASE STUDY

Case: Financial Goals at XYZ Ltd.
XYZ Ltd. is considering a new investment project that promises high short-term profits but carries significant long-term risk. The management must decide whether to prioritize immediate profit maximization or focus on sustainable wealth creation for shareholders.

Questions:

- What are the possible financial management implications of each decision?
- How should XYZ Ltd. balance risk and return in this scenario?

1.20 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Pandey, I.M. – *Financial Management* (Vikas Publishing House)
2. Khan, M.Y. & Jain, P.K. – *Financial Management: Text, Problems, and Cases* (McGraw-Hill)
3. Van Horne, J.C. & Wachowicz, J.M. – *Fundamentals of Financial Management* (Prentice Hall)
4. Gitman, L.J. – *Principles of Managerial Finance* (Pearson Education)

Dr Shaik Zakir Hussain

LESSON - 2

ORGANIZATION OF FINANCE FUNCTION

OBJECTIVES

1. Understand the role and responsibilities of a finance manager.
2. Learn how finance functions are structured within organizations.
3. Compare centralized and decentralized finance systems.
4. Examine emerging trends in financial management.
5. Appreciate how technology, globalization and regulatory forces impact finance functions.
6. Understand how modern finance teams support strategic decision-making.

STRUCTURE

2.1. INTRODUCTION TO THE FINANCE FUNCTION

The finance function constitutes the backbone of every business organization. Whether a company is small, medium, or large, its existence and growth depend heavily on effective financial management. Finance is often referred to as the lifeblood of business operations because every activity—production, marketing, human resource development, research, logistics or expansion—requires funds for successful execution. The finance function ensures that funds are available at the right time, in the right quantity, and at the least cost, and that they are effectively utilized to generate value for the enterprise.

As organizations have evolved and business environments have become increasingly complex, the finance function has transformed from a narrow accounting-oriented role to a broad, strategic and analytical function. Today, financial management includes planning, budgeting, investment evaluation, risk management, cash flow monitoring, cost control, capital structuring, stakeholder reporting and compliance. Finance is now deeply integrated into decision-making at all levels of management. In modern corporations, the Chief Financial Officer (CFO) plays an important role not only in financial operations but also in strategy formulation, mergers and acquisitions, digital transformation, corporate governance and sustainability initiatives.

2.2. EVOLUTION AND IMPORTANCE OF THE FINANCE FUNCTION IN ORGANIZATIONS

Historically, the finance function was restricted to record-keeping, bookkeeping, payroll processing and handling receipts and payments. In early business models, finance was largely administrative and clerical. With industrial development, expansion of markets and competition, the finance function expanded into cost accounting, working capital management, credit operations and loan procurement.

The advent of modern financial theory in the mid-twentieth century brought a major shift. Concepts such as the time value of money, risk-return analysis, capital budgeting, portfolio theory and optimal capital structure influenced how organizations viewed finance. Businesses increasingly recognized the need for a dedicated, professional approach to financial decision-making.

In today's complex global economy, organizations deal with fluctuating interest rates, exchange rate risks, investor expectations, regulatory pressures, technological disruptions, sustainability demands and exposure to global capital markets. The finance function has become a strategic driver of value creation, focusing not only on the efficient procurement and use of funds but also on enhancing stakeholder trust and supporting long-term business sustainability.

2.3. ROLE AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE FINANCE MANAGER

The finance manager occupies a crucial position in the governance and functioning of an organization. Traditionally seen as a custodian of financial resources, the modern finance manager is a strategist, analyst, planner, communicator and integrator.
One of the primary responsibilities of the finance manager is financial planning, which involves assessing future financial requirements, forecasting revenues and costs, preparing budgets, determining capital needs and aligning financial resources with organizational strategy.

Another important responsibility is investment decision-making. The finance manager evaluates various investment proposals, examines risk factors, estimates cash flows, and employs capital budgeting techniques such as Net Present Value (NPV), Internal Rate of Return (IRR), payback period, sensitivity analysis and scenario planning to select projects that maximize long-term value.

The finance manager must also handle financing decisions. This includes identifying sources of finance—such as equity, debt, retained earnings and hybrid instruments—and selecting the optimal mix. Decisions on financing require evaluating cost of capital, risk appetite, leverage, interest coverage, repayment schedules and market conditions.
Working capital management forms another key role. The finance manager must ensure that day-to-day operations are adequately funded by maintaining an appropriate balance between current assets and current liabilities. This includes managing cash flows, receivables, payables, and inventory to enhance liquidity while minimizing idle funds.

Risk management is an increasingly essential component of the finance manager's responsibilities. Organizations face multiple risks: market risk, credit risk, liquidity risk,

operational risk, currency and interest rate risk. A finance manager must develop risk mitigation strategies such as hedging, insurance, diversification and contingency planning.
In addition to operational duties, the finance manager must oversee regulatory compliance, including adherence to accounting standards, tax laws, company law provisions, SEBI regulations, and audit requirements. Transparent financial reporting builds confidence among investors, lenders, regulators and the public.

Finally, the finance manager acts as a key advisor to top management, providing financial insights that influence strategic decisions such as mergers, acquisitions, restructuring, diversification, digital transformation and sustainability initiatives.
Finance manager is an integral part of corporate management of an organization. With his profession experience, expertise knowledge and competence, he has to play a key role in optimal utilization of financial resources of the organization. With the growth in the size of the organization, degree of specialization of finance function increases. In large undertakings, the finance manager is a top management executive who participants in various decision making functions.

A) Determining financial needs: -

One of the most important functions of the financial manager is to ensure the availability of adequate financing, financial needs have to be assessed for different purposes. Money may be required for initial promotional expenses, fixed capital and working capital needs. Promotional expenditure includes expenditure incurred in the process of company formation.

B) Determining sources of funds: -

The financial manager has to choose source of funds. He may issue different types of securities and debenture, may borrow form a number of finance institutional and the public. The financial manager must definitely know what he is doing, workout strategies to ensure good financial health of the firm.

C) Financial analysis: -

It is the evaluation & interpretation of a firm's financial position and operation and involves a comparison and interpretation of accounting data. The financial manager has to interpret different statements.

D) Optimal capital structure: -

The financial manager has to establish an optimum capital structure and ensure the maximum rate of return on investment and the liabilities carrying – fixed charges has to be defined.

E) Cost –volume profit analysis; -

This is popularly known as the CVP relationship for this purpose are fixed cost, variable cost and semi-variable cost have to be analyzed.

F) Profit planning and control: -

Profit planning and control have assumed great importance in the financial activities of modern business. Profit planning ensures the attainment of stability and growth. The breakeven analysis and cost volume profit it analysis are important tools in profit planning and control of the firms.

G) Fixed assets management: -

A firms fixed assets are land, building, machinery and equipment, furniture and such intangibles as patents, copy rights and goodwill. These fixed assets are justified to the extent of the utility or their production capacity.

H) Capital budgeting: -

It refers to the long-term planning for (1) investment in projects and fixed assets and (2) methods of financing the approved projects. It includes the methods of mobilization of long-terms funds and their deployments in profitable projects. Capital budgeting is considered as the process of making investment decisions on capital expenditure.

I) Dividend policies: -

The dividend policy of a firm determines the magnitude of the earnings distributed to shareholders. The net operating profit or profit after tax (PAT) has to be intelligently apportioned between divided payments, and investments. The dividend policy determines the amount of dividend payment to be made to the shareholders, the date of payments of dividends and the effect of the dividend policy on the value of the firm.

J) Acquisition and mergers: -

A merger is a transaction where two firms agree to integrate their operations on a relatively equal basis because they have resources and capabilities that together may create a stronger competitive advantage. Two or more companies combine to form either a new company or one of the combining companies survives, which is generally the acquirer.

2.4. ORGANIZATION STRUCTURE OF THE FINANCE FUNCTION

The organization of the finance function depends on the size, nature and complexity of the business. In smaller organizations, the finance function may be handled by a single person or a small team performing multiple roles. In large corporations, it becomes a highly structured department led by the CFO and supported by specialized divisions.

A typical modern finance structure includes subdivisions such as:

- Financial Planning and Analysis (FP&A): Responsible for budgeting, forecasting, financial modelling and performance evaluation.
- Treasury: Handles liquidity management, bank relations, investments, funding, foreign exchange exposure and working capital.
- Corporate Finance: Deals with capital raising, mergers and acquisitions, investor relations and capital structuring.
- Accounting and Reporting: Manages bookkeeping, financial statements, statutory reporting and audit coordination.
- Taxation: Handles tax planning, tax filings, compliance and managing tax risks.
- Risk Management and Internal Controls: Monitors financial risks, develops policies and ensures compliance with internal and external standards.

This structure ensures specialization, accountability, timely decision-making and effective communication across departments.

2.5. CENTRALIZATION VS. DECENTRALIZATION OF FINANCE

Organizations must determine whether to centralize the finance function or decentralize it across business units, branches or departments. Both approaches have advantages and limitations.

A centralized finance function places decision-making authority, financial planning, treasury operations and policy formulation at the headquarters. This ensures consistency, standardization and strong control. Centralization is suitable for organizations that operate in regulated industries or require strict adherence to financial governance.
The advantages of centralization include economies of scale, uniform systems, reduced duplication, and stronger internal controls. For example, multinational companies like Siemens or IBM centralize treasury operations to manage global cash flows efficiently and negotiate funding at better terms.

However, centralization can lead to slower decision-making and reduced responsiveness to local needs. Business units may feel constrained when headquarters tightly controls financial decisions.

A decentralized finance function allows business units or subsidiaries to make independent financial decisions. This model is effective for large, diversified corporations or businesses operating in geographically dispersed markets. It supports faster decision-making and better understanding of local market conditions. For example, FMCG businesses like Hindustan Unilever or Nestlé often decentralize parts of their finance function so regional managers can design credit policies, manage working capital and respond quickly to market shifts.

In practice, many organizations adopt a hybrid structure—centralizing policy-making and strategic finance functions while decentralizing routine operations and decision-making authority.

2.6. STRATEGIC ROLE OF FINANCE IN MODERN CORPORATIONS

The finance function has evolved from a support role to a strategic business partner. Finance leaders now participate in formulating corporate strategy, identifying growth opportunities, optimizing resource allocation and enhancing shareholder value.

Modern finance managers contribute to shaping investment strategies, entering new markets, developing new products, managing sustainability initiatives, and adopting digital technology. They are increasingly involved in strategic activities such as scenario analysis, competitive benchmarking, enterprise risk management, and business transformation.

Finance’s strategic role is evident in mergers and acquisitions, where financial managers conduct due diligence, evaluate synergies, assess risks and negotiate terms. In global corporations, finance teams play a vital role in managing exchange rate fluctuations, international taxation and cross-border financing.

2.7. EMERGING TRENDS IN THE FINANCE FUNCTION

The finance function is undergoing rapid transformation due to economic, technological and social changes. Several emerging trends define the future of financial management.
Digital transformation is reshaping how financial activities are performed. Organizations are leveraging automation, artificial intelligence, machine learning, predictive analytics, robotics and big data to enhance efficiency and accuracy. Finance automation tools improve transaction processing, forecasting, budgeting and reporting.

Sustainability and ESG (Environmental, Social and Governance) reporting have become central to finance functions as investors increasingly evaluate companies based on their environmental and social impact. Finance teams are responsible for measuring carbon footprints, assessing green investments and reporting ESG metrics.

Another emerging trend is enhanced data analytics. Finance managers are expected to interpret complex data, derive insights and support evidence-based decision-making. Financial modelling and scenario analysis are now integrated with real-time data analytics, enabling better risk prediction and strategic planning.

The globalization of capital markets is increasing access to funding sources such as foreign equity, external commercial borrowings, international bonds and private equity. Finance managers must navigate exchange rate risks, diverse regulatory environments and multinational taxation frameworks.
Cybersecurity and data protection have also become essential components of the finance function. Financial data is highly sensitive, and finance teams must ensure strong security controls, encryption, monitoring and compliance with data privacy laws.

2.8. IMPACT OF TECHNOLOGY AND GLOBALIZATION

Technology plays a transformative role in finance. In today's dynamic business environment, staying ahead of the curve in financial management is essential for success. As we move into an era marked by technological advancements, changing consumer preferences, and evolving regulatory landscapes, businesses must adapt to emerging trends to thrive. Let's explore some of the key trends shaping the future of financial management.

AI and Machine Learning: The Rise of Intelligent Finance

Artificial Intelligence (AI) and Machine Learning are revolutionizing financial management by automating routine tasks, predicting trends, and optimizing decision-making processes. From predictive analytics to algorithmic trading, AI-driven financial solutions are providing businesses with deeper insights and greater efficiency in managing their finances.

Block chain: Transforming Transactions and Transparency

Block chain technology is disrupting traditional financial systems by offering secure, transparent, and decentralized transaction networks. With block chain, businesses can streamline processes like supply chain finance, reduce the risk of fraud, and enhance trust among stakeholders. As block chain continues to evolve, its impact on financial management will only grow stronger.

Data Analytics: Turning Insights into Action

Data analytics tools are empowering financial managers to extract actionable insights from vast amounts of data. By leveraging advanced analytics techniques, businesses can identify trends, mitigate risks, and optimize financial performance. From predictive modeling to sentiment analysis, data-driven decision-making is becoming a cornerstone of effective financial management.

Sustainable Finance: Investing in a Better Future

Environmental, Social, and Governance (ESG) factors are increasingly influencing financial decision-making. Investors are placing greater importance on sustainability criteria when evaluating companies, driving the demand for ESG-integrated financial products and services. As businesses align their financial strategies with sustainable development goals, sustainable finance will continue to gain momentum.

Cybersecurity: Safeguarding Financial Assets

With the growing threat of cyberattacks, cybersecurity has become a top priority for financial managers. From protecting sensitive financial data to securing online transactions, robust cybersecurity measures are essential to safeguarding financial assets and maintaining trust with customers. As cyber threats evolve, businesses must invest in cutting-edge security technologies and practices to stay one step ahead.

Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP) systems integrate finance with production, marketing, supply chain and HR systems, providing a unified view of operations. Cloud-based finance platforms allow remote access, collaboration and seamless updates.
Artificial intelligence is used in fraud detection, credit scoring, forecasting and sentiment analysis. Robotic Process Automation (RPA) handles repetitive tasks like data entry, invoice processing and reconciliations, allowing finance professionals to focus on analysis and strategy.

Globalization has opened opportunities for firms to expand internationally and attract foreign investment. Finance teams now manage fragmented global operations, currency movements, country risks and cross-border taxation. They must also comply with international financial reporting standards (IFRS) and global governance frameworks.

2.9. REAL-WORLD CORPORATE EXAMPLES

Many global companies demonstrate best practices in organizing finance functions. Microsoft's finance function is divided into FP&A, controllership, treasury and tax, each using advanced analytics for decision-making. IBM centralizes treasury operations to manage complex global cash flows efficiently. Reliance Industries uses decentralized finance for its diverse business units but centralizes strategic corporate finance.

Companies like Amazon employ predictive analytics in financial planning to forecast demand and optimize inventory. Tesla uses global capital markets to raise funds for its manufacturing facilities. Indian firms like Infosys and Wipro focus heavily on corporate governance, financial transparency and global compliance.

These real-world examples illustrate how modern finance functions have evolved to meet global business demands.

2.10 SUMMARY OF THE LESSON

The finance function is a core component of business operations, ensuring that financial resources are effectively planned, allocated and controlled. This lesson discussed the evolution of finance from a bookkeeping role to a strategic function. It examined the crucial responsibilities of a finance manager, including investment decisions, financing choices, working capital management, risk management and compliance.

The organization of finance varies across companies depending on size and complexity. Centralization allows for control and standardization, while decentralization supports flexibility and quick decision-making. Hybrid models offer the best of both approaches.

Emerging trends such as digital transformation, automation, sustainability reporting, data analytics, global integration and cybersecurity are reshaping the future of the finance function. Finance professionals today must be technologically proficient, analytically skilled and strategically oriented to support long-term organizational success.

2.11 KEYWORDS

- Finance Function
- Financial Planning
- Treasury Management
- Centralization
- Decentralization
- CFO
- Risk Management
- ESG Reporting
- Financial Control
- Globalization
- Data Analytics
- Corporate Governance

2.12 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

A. Short Answer Questions

1. What is the finance function in an organization?
2. Explain the role of the finance manager.
3. What is a centralized finance structure?
4. Mention two advantages of decentralization.
5. What is the role of technology in modern financial management?
6. Define treasury management.
7. What are emerging trends in the finance function?

B. Essay-Type Questions

1. Discuss the evolving role of a finance manager in modern organizations.
2. Explain the differences between centralized and decentralized finance functions. Provide examples.
3. Describe how globalization has influenced financial management practices.
4. Evaluate the impact of technology and data analytics on the finance function.
5. Explain the structure of a modern finance department and the roles of its subdivisions.
6. Illustrate with examples how finance contributes to strategic decision-making.
7. Discuss the importance of risk management within the finance function.

C. Multiple-Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. The modern finance manager plays which of the following roles?
   a) Strategist
   b) Analyst
   c) Planner
   d) All the above

   Answer: d

2. Centralization of finance function ensures:
   a) Faster local decision-making
   b) Standardization and control
   c) Complete autonomy at branch level
   d) None of the above
   Answer: b
3. Which of the following is a key emerging trend?
   a) Manual bookkeeping
   b) Digital transformation
   c) Decreasing regulatory compliance
   d) Reduced need for technology
   Answer: b
4. Treasury deals mainly with:
   a) Production planning
   b) Cash and liquidity management
   c) Employee training
   d) Market research
   Answer: b
5. Decentralized finance structure is suitable for:
   a) Small startups
   b) Global diversified companies
   c) Banks only
   d) Public sector alone
   Answer: b

D. Case Study

Case Study: Finance Function at “Galaxy Consumer Products Ltd”

Galaxy Consumer Products Ltd is a fast-growing FMCG company with operations across India. In recent years, the company struggled with slow decision-making in pricing, credit terms and inventory purchases. These delays resulted from a highly centralized finance function where all financial approvals had to come from headquarters.
As competition increased, Galaxy's regional managers complained that they lacked autonomy to respond rapidly to local retail trends. At the same time, the CFO worried that decentralization might lead to inconsistent financial policies and higher risks.

To address these issues, the company implemented a hybrid finance model:

- Headquarters retained control over treasury, corporate finance, audit and risk policies.
- Regional offices were granted authority to manage working capital, branch-level pricing, credit terms and promotions.
- The company implemented an ERP system to integrate real-time financial data from all branches.

QUESTIONS:

1. What problems was Galaxy facing under a fully centralized system?
2. How does decentralization support business competitiveness in FMCG markets?
3. What risks arise from decentralization, and how did Galaxy mitigate them?
4. Explain why hybrid finance structures are becoming common in modern businesses.
5.

2.13 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. I.M. Pandey – *Financial Management*
2. Prasanna Chandra – *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*
3. Khan & Jain – *Financial Management*
4. Eugene F. Brigham & Joel F. Houston – *Fundamentals of Financial Management*
5. M.Y. Khan – *Indian Financial System*
6. Van Horne – *Financial Management and Policy*
7. R.P. Rustagi – *Financial Management*

Dr Shaik Zakir Hussain

LESSON - 3

TIME VALUE OF MONEY

OBJECTIVES

1. Understand the concept and importance of the time value of money.
2. Learn compounding techniques used to find future value.
3. Learn discounting techniques used to find present value.
4. Apply TVM concepts in financial decisions such as investment valuation, loans, savings, and annuities.
5. Interpret and explain formulas in simple, student-friendly language.
6. Solve numerical problems on present value and future value.

STRUCTURE

3.1. INTRODUCTION TO TIME VALUE OF MONEY

The time value of money (TVM) is one of the most fundamental concepts in financial management. It states that a rupee today is worth more than a rupee received in the future. The primary reason is that money has earning capacity. If money is available today, it can be invested to earn interest, profits or returns. Therefore, future money must be discounted to reflect its present worth, and present money must be compounded to know its future value.
Time value of money forms the basis for nearly all financial decisions: investment appraisal, savings plans, loan repayment schedules, valuation of bonds and shares, retirement planning, and lease-versus-buy choices. Without understanding TVM, financial managers cannot correctly evaluate whether a project or financial proposal adds value.

3.2. IMPORTANCE OF TIME VALUE OF MONEY

The importance of TVM lies in its application to real financial decisions. When businesses evaluate investment projects, they must compare present cash outflows with future cash inflows. These cash flows occur at different points in time and cannot be compared directly. TVM allows decision-makers to bring all values to a common point—either by discounting future flows to the present or by compounding present flows to the future.

Additionally, TVM helps individuals in planning savings, understanding bank interest, calculating insurance premiums, evaluating EMIs and designing retirement strategies. Every financial decision involving time relies on this principle.

3.3. COMPOUNDING CONCEPTS AND TECHNIQUES

Compounding refers to the process of calculating the future value (FV) of a sum invested today. It involves reinvesting interest to earn additional interest in future periods. This creates a "snowball effect," where money grows faster over time.
Formula for Future Value of a Single Sum

$$FV = PV(1 + r)^n$$

Explaining the formula in simple words:

- PV = present value or today's amount
- r = interest rate expressed as decimal (10% = 0.10)
- n = number of periods
- (1+r)^n tells us how many times the money grows

We multiply PV by the growth factor to get future value
Numerical Example 1: Basic FV
You invest ₹10,000 for 3 years at 10% annual interest.

$$FV = 10{,}000(1.10)^3 = 10{,}000(1.331) = ₹13{,}310$$

This means your money becomes ₹13,310 after 3 years.

Numerical Example 2: Higher Rate
₹5,000 invested for 5 years at 12%:

$$FV = 5000(1.12)^5 = 5000(1.7623) = ₹8{,}811.50$$

The higher interest rate leads to faster growth.

3.4. FUTURE VALUE OF AN ANNUITY

An annuity is a series of equal payments made at regular intervals (monthly, quarterly, yearly).
Examples:

- SIP payments
- Monthly savings
- Loan installments
- Pension deposits

Formula for Future Value of an Ordinary Annuity

$$FV = PMT(\frac{(1 + r)^n - 1}{r})$$

Explaining in simple words:

- PMT = fixed amount deposited each period
- (1+r)^n – 1 = how much each payment grows
- Divide by r to add up the growth of all payments

Numerical Example 3: SIP Investment

Deposit ₹2,000 per year at 10% for 5 years.

$$FV = 2{,}000(\frac{(1.10)^5 - 1}{0.10})$$
$$FV = 2{,}000(\frac{1.61051 - 1}{0.10})$$
$$FV = 2{,}000(6.1051) = ₹12{,}210.20$$

This is the accumulated value after 5 years.

3.5. DISCOUNTING CONCEPTS AND TECHNIQUES

Discounting is the reverse of compounding. It helps us find the present value (PV) of money we expect to receive in the future. Since future money is worth less due to inflation and lost earning capacity, PV tells us the true worth today.

Formula for Present Value of a Single Future Amount

$$PV = \frac{FV}{(1+r)^n}$$

Explained simply:

- Take the future money
- Divide it by how much it would have grown
- The result is today's equivalent value

Numerical Example 4: Finding PV

Future value expected after 4 years = ₹50,000

Discount rate = 8%

$$PV = \frac{50{,}000}{(1.08)^4}$$
$$PV = \frac{50{,}000}{1.3605} = ₹36{,}750$$

Meaning: ₹36,750 today is equal to ₹50,000 after 4 years.

3.6. PRESENT VALUE OF AN ANNUITY

The present value of an annuity calculates how much a series of equal payments is worth today.

Formula for Present Value of an Ordinary Annuity

$$PV = PMT(\frac{1-(1+r)^{-n}}{r})$$

Explaining simply:

- You discount each payment back to today
- Add them up using the formula
- The result tells you how much the payments are worth now

Numerical Example 5: Present Value of Pension Payments
You expect ₹10,000 per year for 6 years. Discount rate = 9%.

$$PV = 10{,}000(\frac{1-(1.09)^{-6}}{0.09})$$
$$PV = 10{,}000(4.4859)$$
$$PV = ₹44{,}859$$

This is the value today of the 6-year payment stream.

3.7. APPLICATIONS OF PRESENT AND FUTURE VALUE

The time value of money is used in multiple real-world decisions:
Investment Decisions
Companies evaluate future cash flows from projects using present value methods like NPV and IRR.
Loan EMIs and Mortgages
Banks use TVM formulas to calculate equated monthly instalments.
Retirement Planning
Individuals estimate how much they need to save today to achieve a future goal.
Bond and Share Valuation
Bond prices are present values of future interest and principal.
Lease vs Buy Decisions
Managers compare discounted cash flows of alternatives.
Delayed Payments
When customers request delayed payments, companies calculate discount charges.
Insurance Premiums
Premiums are determined using PV of future claims.
Compounding Concepts and Techniques — Example & Solution

Example 3.1 (Annual vs Monthly Compounding).
You invest ₹10,000 for 2 years at a nominal annual interest rate of 12%. Compare the future value when interest is compounded (a) annually and (b) monthly.
Solution — step by step

(a) Annual compounding
Formula: $FV = PV(1 + r)^n$
Here $PV = 10{,}000, r = 0.12, n = 2$.
Compute $(1 + r)^n = (1.12)^2 = 1.12 \times 1.12 = 1.2544$.
So $FV = 10{,}000 \times 1.2544 = ₹12{,}544.00$.
(b) Monthly compounding
When compounding monthly, use the periodic rate $r_m = \frac{0.12}{12} = 0.01$and number of periods $n_m = 2 \times 12 = 24$.
Formula: $FV = PV(1 + r_m)^{n_m} = 10{,}000 \times (1.01)^{24}$.
Compute $(1.01)^{12} \approx 1.126825$so $(1.01)^{24} \approx (1.126825)^2 \approx 1.269734$.
Therefore $FV \approx 10{,}000 \times 1.269734 = ₹12{,}697.34$.
Conclusion: Monthly compounding yields a slightly higher FV (₹12,697.34) than annual compounding (₹12,544.00) because interest is earned on interest more frequently.

4. future value of a single sum — example & solution
Example 4.1. What will ₹10,000 become in 3 years at an annual interest rate of 10% (compounded annually)?
Solution
Formula: $FV = PV(1 + r)^n$where $PV = 10{,}000, r = 0.10, n = 3$.
Compute:

- $(1 + r) = 1.10$
- $(1.10)^2 = 1.21$
- $(1.10)^3 = 1.331$

So $FV = 10{,}000 \times 1.331 = ₹13{,}310$.
Interpretation: ₹10,000 invested today at 10% p.a. grows to ₹13,310 in 3 years.

5. Future Value of an Annuity — Examples & Solutions
Example 5.1 (Ordinary Annuity — end of period payments)
You deposit ₹2,000 at the end of each year for 5 years into an account paying 10% annually. What is the accumulated (future) value at the end of year 5?
Solution
Formula (ordinary annuity):

$$FV = PMT \times \frac{(1 + r)^n - 1}{r}$$

Here $PMT = 2000, r = 0.10, n = 5$.
Compute $(1.10)^5 = 1.61051$.

$$(1.10)^5 - 1 = 0.61051.$$

Divide by r: $0.61051/0.10 = 6.1051$.
Then $FV = 2{,}000 \times 6.1051 = ₹12{,}210.20$.
Interpretation: Regular annual deposits of ₹2,000 grow to ₹12,210.20 in five years at 10%.
Example 5.2 (Annuity Due — payments at beginning of period)
Same deposits but made at the beginning of each year (annuity due). What is the FV at year 5?
Solution
For annuity due, multiply the ordinary-annuity FV by $(1 + r)$:
Ordinary-annuity FV = ₹12,210.20 (from above).
Annuity-due FV = $12{,}210.20 \times 1.10 = ₹13{,}431.22$.

Interpretation: Paying at the beginning of each period gives one extra period of interest on every payment.

6. Discounting Concepts and Techniques — Example & Solution
Example 6.1. You are promised ₹50,000 in 4 years. Your required return (discount rate) is 8% per year. What is that future ₹50,000 worth today?
Solution
Formula: $PV = \frac{FV}{(1+r)^n}$where $FV = 50{,}000, r = 0.08, n = 4$.
Compute $(1.08)^2 = 1.1664$, $(1.08)^3 = 1.259712$, $(1.08)^4 = 1.36048896$.
Then $PV = 50{,}000/1.36048896 \approx 50{,}000 \times 0.734664 = ₹36{,}733.20$(rounded to ₹36,733).
Interpretation: Receiving ₹50,000 four years from now is equivalent to having about ₹36,733 today if you require 8% return.

7. Present Value of a Single Sum — Example & Solution
(This is essentially the same as discounting; another worked example.)
Example 7.1. A bond will pay you ₹1,20,000 in 6 years. If your discount rate is 9%, what is the present value?
Solution
Formula $PV = \frac{FV}{(1+r)^n}$. Here $FV = 120{,}000, r = 0.09, n = 6$.
Compute powers of 1.09:

- $1.09^2 = 1.1881$
- $1.09^3 = 1.295029$
- $1.09^4 = 1.41158161$
- $1.09^5 = 1.538623955$
- $1.09^6 = 1.67610011095$

Then $PV = 120{,}000/1.67610011 \approx 120{,}000 \times 0.596621 = ₹71{,}594.52$(≈ ₹71,595).
Interpretation: ₹1,20,000 received after 6 years is worth about ₹71,595 today at 9%.

3.8. PRESENT VALUE OF AN ANNUITY — EXAMPLES & SOLUTIONS

Example 8.1 (Ordinary annuity — present value of yearly payments)
You will receive ₹10,000 per year for 6 years (end of each year). The discount rate is 9%. What is the present value today?
Solution
Formula (PV of ordinary annuity):

$$PV = PMT \times \frac{1 - (1 + r)^{-n}}{r}$$

Here $PMT = 10{,}000, r = 0.09, n = 6$.
We computed $1.09^6 \approx 1.67610011$earlier, so $(1.09)^{-6} = 1/1.67610011 \approx 0.596621$.
Now $1 - (1 + r)^{-n} = 1 - 0.596621 = 0.403379$.
Divide by r: $0.403379/0.09 = 4.48199$.
Then $PV = 10{,}000 \times 4.48199 = ₹44{,}819.90$(≈ ₹44,820).
Interpretation: A 6-year annuity of ₹10,000 per year at 9% is worth about ₹44,820 today.
Example 8.2 (Loan / EMI interpretation — finding annual payment)

A borrower takes a loan of ₹500,000 to be repaid in 5 equal annual instalments. The lender charges 8% annual interest. What is the annual payment?
Solution

PMT for loan (ordinary annuity formula rearranged):

$$PMT = PV \times \frac{r}{1-(1+r)^{-n}}$$

Here $PV = 500{,}000, r = 0.08, n = 5$.
Compute: $1.08^5 = 1.4693280768$. Then $(1.08)^{-5} = 1/1.46932808 \approx 0.680583$.
Then denominator $1-(1+r)^{-n} = 1 - 0.680583 = 0.319417$.
So $\frac{r}{1-(1+r)^{-n}} = \frac{0.08}{0.319417} \approx 0.25047$.

Thus $PMT = 500{,}000 \times 0.25047 \approx$ ₹125,236.00.
Interpretation: The borrower must pay about ₹125,236 each year for five years to amortize a ₹500,000 loan at 8% annually.

3.9. APPLICATIONS OF PRESENT AND FUTURE VALUE — EXAMPLES & SOLUTIONS

I give two common applications: (A) Project evaluation with NPV, and (B) Bond valuation.
Example 9A — NPV decision (investment appraisal)
A firm must decide whether to invest ₹1,00,000 today in a project that will produce cash inflows of ₹40,000, ₹50,000, and ₹60,000 at the end of years 1, 2 and 3 respectively. The firm's discount rate is 10%. Should it invest?
Solution
Compute NPV:

$$NPV = -C_0 + \sum_{t=1}^{3} \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t}.$$

We calculate each PV:

1. PV of year-1 cash flow: $40{,}000/1.10 = 36{,}363.64$.
2. PV of year-2 cash flow: $50{,}000/(1.10)^2 = 50{,}000/1.21 = 41{,}322.31$.
3. PV of year-3 cash flow: $60{,}000/(1.10)^3 = 60{,}000/1.331 = 45{,}078.02$.

Sum of PVs = $36{,}363.64 + 41{,}322.31 + 45{,}078.02 = 122{,}763.97$.
Now $NPV = -100{,}000 + 122{,}763.97 =$ ₹22,763.97.
Decision: NPV > 0, so accept the project — it increases shareholder wealth by ≈ ₹22,764.
Example 9B — Bond Pricing (present value of coupons + principal)
A 3-year bond has face value ₹1,000, pays annual coupon 6% (₹60 each year), and the market discount rate is 5%. What is the bond's price today?
Solution

Price = PV of coupon stream + PV of principal:
Compute PVs:

1. PV coupon Year 1: $60/1.05 = 57.14286$.
2. PV coupon Year 2: $60/1.05^2 = 60/1.1025 = 54.42177$.

3. PV coupon Year 3: $60/1.05^3 = 60/1.157625 = 51.80931$.
4. PV principal at maturity: $1{,}000/1.157625 = 863.96368$.

Add up: Price = 57.14286 + 54.42177 + 51.80931 + 863.96368 = ₹1,027.33762 → ₹1,027.34.
Interpretation: Because the coupon rate (6%) is above the market rate (5%), the bond's price is above face value (a premium).

Quick Reference Formula Sheet (student-friendly)

- Future value of single sum: $FV = PV(1 + r)^n$.
  "Grow the amount by (1+r) for each period."
- Present value of single sum: $PV = \frac{FV}{(1+r)^n}$.
  "Bring future money back by dividing by (1+r) for each period."
- Future value of ordinary annuity: $FV = PMT \times \frac{(1+r)^n - 1}{r}$.
  "Each payment grows; add the growth of all payments."
- Present value of ordinary annuity: $PV = PMT \times \frac{1-(1+r)^{-n}}{r}$.
  "Discount each payment back and add them up."
- Loan (annuity) payment: $PMT = PV \times \frac{r}{1-(1+r)^{-n}}$.
  "Find the equal payment that amortizes the loan."
- NPV (project): $NPV = -C_0 + \sum_{t=1}^{n} \frac{CF_t}{(1+r)^t}$.
  "Accept if NPV > 0."

3.10 SUMMARY OF THE LESSON

This lesson introduced the essential concept of time value of money, emphasizing that money available today has greater value than money received in the future. Compounding techniques were explained to determine future value, while discounting was used to find present value. Annuities, both in terms of present and future value, were covered extensively with formulas explained in simple, understandable language. Numerous numerical examples demonstrated how the concept applies to real business scenarios, helping students understand investments, savings, loans, retirement planning and bond valuation. The TVM framework forms the foundation of nearly all areas of financial management.

3.11. KEYWORDS

- Time Value of Money
- Compounding
- Discounting
- Present Value (PV)
- Future Value (FV)
- Annuity
- Discount Rate
- Interest Rate
- Investment Appraisal

3.12. SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Short Answer Questions

1. What is the time value of money?
2. Explain the difference between PV and FV.
3. Why is discounting used?
4. What is an annuity?
5. State the FV formula in simple words.
6. What factors affect the time value of money?

Essay-Type Questions

1. Explain the concept and importance of the time value of money in financial decisions.
2. Describe compounding techniques with examples.
3. Discuss discounting and show its applications with numerical examples.
4. Explain the present value and future value of annuities.
5. Illustrate real-life applications of time value of money in banking and investment decisions.

Multiple-Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. The formula for FV of a single sum is:
   a) PV/(1+r)^n
   b) PV × (1+r)^n
   c) PMT × r
   d) None
   Answer: b
2. PV calculation involves:
   a) Compounding
   b) Discounting
   c) Both
   d) Neither
   Answer: b
3. An annuity consists of:
   a) Unequal payments
   b) Equal payments at regular intervals
   c) One-time deposit
   d) None
   Answer: b
4. If r increases, PV:
   a) Increases
   b) Decreases
   c) Stays constant
   d) Doubles
   Answer: b
5. FV increases when:
   a) More time is allowed
   b) Interest rate is higher
   c) Both a & b

d) Neither
Answer: c

Case Study

Time Value of Money in Corporate Decision-Making
Skyline Infrastructure Ltd plans to invest in a real estate project requiring an immediate investment of ₹1 crore. The project promises yearly cash inflows of ₹30 lakh for 5 years. The company's required return is 12%.

Questions:

1. Calculate the present value of future cash inflows.
2. Should the company invest if the PV exceeds the cost?
3. How would the decision change if the interest rate rises to 15%?
4. Explain the role of TVM in this decision.

3.13. REFERENCE BOOKS

1. I.M. Pandey – *Financial Management*
2. Prasanna Chandra – *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*
3. Khan & Jain – *Financial Management*
4. Brigham & Houston – *Fundamentals of Financial Management*
5. Van Horne – *Financial Management and Policy*
6. R.P. Rustagi – *Financial Management*

Dr Shaik Zakir Hussain

LESSON - 4

AGENCY CONFLICT AND FINANCIAL GOALS

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, the learner will be able to:

1. Understand the concept of the principal–agent relationship in finance.
2. Explain how agency conflicts arise in modern corporations.
3. Analyse the impact of agency problems on financial decisions and shareholder wealth.
4. Understand the principles and mechanisms of corporate governance.
5. Examine the role of boards, audits, regulations, and markets in mitigating agency problems.
6. Evaluate methods used by companies to reduce agency conflicts.
7. Apply the concepts using real-world corporate case examples.

STRUCTURE

4.1 INTRODUCTION TO AGENCY CONFLICT AND FINANCIAL GOALS

Modern corporations are characterized by the separation of ownership and management. Shareholders, who provide capital, are the real owners of the company. However, the control of operations is delegated to professional managers who possess the expertise to run the business. This delegation creates a principal–agent relationship, which becomes the foundation of corporate finance. One of the primary objectives of financial management is to ensure that managerial decisions align with the financial goal of maximizing shareholder wealth.

However, managers may not always act in the best interests of shareholders. Instead, they may pursue objectives that maximize their own utility—such as job security, higher compensation, increased power, or personal gratification. This divergence of interests creates what is known as agency conflict, a central challenge in financial decision making and corporate governance.

Agency conflict not only affects firm value but also influences decisions related to investment, financing, dividend policy, and risk-taking. In the absence of effective control mechanisms, managers may misuse resources or engage in inefficient or unethical practices. Therefore, corporate governance structures and incentive mechanisms are essential in aligning the goals of managers (agents) with those of shareholders (principals).

4.2 THE PRINCIPAL–AGENT PROBLEM

Meaning of Principal–Agent Relationship

The principal–agent relationship arises when one party (the principal) hires another (the agent) to perform tasks on its behalf. In business, this relationship most commonly exists between:

- Shareholders (Principals): Owners who want maximization of firm value
- Managers (Agents): Individuals who exercise decision-making authority

Nature of the Problem

The principal–agent problem arises due to two major reasons:

1. Divergence of goals:
   Managers may prefer stability, perks, or personal prestige over shareholder wealth maximization.
2. Information asymmetry:
   Managers generally have better information about the company's operations and financial health than shareholders. This allows them to make decisions that shareholders may not be able to fully evaluate.

Real-World Causes of Agency Problem

- Managers may focus on short-term earnings to secure bonuses, ignoring long-term value creation.
- They may engage in empire building, expanding the size of the firm even when it reduces profitability.
- Managers may avoid risky but value-enhancing projects to protect their positions.
- They may over-consume perquisites such as luxury offices, foreign travel, or corporate jets.

Illustrative Examples of Agency Conflict in the Real World

Agency conflicts are not theoretical constructs; they have shaped some of the most significant corporate failures and crises in global business history. The cases of Enron (2001), Satyam Computers (2009), and WeWork (2019) serve as powerful examples of how managerial self-interest, weak governance, information asymmetry, and unethical practices can destroy shareholder wealth and damage entire industries.

1. Enron Corporation (2001): The Collapse of a Global Energy Giant

Background

Enron Corporation, based in Houston, Texas, was once one of the largest energy, commodities, and services companies in the world. It was named “America’s Most Innovative Company” by *Fortune* magazine for six consecutive years.

Nature of Agency Conflict

Enron's downfall was primarily the result of severe agency problems involving:

- Manipulation of financial statements
- Use of Special Purpose Entities (SPEs) to hide debt
- Personal enrichment of top executives through bonuses, stock options, and insider trading
- Dominant managerial control combined with weak oversight

What Went Wrong?

a) Special Purpose Entities (SPEs) and Off-Balance Sheet Financing
Enron executives created hundreds of shell companies (e.g., LJM1, LJM2, Chewco Investments) to hide massive liabilities.
Losses were transferred to these entities, while profits were inflated through artificially structured transactions.
This created an illusion of financial strength, misleading shareholders, regulators, creditors, and analysts.

b) Stock-Based Compensation and Greed
Enron rewarded executives with massive stock options.
The CEO, Jeffrey Skilling, and Chairman, Ken Lay, personally made millions by selling shares while encouraging employees to keep buying.

c) Auditor Complicity
Enron's auditor, Arthur Andersen, failed to question fraudulent accounting. The firm earned millions in consulting fees from Enron, creating a conflict of interest.

d) Outcome

- Enron filed for bankruptcy on December 2, 2001.
- Shareholders lost more than $74 billion in market value.
- Thousands of employees lost their jobs and retirement savings.
- Arthur Andersen collapsed, eliminating one of the world's largest audit firms.

Agency Conflict Lessons

- Excessive managerial power and weak board oversight enable fraud.
- Misaligned incentives encourage executives to manipulate results for personal profit.
- Lack of transparency and auditor independence increases agency risk.

2. Satyam Computers (2009): India's Largest Corporate Accounting Scandal
Background

Satyam Computers Services Ltd., headquartered in Hyderabad, was one of India's top IT services companies, listed on the NYSE and BSE, and employing over 50,000 people.
Nature of Agency Conflict
Satyam's scandal was a classic example of manager–shareholder conflict, where the promoter–CEO used his power and information advantage to misrepresent financial performance.

What Went Wrong?
a) Massive Accounting Manipulation

In January 2009, Chairman Ramalinga Raju confessed to inflating Satyam's:

- Revenues
- Profits
- Cash balances

The overstated balance sheet included:

- ₹5,040 crore in non-existent cash and bank balances
- Inflated profits for several years
- Fictitious interest income

Raju admitted that he continued the fraud because he feared revealing losses would collapse stock prices.

b) Attempt to Divert Funds

In 2008, Satyam attempted to acquire Maytas Properties and Maytas Infra—companies owned by Raju's family—using Satyam's cash reserves.

This was an attempt to divert funds for personal benefit, a clear agency problem.

Shareholders revolted, and the deal was stopped within hours.

c) Weak Corporate Governance

- The board approved the Maytas acquisition without proper scrutiny.
- Independent directors failed to challenge management.
- PwC India, the auditor, signed off on manipulated accounts for years.

d) Outcome

- Company placed under government-controlled board.
- Eventually acquired by Tech Mahindra in April 2009.
- Shareholders suffered massive value erosion.
- Executives, including Raju, were arrested and charged under fraud, forgery, and conspiracy.

Agency Conflict Lessons

- Concentration of power in a promoter–CEO can lead to misuse of authority.
- Weak boards and inactive independent directors increase agency risk.
- Accounting manipulation is a serious consequence of information asymmetry.

3. WeWork (2019): Governance Failure in a High-Growth Startup

Background

WeWork, founded in 2010, quickly emerged as a leading shared-workspace and real estate services company. Backed heavily by SoftBank, WeWork's valuation reached nearly $47 billion by early 2019.

Nature of Agency Conflict

The company's governance structure was extremely founder-centric. CEO Adam Neumann held disproportionate voting rights, enabling him to exercise almost unilateral control.

The agency conflict stemmed from:

- Self-dealing and related-party transactions
- Excessive personal perks
- Unethical corporate governance practices

- Dominance of management with insufficient board oversight

What Went Wrong?

a) Self-Dealing Transactions
Neumann personally owned several buildings which he later leased to WeWork.
This created a direct conflict of interest:
He earned rental income from a company he controlled.

b) Selling the "We" Trademark
He sold the rights to the word "We" to his own company for $5.9 million, one of the most criticized acts of self-enrichment.

c) Extreme Corporate Perks
Neumann's lifestyle included:
- Private jets
- Expensive parties
- Alcohol budgets costing millions
- Relocation of personal family employees within the company

These were paid for using company funds, contributing nothing to shareholder wealth.

d) Failed IPO and Valuation Collapse
During the company's IPO attempt in 2019, the prospectus revealed:
- Enormous financial losses
- Questionable related-party transactions
- Outrageous governance weaknesses
- A corporate culture focused on personal power

As a result, the IPO failed, and the company's valuation fell from $47 billion to less than $8 billion within weeks.
SoftBank eventually removed Neumann from the CEO position.

e) Outcome
- Massive layoffs
- Near bankruptcy, rescued only through restructuring
- Loss of billions for investors
- Damage to the reputation of high-growth startups

Agency Conflict Lessons
- Founder dominance can be as harmful as manager opportunism.
- Weak governance enables excessive risk-taking and self-benefit.
- Transparency is essential, especially for IPO-bound firms.

Conclusion: What These Examples Teach Us
These three cases—Enron, Satyam, and WeWork—demonstrate the catastrophic impact of agency conflicts. When managers prioritize their own interests over those of shareholders, the consequences include:
- Financial fraud
- Value destruction
- Loss of investor confidence

- Regulatory intervention
- Bankruptcies and layoffs

Strong corporate governance, effective board oversight, transparent disclosures, independent audits, and well-designed incentive systems are essential to reducing agency risks.

4.3 TYPES AND SOURCES OF AGENCY CONFLICT

Agency problems in corporations generally arise in three primary relationships:

1. Shareholder–Manager Agency Conflict
Managers may pursue personal goals or avoid risks, deviating from shareholder wealth maximization. They may focus on growth over profitability or indulge in perks.

2. Shareholder–Debt Holder Conflict
Shareholders may prefer high-risk projects to increase potential returns, while debt holders prefer safer investments to ensure repayment.

3. Manager–Debt Holder Conflict
Managers may shift to riskier strategies after borrowing funds, harming the interests of creditors.
Sources of Agency Conflict

- Information asymmetry
- Separation of ownership and control
- Differences in risk preferences
- Ineffective governance structures
- Misaligned incentive compensation

4.4 CONSEQUENCES OF AGENCY PROBLEMS

Agency conflicts can lead to a variety of negative outcomes, including:

1. Financial Loss to Shareholders
Managers may undertake unprofitable projects or misuse funds, reducing firm value.

2. Increased Agency Costs
Shareholders incur additional monitoring and control expenses such as audits, inspections, and performance evaluations.

3. Suboptimal Investment Decisions
Managers may select low-risk projects to maintain job security or avoid high-risk projects even if they provide superior returns.

4. Reduced Market Confidence
Poor governance and agency problems reduce investor trust and may lower share prices.

5. Scandals and Regulatory Penalties
Large-scale manipulation or fraud may lead to legal consequences and reputational damage.

4.5 CORPORATE GOVERNANCE IN FINANCE

Meaning of Corporate Governance
Corporate governance refers to a framework of processes, systems, and mechanisms that ensures companies are managed in a manner that protects the interests of shareholders and stakeholders. It imposes accountability on managers, promotes transparency, and ensures ethical decision-making.
Objectives of Corporate Governance

- Protect shareholder interests
- Reduce agency conflicts
- Promote transparency in financial reporting
- Ensure managerial accountability
- Enhance investor confidence
- Promote long-term sustainability

Principles of Good Corporate Governance

1. Transparency:
   Clear and accurate disclosure of financial and operational information.
2. Accountability:
   Managers must be accountable to the board and shareholders.
3. Fairness:
   All stakeholders should be treated equitably.
4. Responsibility:
   Managers should act ethically and responsibly in decision-making.

Corporate Governance Framework in India

- SEBI (LODR) Regulations, 2015
- Companies Act, 2013
- Clause 49 of Listing Agreements
- National Guidelines on Responsible Business Conduct (NGRBC)
- Role of independent directors and audit committees

Global Governance Standards

- OECD Principles of Corporate Governance
- UK Corporate Governance Code
- United States Sarbanes–Oxley Act (SOX)

4.6 MECHANISMS TO REDUCE AGENCY CONFLICTS

Organizations adopt several instruments to align the interests of managers with those of shareholders.

1. Incentive-Based Mechanisms
a) Stock Options
Managers are allowed to purchase shares at a fixed price. If the share price rises, they benefit, aligning incentives with shareholder wealth.
b) Performance-Based Bonuses

Rewards linked to profits, revenues, or efficiency targets motivate managers to improve performance.
c) Profit-Sharing Plans
Managers receive a portion of company profits, encouraging them to pursue value-enhancing projects.

2. Monitoring Mechanisms
a) Board of Directors
Independent and active boards provide oversight of managerial decisions.
b) External and Internal Audits
Audits ensure accurate financial reporting and discourage manipulation.
c) Disclosure Requirements
Legal regulations mandate periodic disclosure, reducing asymmetry.

3. Market Mechanisms
a) Threat of Takeovers
Underperforming firms may face acquisition threats, pressuring managers to improve performance.
b) Managerial Labour Market
Reputation plays a key role. Poor performance can damage a manager's career prospects.

4. Contractual Mechanisms
a) Debt Covenants
Creditors impose restrictions on borrowing, asset sales, or dividend payment.
b) Performance Contracts
Explicit contracts link compensation with predefined outcomes.

4.7 REAL-WORLD EXAMPLES AND CASE STUDIES

Case 1: Satyam Computers – India's Corporate Governance Failure
The CEO manipulated financial statements to overstate profits and assets. Weak board oversight and lack of independent directors enabled the fraud.
Lessons:

- Need for strong audits
- Transparent reporting
- Independent boards

Case 2: Tesla Motors – Incentivizing CEO Performance
Elon Musk's compensation package linked to market capitalization and performance milestones ensured that managerial efforts aligned with shareholder expectations.
Lesson:
Properly structured incentive plans can dramatically reduce agency problems.

Case 3: Enron – Breakdown of Governance
Enron executives hid liabilities through special purpose entities, leading to one of the largest bankruptcies in U.S. history.
Lesson:
Weak governance + poor auditing = catastrophic failure.

4.8 SUMMARY

Agency conflict arises due to the separation of ownership and control in modern corporations. Shareholders hire managers to operate the company, but managers may pursue their own goals that conflict with the financial objective of shareholder wealth maximization. The principal–agent problem is therefore a fundamental issue in corporate finance.

Corporate governance seeks to mitigate this problem by promoting transparency, accountability, and fairness. Mechanisms such as independent boards, performance-based compensation, audits, disclosure requirements, and market discipline play crucial roles in reducing agency costs. Real-world corporate failures have demonstrated the importance of robust governance systems, while successful companies show that properly aligned incentives can improve performance and maximize shareholder wealth.

4.9 KEYWORDS

- Agency Conflict
- Principal–Agent Problem
- Corporate Governance
- Information Asymmetry
- Incentive Mechanisms
- Monitoring Mechanisms
- Board of Directors
- Audit Committee
- Stock Options
- Market Discipline

4.10 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

A. Short Answer Questions

1. What is the principal–agent relationship?
2. Define agency conflict.
3. State any two causes of agency problems.
4. What is corporate governance?
5. Mention two mechanisms for reducing agency conflicts.

B. Essay Questions

1. Explain the principal–agent problem in detail. Discuss how it affects financial decisions.
2. What is corporate governance? Describe the key principles of good corporate governance.
3. Discuss various mechanisms to reduce agency conflicts in corporations.
4. How do incentive structures and monitoring systems reduce agency costs? Explain with examples.
5. Analyse real-world corporate failures arising due to agency conflicts.

C. MCQs

1. Agency conflict arises due to:
   a) Lack of profits
   b) Divergent interests of managers and shareholders
   c) High competition
   d) Government regulations
2. Which of the following is a governance mechanism?
   a) Perquisite consumption
   b) Stock options

c) Insider trading
d) Excessive borrowing

3. Corporate governance ensures:
   a) Accountability
   b) Market monopoly
   c) Higher salaries for managers
   d) None
4. Market discipline includes:
   a) Threat of takeovers
   b) More perks
   c) Hidden liabilities
   d) Excessive leverage
5. Performance-based pay is an example of:
   a) Monitoring mechanism
   b) Incentive mechanism
   c) Market mechanism
   d) Regulatory mechanism

4.11 EXTENDED CASE STUDY

Case: Agency Conflict at BrightTech Solutions Ltd.
BrightTech is a high-growth IT company. The Board observed that managers were aggressively expanding into new markets without conducting adequate profitability analysis. They also noted excessive spending on high-end office interiors and executive travel. Although revenue grew, profits declined sharply for three consecutive years.
The company's major institutional investors raised concerns about misalignment between managerial decisions and shareholder interests.
Answer the Following:

1. Identify the type of agency conflict in BrightTech.
2. How can corporate governance mechanisms help prevent such practices?
3. Suggest incentive and monitoring systems that can align managers with shareholder goals.
4. Explain how information asymmetry might be contributing to the issue.

4.12 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. I.M. Pandey – *Financial Management*, Vikas Publishing
2. Khan & Jain – *Financial Management*, McGraw Hill
3. Prasanna Chandra – *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*, Tata McGraw Hill
4. Van Horne & Wachowicz – *Fundamentals of Financial Management*, Prentice Hall
5. Gitman, Lawrence J. – *Principles of Managerial Finance*, Pearson
6. Brigham & Ehrhardt – *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*, Cengage
7. **OECD Principles of Corporate Governance*
8. SEBI LODR Guidelines & Companies Act, 2013

Dr Shaik Zakir Hussain

LESSON - 5

CAPITAL BUDGETING

OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, students will be able to:

- Understand capital budgeting concepts
- Identify and evaluate investment opportunities
- Analyze risk and uncertainty
- Make informed investment decisions
- Understand financing options

STRUCTURE:

5.1 INTRODUCTION

Investment/ Capital budgeting decision is concerned with optimum utilization of fund to maximize the wealth of the organization and in turn the wealth of its shareholders. Investment decision is very crucial for an organization to fulfill its objectives; in fact, it generates revenue and ensures long term existence of the organization. Even the entities which exist not for profit are also required to make investment decision though not to earn profit but to fulfill its mission.

As we know that, each rupee of capital raised by an entity bears some cost, commonly known as cost of capital. It is necessary that each rupee raised is to be invested in a very prudent manner. It requires a proper planning for capital, and it is done through a proper budgeting. A proper budgeting requires all the characteristics of budget. Due to this feature, investment decisions are very popularly known as Capital Budgeting, which means applying the principles of budgeting for capital investment.

In simple terms, Capital Budgeting involves:

- Identification of investment projects that are strategic to business' overall objectives;
- Estimating and evaluating post-tax incremental cash flows for each of the investment proposals; and
- Selection of an investment proposal that maximizes the return to the investors.

5.2 PURPOSE OF CAPITAL BUDGTETING

The capital budgeting decisions are important, crucial and critical business decisions due to the following reasons:
(i) Substantial expenditure: Investment decisions are related with fulfillment of long-term objectives and existence of an organization. To invest in a project(s), a substantial capital investment is required. Based on size of capital and timing of cash flows, sources of finance are selected. Due to huge capital investments and associated costs, it is therefore necessary for an entity to make such decisions after a thorough study and planning.
(ii) Long time period: The capital budgeting decision has its effect over a long period of time. These decisions not only affect the future benefits and costs of the firm but also influence the rate and direction of growth of the firm.
(iii) Irreversibility: Most of the investment decisions are irreversible. Once the decision is implemented, it is very difficult and reasonably and economically not possible to reverse the decision. The reason may be upfront payment of amount, contractual obligations, technological impossibilities etc.
(iv) Complex decisions: The capital investment decision involves an assessment of future events, which in fact is difficult to predict. Further, it is quite difficult to estimate in quantitative terms, all the benefits or the costs relating to a particular investment decision.

5.3 IMPORTANCE OF CAPITAL BUDGETING

Capital budgeting is the process of planning and evaluating long-term investment projects that require large sums of money and are expected to yield returns over many years. It is one of the most important financial decisions in any business, as it directly affects its future growth and profitability.

The major importance of capital budgeting is explained below:

1. Long-Term Growth of the Firm: Capital budgeting helps in selecting projects that contribute to the long-term growth and expansion of the business. Example: Establishing a new plant or expanding production capacity.
2. Maximization of Shareholders' Wealth: Sound investment decisions lead to higher profits and increased value of the firm, thereby maximizing shareholders' wealth.
3. Efficient Utilization of Resources: It ensures that the firm's limited financial resources are allocated to the most profitable and productive investments.
4. Reduction of Risk and Uncertainty: Capital budgeting involves careful analysis of future costs, returns, and risks, helping the firm reduce uncertainty in investment decisions.
5. Better Managerial Decision-Making: It provides a scientific and systematic approach (using NPV, IRR, Payback, etc.) for evaluating various investment alternatives and selecting the best one.
6**. Control Over Capital Expenditure:** Capital budgeting sets up proper procedures for approval and monitoring of long-term investments, ensuring that funds are not misused.
7. Helps in Modernization and Cost Reduction: Through capital budgeting, firms can invest in modern technology and efficient machinery, which reduces operating costs and improves productivity.
8. Promotes Economic Development: When firms invest in new projects, it leads to industrial growth, job creation, and overall economic development of the country.

5.4 ADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS OF CAPITAL BUDGETING

Capital budgeting is the process of planning and evaluating long-term investment projects whose benefits are expected to be realized over several years. It is an important part of financial management, as it helps an organization decide how to allocate scarce resources among competing projects to achieve long-term growth and profitability.
The advantages and limitations of capital budgeting are explained below:

ADVANTAGES OF CAPITAL BUDGETING

1. Long-Term Growth and Development
Capital budgeting helps a firm plan for its long-term goals by selecting projects that will expand production, improve efficiency, and enhance profitability. Example: Setting up a new branch or investing in modern technology.
2. Efficient Utilization of Resources
It ensures that limited financial resources are used effectively by investing only in projects that are profitable and align with the firm's objectives.
3. Helps in Risk Reduction
Before approving any project, management evaluates possible risks and uncertainties such as market demand, cost fluctuations, or technological changes. This reduces the chance of failure.
4. Facilitates Better Decision-Making
Capital budgeting uses scientific and financial tools like Net Present Value (NPV), Internal Rate of Return (IRR), and Payback Period, which help in making objective and data-based decisions.
5. Maximizes Shareholders' Wealth
Sound investment decisions increase profitability and improve the market value of the company, which benefits shareholders in the long run.
6. Control over Capital Expenditure
It provides a systematic process for planning, approving, and monitoring capital projects, ensuring that funds are spent wisely and as per budget.
7. Encourages Innovation and Modernization
By evaluating projects that involve new technologies or methods, capital budgeting promotes modernization and innovation in the organization.
8. Promotes Economic Growth
Capital budgeting not only helps the firm but also contributes to the overall economic development by creating jobs, increasing productivity, and enhancing industrial growth.

IMITATIONS OF CAPITAL BUDGETING

1. Based on Estimates and Forecasts
   Capital budgeting decisions depend on future projections of costs, revenues, and cash flows. Since these are based on assumptions, they may not always be accurate.
2. Difficulty in Measuring Intangible Benefits
   Certain benefits like improved employee morale, goodwill, or customer satisfaction cannot be easily quantified in monetary terms.
3. Time-Consuming and Complex Process
   Evaluating multiple investment proposals requires detailed data, analysis, and judgment, which makes the process lengthy and complicated.
4. Affected by External Factors

Economic conditions, inflation, tax policies, and government regulations can influence the success or failure of capital investment projects.

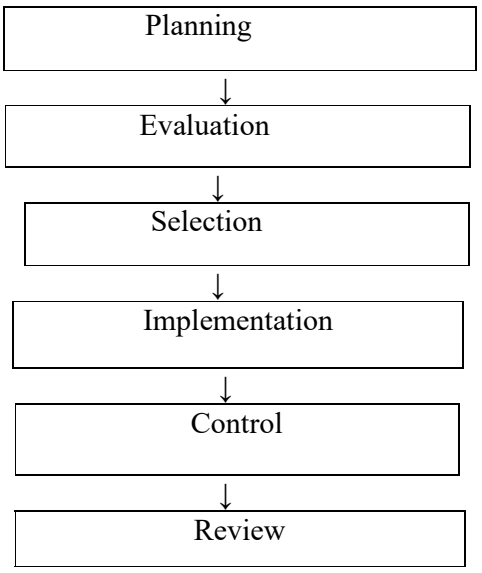
5. Possibility of Wrong Decision
   If incorrect techniques, unrealistic assumptions, or poor data are used, the firm may select an unprofitable or risky project, leading to financial loss.
6. Requires Huge Initial Capital
   Most capital projects involve heavy initial investment, which can strain the firm's financial position if not managed properly.

Conclusion

Capital budgeting is a vital tool for long-term financial planning, as it helps in selecting and implementing profitable investment projects that ensure the firm's growth and stability. However, due to its dependence on forecasts and external factors, it must be applied with careful analysis, realistic assumptions, and regular review.

5.5 CAPITAL BUDGETING PROCESS

The extent to which the capital budgeting process needs to be formalised and systematic procedures to be established depends on the size of the organisation; number of projects to be considered; direct financial benefit of each project considered by itself; the composition of the firm's existing assets and management's desire to change that composition; timing of expenditures associated with the projects that are finally accepted.



(i) Planning: The capital budgeting process begins with the identification of potential investment opportunities. The opportunity then enters the planning phase when the potential effect on the firm's fortunes is assessed and the ability of the management of the firm to exploit the opportunity is determined. Opportunities having little merit are rejected and promising opportunities are advanced in the form of a proposal to enter the evaluation phase.

(ii) Evaluation: This phase involves the determination of proposal and its investments, inflows and outflows. Investment appraisal techniques, ranging from the simple payback method and accounting rate of return to the more sophisticated discounted cash flow techniques, are used to

appraise the proposals. The technique selected should be the one that enables the manager to make the best decision in the light of prevailing circumstances.
(iii) Selection: Considering the returns and risks associated with the individual projects as well as the cost of capital to the organisation, the organisation will choose among projects which maximises the shareholders' wealth.
(iv) Implementation: When the final selection is made, the firm must acquire the necessary funds, purchase the assets, and begin the implementation of the project.
(v) Control: The progress of the project is monitored with the aid of feedback reports. These reports will include capital expenditure progress reports performance reports comparing actual performance against plans set and post completion audits.
(vi) Review: When a project terminates, or even before, the organisation should review the entire project to explain its success or failure. This phase may have implication for firm's planning and evaluation procedures. Further, the review may produce ideas for new proposals to be undertaken in the future.

5.6 TYPES OF INVESTMENT DECISIONS

Investment decisions, also known as capital budgeting decisions, refer to the process of allocating a firm's financial resources into long-term projects or assets that will generate future returns. These decisions are vital as they determine the future growth, profitability, and financial stability of a business.
Investment decisions can be classified under two main bases:

1. On the basis of Firm's Existence
2. On the basis of Decision Situation

I. On the Basis of Firm's Existence: Investment decisions vary depending on whether the firm is newly established or an existing one.

i) New Firm Investment Decisions

When a business is being established, it must make several basic investment decisions that will lay the foundation for its future operations.
These include:

- Selection of the type of business or product.
- Determining the size and scale of operations.
- Selecting the location of the plant or office.
- Choosing appropriate technology and machinery.

Example*:* A new textile company deciding where to set up its manufacturing unit and what machinery to buy.
Purpose: To make initial investment decisions that ensure a strong and profitable start for the firm.

ii) Existing Firm Investment Decisions: For an already established firm, investment decisions are made to improve, expand, or diversify operations. These are mainly of the following types:

(a) Expansion Decisions

Made when a firm wants to increase its production capacity or enter new markets. Example*:* Setting up a new branch or launching a new product line.

(b) Replacement and Modernization Decisions

Involve replacing old or inefficient assets with new and improved ones to enhance productivity and reduce costs. Example*:* Replacing old machinery with advanced, automated equipment.

(c) Diversification Decisions

These are made when a firm wants to invest in a new line of business different from its existing operations to reduce risk. Example*:* A cement company investing in ready-mix concrete production.

Purpose: To strengthen the firm's market position and maintain long-term competitiveness.

2. On the Basis of Decision Situation: Investment decisions can also be classified based on the situation or condition under which the decision is made.

i) Mutually Exclusive Decisions

These occur when a firm has several competing investment proposals, but only one can be selected. The acceptance of one automatically leads to the rejection of others. Example: Choosing between two different factory locations.

ii) Accept–Reject Decisions

Each project is considered independently. If it meets the firm's minimum required rate of return, it is accepted; otherwise, it is rejected. Example: Accepting a project with a positive NPV and rejecting one with a negative NPV.

iii) Contingent Decisions

These are dependent investment decisions, where acceptance of one project depends on the acceptance of another related project. Example: if a company accepts a proposal to set up a factory in remote area, it will have to invest in infrastructure, like building of roads, houses for employees etc.

iv) Independent Decisions

In these decisions, projects are independent of each other, and more than one can be undertaken if funds are available. Example*:* Investing simultaneously in both product improvement and staff training.

Conclusion : Investment decisions play a key role in the strategic and financial planning of any business.

- On the basis of firm's existence, decisions can be new firm decisions or existing firm decisions (expansion, replacement, diversification)
- On the basis of decision situation, they include mutually exclusive, accept–reject, contingent, and independent decisions.

These decisions help the firm utilize its financial resources efficiently, manage risk, and ensure long-term profitability and growth.

5.7 SUMMARY

Capital budgeting is the process of planning and evaluating long term investments that involve significant financial commitments, such as purchasing machinery, expanding business operations or developing new products. The main purpose of capital budgeting is to select projects that maximize profitability, ensure efficient use of resources and support the long term growth and financial stability of the firm. The process involves identifying investment opportunities, evaluating and selecting the most profitable projects, arranging financing, implementing the project and reviewing its performance. Investment decisions under capital budgeting can be of various types, including expansion, replacement, diversification and modernization, depending on the firms objectives and the nature of the decision situation.

5.8 KEY TERMS

Capital budgeting, investment decisions, long term investment, purpose of capital budgeting, capital expenditure, capital budgeting process, project evaluation, mutually exclusive projects, independent projects.

5.9 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

5.9.1 Short Questions

1. Define capital budgeting and explain its importance.
2. Explain the main purpose of capital budgeting
3. What are the steps involved in the capital budgeting process?
4. Write a short note on types of investment decisions.
5. Differentiate between mutually exclusive projects and independent projects.

5.9.2 Essay Questions

1. Explain the advantages and limitations of capital budgeting.
2. Describe the types of investment decisions taken by firms under capital budgeting
3. Capital budgeting is a tool for long term decision making- Explain this statement with examples.
4. Explain the types of investment decisions based on firms existence and decision situation.
5. Explain in detail the steps involves in capital budgeting and their significance.

5.9.3 MCQs

1. Capital budgeting deals with:
   a) Short-term investment decisions
   b) Long-term investment decisions
   c) Working capital management
   d) Inventory control

2. The main objective of capital budgeting is:
   a) To maintain liquidity
   b) To minimize cost
   c) To maximize shareholder wealth
   d) To increase working capital

3. Capital budgeting is also known as:
   a) Dividend decision
   b) Financing decision
   c) Investment decision
   d) Marketing decision

4. Capital budgeting involves:
   a) Short-term expenditure
   b) Long-term fixed assets investment
   c) Managing day-to-day expenses
   d) Reducing tax liability

5. Which of the following is a feature of capital budgeting?
   a) It involves routine expenses
   b) It affects long-term profitability
   c) It does not involve risk
   d) It focuses on current assets only

6. The purpose of capital budgeting is to:
   a) Increase short-term profits
   b) Evaluate long-term investment proposals
   c) Control working capital
   d) Prepare financial statements

7. Which of the following is not a purpose of capital budgeting?
   a) Long-term planning
   b) Risk assessment
   c) Tax calculation
   d) Resource allocation

8. Capital budgeting helps management in:
   a) Short-term credit decisions
   b) Long-term financial planning
   c) Day-to-day expense management
   d) Payroll control

9. The goal of capital budgeting is to:
   a) Increase the number of projects
   b) Maximize profitability and growth
   c) Reduce working capital
   d) Decrease depreciation

10. Capital budgeting decisions are important because they:
   a) Affect only current year's profits
   b) Are reversible in nature
   c) Affect long-term financial stability
   d) Are unrelated to risk

11. The first step in the capital budgeting process is:
   a) Project evaluation
   b) Identification of investment proposals
   c) Project implementation
   d) Performance review

12. The last step in the capital budgeting process is:
   a) Implementation of project
   b) Screening proposals
   c) Performance review
   d) Selection of project

13. Evaluating investment proposals involves:
a) Only financial analysis
b) Only qualitative analysis
c) Both financial and non-financial analysis
d) None of the above

14. Which of the following techniques is used in project evaluation?
a) Ratio analysis
b) Net Present Value (NPV)
c) Trial balance
d) Audit report

15. Project implementation involves:
a) Monitoring and controlling project activities
b) Ignoring cash flows
c) Only recording transactions
d) Conducting tax audits

16. A decision to replace old machinery with new machinery is a:
a) Expansion decision
b) Replacement decision
c) Modernization decision
d) Diversification decision

17. Investment made to improve production efficiency is a:
a) Diversification decision
b) Modernization decision
c) Expansion decision
d) Routine decision

18. Investment made to produce new products or enter new markets is called:
a) Replacement decision
b) Diversification decision
c) Expansion decision
d) Cost control decision

19. Expanding the capacity of existing production is an example of:
a) Modernization decision
b) Expansion decision
c) Replacement decision
d) Diversification decision

20. Projects that are independent of each other are called:
a) Mutually exclusive projects
b) Independent projects
c) Complementary projects
d) Dependent projects

ANSWERS:

1. b) Long-term investment decisions
2. c) To maximize shareholder wealth
3. c) Investment decision
4. b) Long-term fixed assets investment
5. b) It affects long-term profitability
6. b) Evaluate long-term investment proposals
7. c) Tax calculation
8. b) Long-term financial planning
9. b) Maximize profitability and growth
10. c) Affect long-term financial stability
11. b) Identification of investment proposals
12. c) Performance review
13. c) Both financial and non-financial analysis
14. b) Net Present Value (NPV)
15. a) Monitoring and controlling project activities
16. b) Replacement decision
17. b) Modernization decision
18. b) Diversification decision
19. b) Expansion decision
20. b) Independent projects

5.10 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Sheeba Kapil. Financial Management, Pearson, 2011.
2. Jonthan Berk Financial Management, Pearson, 2010.
3. Van Home. James C. "Financial Management", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, Delhi.
4. Hampton, John J. "Financial Decision Making", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi..
5. Khan, M.Y. & Jain P.K "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub. Co. Ltd New Delhi.
6. Panday, I.M. "Financial Management", Vikas Publishing House (P) Ltd.
7. Kulkarni, P.V. "Financial Management", Himalaya Publishing House.
8. Maheswari S.N. "Principles of Financial Management", S Chand & Sons.
9. Srivatsava R.M. "Essentials of Business Financial", Himalaya Publishing House,
10. Tulsan, P.C. "Financial Management", S. Chand & Co. New Delhi.

Dr. S. SRINIVASA RAO

LESSON - 6

ESTIMATION AND MEASUREMENT OF CASH FLOWS

OBJECTIVES:

After studying this lesson, students will be able to:

- Identify relevant cash flows
- Estimate and measure cash flows
- Understand the impact of taxes and depreciation on cash flows
- Identify changes in working capital requirements and their impact on cash flows
- Assess the risk associated with a project's cash flows

STRUCTURE:

6.1 ESTIMATION OF PROJECT CASH FLOWS

Capital Budgeting analysis considers only incremental cash flows from an investment likely to result due to acceptance of any project. Therefore, one of the most important tasks in capital budgeting is estimating future cash flows for a project. Though one of the techniques i.e., Accounting Rate of Return (ARR) evaluates profitability of a project on the basis of accounting profit, but accounting profit has its own limitations. Timings of cash flow may not match with the period of profit. Further, non-cash items like depreciation have no immediate cash outflow. The cash flows are estimated on the basis of inputs provided by various departments such as Production department, Finance department, Marketing department, etc. The project cash flow stream consists of cash outflows and cash inflows. The costs are denoted as "cash outflows" whereas the benefits are denoted as "cash inflows". An investment decision implies the choice of an objective, an appraisal technique and the project's life. The objective and technique must be related to definite period of time.

The life of the project may be determined by taking into consideration the following factors:

(i) Technological obsolescence;

(ii) Physical deterioration; and

(iii) Decline in demand for the output of the project

No matter how good a company's maintenance policy, technological or demand forecasting abilities are, uncertainty will always be there.

6.1.1 CALCULATING CASH FLOWS

Before we analyze how cash flow is computed in capital budgeting decision, following items needs consideration:

(a) Depreciation: As mentioned earlier, depreciation is a non-cash item and itself does not affect the cash flow. However, we must consider tax shield or benefit from depreciation in our analysis. Since this benefit reduces cash outflow for taxes, it is considered as cash inflow. To understand how depreciation acts as tax shield.

(b) Opportunity Cost: Opportunity cost is foregoing of a benefit due to choosing an alternative investment option. For example, if a company owns a piece of land acquired 10 years ago for Rs. 1 crore can be sold for Rs. 10 Crore. If the company uses this piece of land for a project, then its sale value i.e. Rs. 10 crore forms the part of initial outlay as by using the land the company has foregone Rs.10 crore which could be earned by selling it. This opportunity cost can occur both at the time of initial outlay and during the tenure of the project. Opportunity costs are considered for estimation of cash outflows.

(c) Sunk Cost: Sunk cost is an outlay of cash that has already been incurred in the past and cannot be reversed in present. Therefore, these costs do not have any impact on decision making, hence should be excluded from capital budgeting analysis. For example, if a company has paid a sum of Rs.1,00,000 for consultancy fees to a firm to prepare a Project Report for analysing a particular project. Then the consultancy fee paid is irrelevant and is not considered for estimating cash flows as it has already been paid and shall not affect our decision whether project should be undertaken or not.

(d) Working Capital: Every big project requires working capital because, for every business, investment in working capital is must. Therefore, while evaluating the projects, initial working capital requirement should be treated as cash outflow and at the end of the project its release should be treated as cash inflow. It is important to note that no depreciation is provided on working capital though it might be possible that at the time of its release its value might have been reduced. Further there may be also a possibility that additional working capital may be required during the life of the project. In such cases the additional working capital required is treated as cash outflow at that period of time. Similarly, any reduction in working capital shall be treated as cash inflow. It may be noted that, if nothing has been specifically mentioned for the release of working capital it is assumed that full amount has been realized at the end of the project. However, adjustment on account of increase or decrease in working capital needs to be incorporated.

(e) Allocated Overheads: As discussed in the subject of Cost and Management Accounting, allocated overheads are charged on the basis of some rational basis such as machine hour, labour hour, direct material consumption etc. Since, expenditures already incurred are allocated to new proposal, they should not be considered as cash flows. However, if it is expected that overhead cost shall increase due to acceptance of any proposal then incremental overhead cost shall be treated as cash outflow.

(f) Additional Capital Investment: It is not necessary that capital investment shall be required in the beginning of the project. It can also be required during the continuance of the project. In such cases, it shall be treated as cash outflows at that period of time.

6.1.2 CATEGORIES OF CASH FLOWS

Capital budgeting refers to the process of planning and evaluating long-term investment decisions involving large expenditures on projects such as expansion, replacement, modernization, or new ventures. A crucial element in capital budgeting is the estimation of cash flows associated with each project, as these flows form the basis for evaluating the profitability and viability of an investment.

The cash flows in capital budgeting are classified into three main categories, which occur at different stages of the project's life cycle. These are:

1. Initial Investment (Initial Cash Outflow)
2. Operating Cash Flows (During the Project's Life)
3. Terminal Cash Flow (At the End of the Project)

1. Initial Investment (Initial Cash Outflow): The initial investment represents the cash outlay required at the beginning of the project to acquire fixed assets and make them ready for use. It is a one-time expenditure that occurs at the start of the project.

Components:

- Cost of new asset: Price paid for machinery, equipment, or building.
- Installation and transportation expenses: Costs incurred to bring the asset into working condition.
- Working capital requirements: Additional current assets needed for project operations (inventory, receivables, etc.).
- Less: Sale proceeds of old asset (if any): Net of tax if an old asset is replaced.
- Less: Tax benefits due to loss on sale of old asset (if applicable).

Formula:

Initial Outlay= Cost of new asset + Installation cost + Increase in working capital - Sale of old asset (after tax)

Example:

If a machine costs ₹10,00,000, installation is ₹50,000, and old machine sold for ₹1,00,000 (after tax),

then Initial Investment = ₹10,00,000 + ₹50,000 − ₹1,00,000 = ₹9,50,000.

2. Operating Cash Flows (During the Project's Life): Operating cash flows are the net annual cash inflows generated by the project through its regular operations during its useful life. These are the recurring cash flows that result from the use of the asset.

Components:

- Cash inflows: Sales revenue, cost savings, or other income generated by the project.
- Cash outflows: Operating expenses such as wages, raw materials, maintenance, and taxes.
- Non-cash adjustments: Depreciation and amortization are added back, as they do not involve actual cash outflow.

Formula:
Operating Cash Flow = Net Profit after Tax + Depreciation + Other non-cash expenses.

Importance:
Operating cash flows measure the ability of the project to generate funds during its operation and are used to determine the project's Net Present Value (NPV) and Payback Period.

Example:
If net profit after tax is ₹2,00,000 and depreciation is ₹50,000,
Operating Cash Flow = ₹2,00,000 + ₹50,000 = ₹2,50,000 per year.

3. Terminal Cash Flow (At the End of the Project): At the end of the project's life, certain additional cash inflows or outflows arise, known as terminal cash flows. These are non-recurring cash flows occurring at the project's termination.

Components:

- Salvage (scrap) value of assets: Cash received from the sale of machinery or equipment at the end of its life.
- Recovery of working capital: Release of funds tied up in inventories and receivables.
- Less: Taxes on gains: If the asset is sold at a price higher than its book value, the gain is taxable.

Formula:
Terminal Cash Flow = Salvage Value (after tax)} + Recovery of Working Capital

Example:
If machinery has a scrap value of ₹1,50,000 and working capital recovery is ₹50,000,
Terminal Cash Flow = ₹1,50,000 + ₹50,000 = ₹2,00,000.

Conclusion
In conclusion, the evaluation of capital projects depends on accurately estimating all three categories of cash flows — initial, operating, and terminal. Each type of cash flow plays a vital role in determining the overall profitability and feasibility of the investment. By discounting these cash flows to their present values, financial managers can assess whether the project will add value to the firm, ensuring sound long-term investment decisions.

6.2 BASIC PRINCIPLES FOR MEASURING PROJECT CASH FLOWS

In capital budgeting, the evaluation of a project depends on its future expected cash flows. To measure these cash flows correctly, certain basic principles are followed so that only relevant, realistic and consistent figures are considered.
Among these, three important principles are:

1. Block of Assets and Depreciation
2. Exclusion of Financing Cost Principle
3. Post-Tax Principle

6.2.1 Block of Assets and Depreciation

A block of assets refers to a group of assets falling within a particular class on which the same rate of depreciation is applied. According to the Income Tax Act, assets are not depreciated individually; instead, depreciation is calculated on the written down value (WDV) of the entire block.

Treatment in Project Cash Flows

Depreciation is a non-cash expense, which means it does not involve any actual outflow of cash.
However, it is very important in capital budgeting because it provides a tax shield — reducing taxable income and thereby lowering the tax liability of the firm.
Principle

While calculating project cash flows:

- Depreciation itself is not deducted as a cash outflow since it does not reduce cash.
- But the tax benefit arising from depreciation (depreciation tax shield) should be included as an inflow.

Example

If annual depreciation = ₹1,00,000 and tax rate = 30%,
Tax shield = ₹1,00,000 × 30% = ₹30,000 (treated as a cash inflow).

Thus, under the block of assets concept, depreciation is grouped for tax purposes, and the resulting tax saving is included in project cash flows.

6.2.2 Exclusion of Financing Cost Principle

According to this principle, financing costs such as interest on loans, dividends, and repayment of borrowings should not be included in project cash flows.
Reason

Financing costs represent the method of financing the project, not its operational performance. Capital budgeting evaluates whether the project itself is profitable — independent of how it is financed.

The cost of financing is already considered in the discount rate or cost of capital, which is used to compute the project's Net Present Value (NPV). Including financing costs again in the cash flows would lead to double counting.

Example
If a project is financed partly by a loan, the interest paid on that loan should not be deducted from the project's cash inflows. Instead, the project's cash flows should reflect only operating revenues and costs. The cost of borrowing is captured in the discount rate (e.g., WACC) used for evaluation.

6.2.3 Post-Tax Principle

The post-tax principle states that all cash flows should be estimated after considering income tax effects. Taxes are real cash outflows that directly affect the firm's profitability, so ignoring them would overstate project returns.

Importance

Capital budgeting aims to measure the actual benefit available to shareholders, which comes only after paying taxes. Therefore, both inflows and outflows should be calculated on an after-tax basis.

Treatment

While estimating cash flows:

- Deduct tax expenses from net operating income.
- Include tax benefits like depreciation tax shield.
- Use an after-tax discount rate (cost of capital after tax).

Example

If project profit before tax is ₹2,00,000 and the tax rate is 30%,
then post-tax cash flow = ₹2,00,000 × (1 − 0.30) = ₹1,40,000.

This post-tax figure represents the true cash available to the firm from the project.

Conclusion

In conclusion, while measuring project cash flows, it is essential to follow the principles of block of assets and depreciation, exclusion of financing cost, and post-tax calculation. These principles ensure that project evaluation reflects the true economic viability of the investment by including only relevant cash flows, avoiding duplication, and considering the impact of taxation. Adhering to these rules helps management make sound and reliable investment decisions that enhance the firm's long-term value.

6.3 SUMMARY

Estimation and measurement of cash flows in capital budgeting involve identifying all relevant future cash inflows and outflows that result from undertaking a project. It focuses on incremental cash flows, i.e., the difference between the firm's cash position with and without the project. Only actual cash movements are considered, not accounting profits, and all figures are measured on an after-tax basis. Non-cash items like depreciation are excluded, though their

tax benefits are included. Sunk costs are ignored, while opportunity costs, changes in working capital, and terminal values are included. Financing costs such as interest are excluded to avoid double counting since they are reflected in the cost of capital. By following these principles, managers can ensure that project evaluation reflects the true economic value and supports rational investment decisions.

6.4 KEY TERMS

Incremental cash flows, after-tax basis, depreciation tax shield, opportunity cost, sunk cost, working capital changes, terminal value, financing cost exclusion, real cash inflows and outflows, project evaluation.

6.5 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

6.5.1 SHORT QUESTIONS

1. Define cash flows in capital budgeting.
2. What is meant by incremental cash flow?
3. What is the difference between accounting profit and cash flow?
4. What are sunk costs? Give an example.
5. What is meant by opportunity cost?
6. What is a depreciation tax shield?
7. What are terminal cash flows?
8. Why are financing costs excluded in project cash flows?
9. What is meant by after-tax cash flow?
10. What are the components of project cash flow?

6.5.2 ESSAY QUESTIONS

1. Explain the basic principles for measuring project cash flows in detail.
2. Discuss the different categories of cash flows considered in capital budgeting.
3. Explain the estimation and measurement of project cash flows with examples.
4. Discuss the treatment of depreciation, taxation, and working capital in measuring project cash flows.
5. What is meant by incremental cash flow? How is it different from accounting income?
6. Explain the importance of estimating cash flows accurately in capital budgeting decisions.
7. Discuss the exclusion of financing costs and its significance in cash flow estimation.
8. Explain the concept of after-tax cash flows and its role in project evaluation.
9. Describe the treatment of sunk costs, opportunity costs, and terminal value in project cash flow measurement.
10. Write an essay on block of assets and depreciation principle in project cash flow estimation

6.5.3 MCQs

1. In capital budgeting, cash flow estimation should be based on:
a) Accounting profit
b) Incremental cash flows
c) Total revenue
d) Historical cost

2. Which of the following should be excluded from project cash flows?
a) Opportunity cost
b) Depreciation tax shield
c) Sunk cost
d) Working capital investment

3. Depreciation is considered in project cash flow estimation because it:
a) Is a cash expense
b) Reduces the total revenue
c) Provides a tax shield
d) Increases operating cost

4. The difference between cash flows with a project and without a project is called:
a) Net cash flow
b) Incremental cash flow
c) Operating profit
d) Terminal cash flow
5. Financing costs such as interest and dividends are:

a) Included in project cash flows
b) Ignored because they are financing decisions
c) Added to terminal value
d) Treated as tax shields

6. Cash flows should always be estimated on a:

a) Pre-tax basis
b) Nominal basis
c) Post-tax basis
d) Gross income basis

7. Which of the following is a *non-cash item* and should be adjusted while estimating cash flows?

a) Tax payment
b) Depreciation
c) Raw material cost
d) Sales revenue

8. An increase in working capital during a project's life is treated as:

a) Cash inflow
b) Cash outflow

c) Non-cash adjustment
d) Financing activity

9. The recovery of working capital at the end of a project is treated as:

a) Non-relevant
b) Sunk cost
c) Cash inflow
d) Tax expense

10. Terminal cash flows include:

a) Depreciation expense
b) Salvage value and recovery of working capital
c) Interest on loans
d) Opportunity cost

Answer Key:
1 – b ; 2 – c; 3 – c; 4 – b ; 5 – b; 6 – c; 7 – b; 8 – b ; 9 – c ; ;10 – b

6.6 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Sheeba Kapil. Financial Management, Pearson, 2011.
2. Jonthan Berk Financial Management, Pearson, 2010.
3. Van Home. James C. "Financial Management", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, Delhi.
4. Hampton, John J. "Financial Decision Making", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi..
5. Khan, M.Y. & Jain P.K "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub. Co. Ltd New Delhi.
6. Panday, I.M. "Financial Management", Vikas Publishing House (P) Ltd.
7. Kulkarni, P.V. "Financial Management", Himalaya Publishing House.
8. Maheswari S.N. "Principles of Financial Management", S Chand & Sons.
9. Srivatsava R.M. "Essentials of Business Financial", Himalaya Publishing House,
10. Tulsan, P.C. "Financial Management", S. Chand & Co. New Delhi.

Dr. S. SRINIVASA RAO

LESSON - 7

INVESTMENT APPRAISAL TECHNIQUES

OBJECTIVES:

After studying this lesson, students will be able to:

- Understand the various investment evaluation techniques
- Apply the concepts of the various investment evaluation techniques for capital investment in decision making
- Understand the advantages and disadvantages of the above mentioned evaluation techniques.

STRUCTURE:

7.1 INTRODUCTION

Investment appraisal refers to the process of evaluating and comparing different investment or project opportunities to determine their profitability, feasibility, and risk before committing funds. It is a key part of capital budgeting, which helps management decide whether a long-term investment will add value to the firm.

Investment appraisal techniques provide quantitative tools to estimate future cash inflows and outflows, measure the project's return, and assess its contribution to the company's objectives. These techniques help in selecting the most economically viable project among alternatives.

Broadly, investment appraisal methods are classified into two categories:

1. Traditional (Non-discounted) Methods – which do not consider the time value of money, e.g. Payback Period (PBP) and Accounting Rate of Return (ARR).

2. Modern (Discounted Cash Flow) Methods – which recognize the time value of money, e.g. Net Present Value (NPV), Internal Rate of Return (IRR), Profitability Index (PI),

Investment appraisal techniques guide managers in making rational, objective, and profitable investment decisions, ensuring that limited financial resources are used efficiently to maximize shareholder wealth.

7.2 TRADITIONAL METHODS

These techniques of capital budgeting does not discount the future cash flows. There are two such traditional techniques namely payback period (PBP) and Accounting rate of return (ARR).

7.2.1 PAYBACK PERIOD

It is the period / number of years in which the project pays back the cost of investment & it is the period taken by the project to return the investment. The payback period is divided into 2 methods.

1. Even cash flows 2.Uneven cash flows

1. Even cash flows: if there are even cash flows, the payback period may be calculated as follows.

PBP= Cost of the project÷Annual profit after tax

Example: A project cost Rs. 85000 the annual profit after tax is estimated at Rs.15000. Calculate Payback Period.

Solution: PBP = Cost of the project÷Annual profit after tax

= 85000/15000

= 5.67

Therefore PBP = 5.67 years

2. Uneven cash flows:

Step 1: Find the cumulative

Step 2: Identify the number of full years& the fraction of the year.

Step 3: The Fraction of the year can be calculated by dividing the balance of cost to be recovered by profits after tax of the year

Example: Cost of the project is 60,000 , its life is estimated at 5 years. The estimated profit after tax are given below calculate payback period.

Year	Profit after tax
1	5000
2	10000
3	15000
4	20000
5	25000

Solution: Calculation of payback period

Year	Profit after tax	Cumulative
1	5000	5000
2	10000	15000
3	15000	30000
4	20000	50000
5	25000	75000

PBP= Full year + fraction of the year (balance of cost of the project/ PAT of the year)
= 4 + 10000/25000
=4+0.4
=4.4 years

Note: PBP lies between 4 to 5 years. Since up to 4 years, a sum of Rs.50000 shall be recovered and the balance of Rs.10000 shall be recovered in the part (fraction) of 5th year.
Advantages of payback period

The Payback Period (PBP) is a popular and simple technique used in capital budgeting to determine how long it will take to recover the initial investment from a project's cash inflows. It helps management assess the liquidity, risk, and feasibility of investment proposals.

Here are the main advantages of using the Payback Period in capital budgeting:

1. Simple and Easy to Understand: The Payback Period method is straightforward and easy to apply. It requires only basic information about cash inflows and the initial investment, making it ideal for quick decision-making.
2. Emphasizes Liquidity: It helps managers understand how quickly the invested funds can be recovered. This is particularly important for firms that face cash flow constraints or require quick capital recovery to reinvest elsewhere.
3. Useful in Risk Assessment: Projects with shorter payback periods are less risky because the firm's funds are tied up for a shorter time. Hence, it is helpful for firms operating in unstable or uncertain industries.
4. Quick Evaluation Tool: The method is useful for preliminary screening of projects before applying more sophisticated techniques like NPV or IRR. It helps eliminate projects with excessively long recovery periods early in the analysis.
5. Focus on Early Cash Inflows: It encourages investments that generate cash inflows early, which improves liquidity and reduces exposure to future uncertainties.
6. Suitable for Short-term Decisions: The method is particularly suitable for evaluating short-term projects where future cash flows beyond a few years are uncertain.
7. Helps in Managing Financial Risk: By preferring projects that recover costs quickly, the firm can reduce the risk of capital loss due to market changes, inflation, or technological obsolescence.

Disadvantages of payback period

While the Payback Period (PBP) method is simple and useful for assessing how quickly an investment can recover its initial cost, it has several limitations that make it less reliable for long-term capital budgeting decisions.
Here are the main disadvantages of the Payback Period method:

1. Ignores Time Value of Money: The traditional payback method does not consider the time value of money, meaning it treats all cash inflows equally, regardless of when they occur. This can lead to incorrect comparisons between projects with different cash flow timings.
2. Ignores Cash Flows After Payback Period: Once the initial investment is recovered, any additional cash inflows generated by the project are completely ignored. As a result, a project that gives quick returns but low total profits may be preferred over one with higher long-term benefits.
3. Not a Measure of Profitability: The method focuses only on liquidity, not on the overall profitability or return on investment. It cannot show whether a project adds value to the firm or meets shareholders' wealth objectives.
4. No Consideration of Project Life:The payback method does not consider the total life span of a project. Projects with a short payback but shorter lifespan may appear more attractive than those with longer, more profitable durations.
5. Lacks Objective Decision Criteria: The method does not have a clear benchmark or theoretical basis for what constitutes an "acceptable" payback period. The decision often depends on management's subjective judgment.
6. Unsuitable for Long-term Investments: For projects with long-term cash flows or delayed benefits, the payback method gives misleading results as it favors short-term projects.
7. Ignores Risk Differences After Payback: It assumes that once the investment is recovered, there is no risk involved, which is unrealistic in many business situations.

7.2.2 ACCOUNTING RATE OF RETURN OR AVERAGE RATE OF RETURN (ARR)

The Accounting Rate of Return (ARR) is a traditional (non-discounted) method of investment appraisal used in capital budgeting. It measures the average annual accounting profit expected from an investment as a percentage of the average or initial investment.
It helps management evaluate the profitability of a project based on accounting information rather than cash flows.

Definition

According to Solomon, "The Accounting Rate of Return is the ratio of the average annual profit after taxes to the average investment."

Formula

ARR = Average Annual Profit/ Average Investment X 100

Steps to Calculate ARR

1. Estimate total profit after tax from the project over its useful life.
2. Find the average annual profit by dividing total profit by the number of years.
3. Compute the average investment, usually as:
   Average Investment = Initial Investment + Scrap Value / 2
4. Apply the formula to calculate the Accounting Rate of Return.

Example: XYZ LTD is planning to invest in a new project which is expected to cost Rs.100000. The project has 5 years life. The estimated Profit after tax (PAT) are as follows:

YEAR	1	2	3	4	5
PAT	10000	11500	13000	12000	11500

Calculate Average rate of return(ARR)

Solution: ARR = Average Annual Profit/ Average Investment X 100

Average annual profit= total profit / No.of years

= 58000/5

= 11600

Average investment= Initial investment/2

= 100000/2

= 50000

Therefore ARR= 11600/50000 X 100

= 23.2%

Decision Rule

- Accept the project if ARR ≥ the firm's required rate of return (cut-off rate).
- Reject the project if ARR < required rate of return.
- When comparing multiple projects, select the one with the highest ARR.

Advantages of ARR

1. Simple and easy to understand.
2. Uses accounting data that are readily available from financial statements.
3. Measures profitability over the project's entire life.
4. Considers total earnings rather than focusing only on cash recovery.
5. Useful for performance evaluation since it's based on accounting returns similar to ROI (Return on Investment).

Disadvantages of ARR

1. Ignores time value of money.
2. Based on accounting profits, not actual cash flows.
3. Depends on accounting policies (e.g., depreciation methods) which can distort results.
4. No objective standard for acceptable ARR.
5. Ignores project risk and timing of profits.

7.3 DISCOUNTED CASH FLOW TECHNIQUES (NPV,IRR, PI)

Discounted Cash Flow (DCF) techniques are modern and scientific methods used in capital budgeting to evaluate long-term investment proposals by considering the time value of money. Capital budgeting decisions involve heavy financial commitments, and the benefits from such investments are received over several years. Therefore, simply comparing future cash inflows and outflows is not enough. DCF techniques overcome this limitation by discounting all future cash flows to their present values using a suitable discount rate, usually the firm's cost of capital.

DCF techniques help in determining whether a project will add value to the firm by comparing the present value of expected benefits with the present value of costs. These methods account for the magnitude, timing, and risk of cash flows, making them more accurate and reliable than traditional (non-discounting) techniques.

The main DCF techniques used in capital budgeting include:

- Net Present Value (NPV)
- Internal Rate of Return (IRR)
- Profitability Index (PI)

Since these techniques align with the goal of maximizing shareholder wealth, they are widely preferred in modern financial management for evaluating expansion, replacement, diversification, and other capital investment decisions.

7.3.1 NET PRESENT VALUE (NPV)

Net Present Value (NPV) is one of the most important Discounted Cash Flow (DCF) techniques used in capital budgeting to evaluate the profitability of long-term projects. NPV measures the difference between the present value of cash inflows and the present value of cash outflows over the life of a project.

Since money has a time value, future cash flows are discounted to their present values using a discount rate (usually the cost of capital). A project is considered profitable if the total present value of inflows exceeds the present value of outflows.
Formula

$$NPV=\sum \text{Cash Inflows}/(1+r)t-\text{Initial Investment}$$

Where:

- (r) = Discount rate
- (t) = Time period

Decision Rule

- NPV > 0 → Accept the project (creates wealth)
- NPV < 0 → Reject the project (destroys wealth)
- NPV = 0 → Indifferent (does not affect wealth)

Advantages of NPV

- Considers time value of money.
- Considers all cash flows throughout the project's life.
- Based on wealth maximization principle.
- Suitable for comparing mutually exclusive projects.

Limitations of NPV

- Requires estimation of future cash flows, which may be uncertain.
- Depends on selecting an appropriate discount rate.
- More complex than traditional methods.

EXAMPLE: A company is proposing to invest in a project whose cost is Rs.200000. The life of the project is 5 years. The estimated cash flows after tax(CFAT) are as follows:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
CFAT	30000	40000	80000	130000	70000

The company's required rate of return is 10%. Calculate Net Present Value.
Solution: Calculation of NPV

Year	Cash flows	PV Factor@10%	PV of Discounted cash flows
1	30000	0.909	27270
2	40000	0.826	33040
3	80000	0.751	60080
4	130000	0.683	88790
5	70000	0.621	43470
			252650

NPV= ∑PVCFAT-Cost of the project
= 252650-200000
=52650

Since the net present value of the project is Positive, the company should accept the project.

7.3.2 PROFITABILITY INDEX (PI)

Profitability Index (PI), also known as the Benefit–Cost Ratio, is a Discounted Cash Flow (DCF) technique used in capital budgeting to measure the relative profitability of an investment. It represents the ratio of the present value of future cash inflows to the present value of cash outflows.

PI helps in assessing how much value is created for every rupee invested. It is especially useful when firms face capital rationing and must choose among multiple projects with limited funds.
Formula

Profitability Index (PI) = Present Value of Cash Inflows/ Present Value of Cash Outflows

Decision Rule

- PI > 1 → Accept the project (value created)
- PI < 1 → Reject the project (value destroyed)
- PI = 1 → Indifferent

EXAMPLE
Suppose we have three projects involving discounted cash outflow of Rs.5,50,000, Rs.75,000 and Rs. 1,00,20,000 respectively. Suppose further that the sum of discounted cash inflows for these projects are Rs. 6,50,000, Rs. 95,000 and Rs.1,00,30,000 respectively.

CALCULATE the Profitability index (PI) for the three projects.
SOLUTION

The desirability factors for the three projects would be as follows:
Profitability Index (PI) = Present Value of Cash Inflows/ Present Value of Cash Outflows

1. PI = Rs. 6,50,000 / Rs.5,50,000 =1.18
2. PI = Rs.95,000/ 75,000 =1.27
3. PI= Rs.1,00,30,000/1,00,20,000 =1.001

It can be seen that in absolute terms, project 3 gives the highest cash inflows yet its desirability factor is low. This is because the outflow is also very high. The Desirability/ Profitability Index factor helps us in ranking various projects.

Since PI is an extension of NPV, it has same advantages and limitation.
Advantages of Profitability Index

- Considers time value of money.
- Useful under capital rationing to rank projects.
- Helps compare projects of different sizes.
- Easy to understand because it shows value created per rupee invested.

Limitations of Profitability Index

- Not suitable for selecting among mutually exclusive projects when rankings conflict with NPV.
- Requires accurate estimation of discount rate and cash flows.
- More complex than traditional methods.

7.3.2 INTERNAL RATE OF RETURN (IRR)

IRR can be defines as that rate which equates the present value of cash inflow with the present value of cash outflows of an investment. In other words it is the rate at which the NPV of the investment is zero.

Procedure: When there are even cash flows
Step 1: Divide the cost of the project by annual cash flows after tax (CFAT)
Step 2: Locate approximate rate in the present value of annuity table corresponding to period of life of the project. The value may be falling between two discounting rates.
Step 3: discount cash flows using these two discounting rates
Step 4: use following interpolation formula

$$LR + \frac{\text{NPV at LR}}{\text{NPV at LR- NPV at HR}} \times (HR-LR)$$

LR= Lower rate
HR= higher rate
IRR is compared with required rate of return (RRR)

Decision criteria:

1. If IRR is >RRR(Accept the project)
2. If IRR is >RRR(Reject the project)
3. If IRR=RRR(indifference)

Example: A Ltd is evaluating a project involving an outlay of Rs.1000000 resulting in an annual cash inflow of Rs. 250000 for 6 years. Determine the IRR of the project.
Solution: cost of the project/ annual cash flows after tax
=1000000/ 250000
=4
The value 4 lies between values 4.111 &3.988 correspondingly discounting rates are 12% & 13% respectively.

NPV at 12% = (1000000) + 4.11 x 250000 = 27750
NPV at 13% = (1000000) +3.988 x 250000 = -500

The IRR is thus >12% but <13%. The exact rate can be obtained by interpolation.

IRR = LR + NPV at LR/ NPV at LR- NPV at HR x (HR-LR)
= 12% + 27750 / 27750-(-500) x (13-12)
= 12% + 0.98
= 12.98%

Procedure: When there are uneven cash flows

When the cash flows are not uniform over the life of the investment, the determination of the discount rate can involve trial and error and interpolation between discounting rate.

However, IRR can be found out by using following procedure:
Step 1: Discount the cash flow at any random rate (say 10% , 15% or 20%)
Step 2: If the result of the NPV is negative, then discount cash flows again by lower discounting rate to make NPV positive and Vice-versa.
Step 3: Use following interpolation formula:

$$LR + \frac{\text{NPV at LR}}{\text{NPV at LR- NPV at HR}} \times (HR-LR)$$

LR= Lower rate
HR= higher rate

Example: Calculate the IRR of an investment of Rs.136000 which yields the following cash inflows:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Cash inflows(Rs.)	30000	40000	60000	30000	20000

Solution: Calculation of IRR

Year	Cash inflows	PV Factor@10%	PV of Discounted cash flows	PV Factor@12%	PV of Discounted cash flows
1	30000	0.909	27270	0.893	26790
2	40000	0.826	33040	0.797	31880
3	60000	0.751	45060	0.712	42720
4	30000	0.683	20490	0.636	19080
5	20000	0.621	12420	0.567	11340
			138280		131810
			- Cost of the project 136000		136000
			NPV +2280		-4190

The exact IRR can be obtained by interpolation:

$$IRR = LR + \frac{\text{NPV at LR}}{\text{NPV at LR- NPV at HR}} \times (HR-LR)$$

$$= 10\% + \frac{2280}{2280 - (-4190)} \times (12-10)$$

$$= 10+0.70$$

IRR = 10.70%

7.4 COMPARISON OF NPV VS. IRR

Net Present Value (NPV) and Internal Rate of Return (IRR) are two of the most important discounted cash flow techniques used in capital budgeting. Both methods consider the time value of money, future cash flows, and the cost of capital, but differ in their approach, interpretation, and decision criteria.

NPV is the difference between the Present Value (PV) of cash inflows and the Present Value of cash outflows. Cash flows are discounted at the firm's cost of capital. A project is accepted when NPV is positive, as it indicates that the project will add to the wealth of shareholders.

IRR is the discount rate at which the NPV becomes zero. It represents the rate of return expected from the project. A project is accepted when IRR exceeds the cost of capital, means the project is profitable.

The major points of comparison are mentioned below:

1. Concept:
   NPV measures the absolute value created by a project, while IRR measures the percentage return generated by the project.
2. Decision Criteria:
   NPV recommends accepting a project with NPV > 0. IRR recommends accepting when the IRR > Cost of Capital.
3. Measure Used:
   NPV gives results in monetary terms (₹), whereas IRR gives results in percentage terms, which makes it easy to understand for managers.
4. Reinvestment Assumption:
   NPV assumes reinvestment of cash inflows at the cost of capital (realistic). IRR assumes reinvestment at the IRR itself (sometimes unrealistic).
5. Multiple Rates Issue:
   NPV always gives a single unique value. IRR may give multiple IRRs when cash flows are non-conventional (cash flow signs change during project life).
6. Ranking of Projects:
   NPV provides correct ranking, especially for mutually exclusive projects. IRR may give wrong ranking because it focuses on percentage returns rather than total value created.
7. Size and Timing Problems:
   NPV is reliable when projects differ in scale or timing of cash flows. IRR may lead to conflicting decisions because a project with higher IRR might create less wealth.
8. Complexity:
   NPV calculation is straightforward if cost of capital is known. IRR requires trial-and-error or interpolation to find the discount rate, making it more complex.

9. Objective:
   NPV aligns directly with the goal of maximizing shareholder wealth, making it theoretically superior. IRR is popular due to its simplicity and intuitive appeal.
10. Practical Use:
    Companies prefer IRR for quick comparisons, but for final investment decisions, NPV is considered more reliable and preferable.

Conclusion:
While both NPV and IRR are useful investment appraisal tools, NPV is generally considered superior because it measures wealth creation directly and avoids issues like multiple rates and incorrect rankings. IRR is still widely used because it expresses profitability in an easy-to-understand percentage form. Together, they provide a comprehensive evaluation of a project's .

7.5 SUMMARY

Capital budgeting techniques are financial tools used to evaluate and select long-term investment projects by estimating future cash flows and determining their profitability. These techniques include traditional methods like the Payback Period, which focuses on liquidity, and the Accounting Rate of Return (ARR), which measures profitability using accounting profits. Modern discounted cash flow techniques—such as Net Present Value (NPV), Internal Rate of Return (IRR), Profitability Index (PI),—consider the time value of money and provide more accurate results. Among these, NPV is regarded as the most reliable for maximizing shareholder wealth, while IRR shows the project's rate of return. Together, these techniques help firms make effective, rational, and value-adding investment decisions.

7.6 KEY TERMS:

Capital budgeting, initial investment, cash inflows, cash outflows, time value of money, ARR, PBP, NPV, IRR, PI, Cost of capital, discount rate.

7.7 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

7.7.1 Short questions

1. What is meant by investment appraisal?
2. What is the Payback Period (PBP) method?
3. State two advantages of the Payback Period method.
4. What is the Accounting Rate of Return (ARR)?
5. What is meant by the Net Present Value (NPV) method?
6. Define the Internal Rate of Return (IRR).
7. What is the Profitability Index (PI)?
8. Mention any two discounted cash flow (DCF) techniques.
9. NPV Vs IRR

7.7.2 Essay questions

1. Explain in detail the different investment appraisal techniques used in capital budgeting.
2. Discuss the Payback Period method — its meaning, calculation, advantages, and limitations.

3. Explain the Accounting Rate of Return (ARR) method with formula, example, merits, and demerits.
4. Describe the Net Present Value (NPV) method and explain why it is considered a superior technique.
5. Explain the Internal Rate of Return (IRR) method and its significance in investment decisions.
6. Discuss the Profitability Index (PI) method and its relationship with NPV.
7. Compare traditional methods (PBP, ARR) with modern methods (NPV, IRR, PI).
8. Explain the importance of investment appraisal techniques in capital budgeting decisions.
9. Discuss the limitations of traditional methods of investment appraisal.

7.7.3 MCQs

1. Capital budgeting mainly deals with decisions involving:
a) Working capital
b) Long-term investments
c) Short-term financing
d) Current liabilities

2. The technique that considers the time value of money is:
a) Payback Period
b) Accounting Rate of Return
c) Net Present Value
d) Payback Reciprocal

3. Net Present Value (NPV) is the difference between:
a) Total inflows and total outflows
b) Present value of inflows and present value of outflows
c) Future value of inflows and outflows
d) Profit and cost

4. A project is acceptable if its Profitability Index (PI) is:
a) Equal to zero
b) Less than 1
c) More than 1
d) Negative

5. IRR is the discount rate at which:
a) Profit equals cost
b) Cash inflow equals cash outflow
c) NPV equals zero
d) PI equals zero

6. Which technique does NOT consider the time value of money?
a) NPV
b) IRR
c) Payback Period
d) Profitability Index

7. When projects are mutually exclusive, the best technique to use is:
a) Payback Period
b) NPV
c) ARR
d) PI

8. The Payback Period method mainly measures:
a) Profitability
b) Liquidity
c) Return on investment
d) Risk
9. Accounting Rate of Return (ARR) is based on:
a) Cash flows
b) Discounted cash flows
c) Accounting profits
d) Net cash inflow

10. Discounted Payback Period differs from Payback Period because it:
a) Uses accounting profits
b) Ignores time value
c) Considers time value of money
d) Uses cumulative sales

Answer key

1. B
2. C
3. B
4. C
5. C
6. C
7. B
8. B
9. C
10. C

7.8 CASE STUDY PROBLEMS

1. A Company is considering two mutually exclusive projects A&B. Project A costs Rs.150000 and project B costs Rs.200000. The estimated Profit after tax in respect of these two projects are as follows:

Year	1	2	3	4
Project A	10000	40000	25000	15000
Project B	15000	50000	40000	25000

Calculate ARR & advise the company regarding the project to be accepted.

2. The firm is considering two mutually exclusive projects X&Y, the details are as follows.

Year	0	1	2	3	4	5
Project X	70000	10000	20000	30000	45000	60000
Project Y	70000	50000	40000	20000	10000	10000

Company's required rate of return is 10%, state which project is to be accepted based on NPV & PI

3. Following data related to two independent investment projects.

Projects	Initial outlay	Annual cash flows	Life in years
A	500000	125000	8
B	120000	12000	15

Assume @10% required rate of return & 35% tax rate, rank their investment projects according to each of the following methods:

i) Net present value
ii) Payback period

4. A chemical company is considering investing in a project that cost Rs.500000, the estimated salvage value is zero, tax rate is 30%. The company uses straight line depreciation & the proposed project has cash flows before depreciation & taxes as follows:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
CFBT	100000	100000	150000	150000	250000

Calculated NPV @15% and IRR

5. A company is considering two mutually exclusive projects A&B each involving a cost of Rs.24000, the expected life of the project is 5 years for which the CFAT are given below:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Project A	8000	8000	8000	8000	8000
Project B	4000	6000	8000	10000	12000

Decide which project should be selected by using ARR,IRR,NPV & required rate of return is 12%.

7.9 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Sheeba Kapil. Financial Management, Pearson, 2011.
2. Jonthan Berk Financial Management, Pearson, 2010.
3. Van Home. James C. "Financial Management", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, Delhi.
4. Hampton, John J. "Financial Decision Making", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi..
5. Khan, M.Y. & Jain P.K "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub. Co. Ltd New Delhi.
6. Panday, I.M. "Financial Management", Vikas Publishing House (P) Ltd.
7. Kulkarni, P.V. "Financial Management", Himalaya Publishing House.
8. Maheswari S.N. "Principles of Financial Management", S Chand & Sons.
9. Srivatsava R.M. "Essentials of Business Financial", Himalaya Publishing House,
10. Tulsan, P.C. "Financial Management", S. Chand & Co. New Delhi.

Dr. S. SRINIVASA RAO

LESSON - 8

RISK AND CAPITAL RATIONING IN INVESTMENT

OBJECTIVES:

After studying this lesson, students will be able to:

- Understand risk in capital budgeting
- Measure risk
- Incorporate risk in to decision making
- Make informed investment decisions

STRUCTURE:

8.1 INTRODUCTION

Risk is the variability in terms of actual returns comparing with the estimated returns. There is thin difference between risk and uncertainty. In case of risk, probability distribution of cash flow is known. When no information is known to formulate probability distribution of cash flows, the situation is referred as uncertainty. However, these two terms are used interchangeably.

8.2 SOURCES OF RISK

Capital budgeting involves evaluating long-term investment projects whose future outcomes are uncertain. Since these decisions require large financial commitments and extend over several years, various internal and external factors make future cash flows unpredictable. Risk arises when actual returns differ from expected returns. Understanding the sources of risk helps managers conduct realistic project appraisals and choose strategies that maximize shareholder wealth. The major sources of risk in capital budgeting are discussed below:

1. Demand Risk

Demand risk arises from uncertainty about future sales volume. Changes in consumer preferences, income levels, market trends, and economic conditions can cause actual demand to differ from the forecast. Lower demand reduces revenue and directly affects project viability.

2. Price Risk

This risk refers to the possibility of changes in the selling price of goods or services. Increased competition, market saturation, or economic downturns can force firms to reduce prices. Since project profitability depends heavily on price stability, any unexpected fall in price can significantly reduce cash inflows.

3. Cost Risk

Cost risk arises from unexpected increases in operating or production costs. Prices of raw materials, wages, energy, transportation, and maintenance may rise. Additionally, cost overruns during the installation or construction stage are common, increasing the initial investment and reducing project profitability.

4. Interest Rate Risk

Changes in interest rates affect a firm's cost of borrowing and the discount rate used for computing NPV. A rise in interest rates increases financing costs and lowers the present value of future cash inflows, making the project less attractive.

5. Inflation Risk

Inflation risk occurs when general price levels increase more than expected. High inflation reduces the real value of future cash inflows and increases operating costs. If inflation is underestimated during project evaluation, the project may appear more profitable than it actually will be.

6. Technological Risk

Technological innovations may render existing machinery or processes obsolete. If a project is based on outdated technology, it may require costly replacements or upgrades. Fast-changing technology is a major risk in industries like electronics, IT, and automation.

7. Market Competition Risk

Competitive actions such as new entrants, price cuts, aggressive marketing, or product innovations can reduce market share. High competition increases uncertainty regarding future cash flows and may force firms to revise pricing strategies.

8. Regulatory and Legal Risk

Government regulations relating to taxation, labor laws, environmental standards, licensing requirements, and safety norms can change suddenly. Compliance with new regulations may

increase costs or restrict operations. Projects in mining, energy, and infrastructure face high regulatory risk.

9. Political Risk

Political instability, change in government policies, trade restrictions, or geopolitical tensions can adversely affect long-term projects. Political risk is especially relevant for multinational companies and large infrastructure projects that depend on government support.

10. Financial Risk

Financial risk arises from the capital structure and financing decisions of the firm. Projects financed through high levels of debt face higher fixed obligations like interest and principal repayment. This increases the risk of financial distress and affects the project's feasibility.

11. Project-Specific Risk

These risks are unique to the specific project. They include construction delays, inaccurate estimates, design errors, shortage of skilled labor, equipment failure, and coordination problems. Such internal uncertainties can disrupt project completion and increase costs.

12. Exchange Rate Risk

For international projects or those involving imported machinery, fluctuations in currency exchange rates affect cash outflows and inflows. A depreciation of the domestic currency increases the cost of imports, while volatility in foreign earnings makes cash flow predictions less reliable.

13. Environmental Risk

Environmental factors such as natural disasters, climate changes, pollution requirements, and sustainability obligations may affect project operations. Industries such as agriculture, power, and mining face high environmental risk.

14. Social Risk

Community opposition, labor disputes, strikes, or social unrest may delay or disrupt project execution. Social acceptance is crucial for large infrastructure or public utility projects.

15. Strategic Risk

This involves risk due to poor planning, wrong strategic decisions, or misalignment with company objectives. If a project does not match the company’s long-term strategy, expected benefits may not be realized.

8.3 TECHNIQUES OF RISK ANALYSIS IN CAPITAL BUDGETING

Risk analysis in capital budgeting refers to the process of identifying, measuring, and evaluating the uncertainties associated with the future cash flows of an investment project.

Since capital budgeting decisions involve large funds and long time periods, actual results may differ from estimates due to changes in market conditions, costs, demand, technology, and economic factors. Risk analysis helps managers understand how sensitive a project's profitability is to these uncertainties and enables them to choose projects that offer stable and reliable returns. Techniques such as sensitivity analysis, scenario analysis, probability analysis, and simulation are used to assess the impact of risk. Thus, risk analysis ensures better decision-making and helps firms avoid losses and maximize shareholder wealth.

Techniques of Measuring risk

Statistical

1. Standard deviation
2. Co. efficient of variation
3. Probability
4. Sensitivity analysis
5. Scenario analysis
6. Stimulation analysis

Non Statistical

1. Risk adjusted discount rate
2. Certainty equivalent co. efficient

1. Standard deviation: It may be defined as the square root of squared deviations calculated from mean. In case of capital budgeting, this measure is used to compare the variability of possible cash flows of different projects from their respective mean/ expected values. A project having a large standard deviation will be more risky as compared to a project having smaller standard deviation.

The following steps are taken for calculating the standard deviation of possible cash flows:

i) Mean value of possible cash flows is calculated
ii) Deviation are calculated between mean value & cash flows
iii) Deviations are squared
iv) Squared deviations are multiplied by probabilities to get weighted squared deviations
v) The weighted squared deviations are totaled & their square root is found out.

2. Co. efficient of variation: Standard deviation is helpful and measuring risk when cash flows of evaluating projects are equal. When there are 4 projects ABCD whose investment is 1 Lakh for each project SD is suitable. If projects ABCD requiring 50000, 75000, 100000 & 125000 investment standard deviation is not suitable as cash flows are not equal.

When project cash flows differ from each other co. efficient of variation is a suitable technique to measure risk & to take right decision.

$$\text{Therefore co. efficient of variation} = \frac{\text{Standard deviation}}{\text{Mean / expected cash flows}}$$

EXAMPLE: X Ltd. is considering to start a new project for which it has gathered following data:

NPV	Probability
80,000	0.3
1,10,000	0.3
1,42,500	0.2

Compute the risk associated with the project i.e. standard deviation.
SOLUTION:

NPV	Probability	Expected NPV
80,000	0.3	24000
1,10,000	0.3	33000
1,42,500	0.2	28,500

$\overline{NPV}$ = 85,500

Calculation of standard deviation of the Project:

NPV	D	D2	P	PD2
80,000	- 5,500	3,02,50,000	0.3	90,75,000
1,10,000	24,500	60,02,50,000	0.3	18,00,75,000
1,42,500	57,000	3,24,90,00,000	0.2	64,98,00,000
			$\sigma 2$ =	83,89,50,000
			(standard deviation) σ =	28,965

Coefficient of variation = σ / expected npv
= 28,965 / 85,500
= 0.34

3. Probability: Probability is likelihood of happening of an event. It is the percentage chance of occurrence of each possible event (cash flows). Probability of chance of occurrence of any event lies between o and 1.
In this method , there are two steps to determine the variability of returns:

1. Probability assignment: Assignment of probability may be subjective/ objective. An objective probability is based on a large number of observations under independent & similar conditions over a period of time. A subjective probability is based on personal judgment as there are no large number of identical observations. In capital budgeting decisions, assignment of probabilities is based on subjective probability, because they do not involve a large no. of independent observations repeated overtime.
2. Estimation of expected returns: After the assignment of probability to different possible cash flows is completed, the next step is the estimation of expected value. Cash flows are multiplied by individual assigned probabilities to get the expected monetary value. The total of all possible cash flows expected value is the projects expected return.

Example 1: The following possible cash inflows for a project are given below:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Cash inflows(Rs)	5000	7000	6000	9000	8000
Probability	0.10	0.30	0.20	0.20	0.20

You are required to calculate the expected monetary value.
Solution: Calculation of expected monetary value

Year	Cash inflows	Probability	Expected monetary value
1	5000	0.10	500
2	7000	0.30	2100
3	6000	0.20	1200
4	9000	0.20	1800
5	8000	0.20	1600

The expected monetary value = 7200

4. Sensitivity analysis: Sensitivity analysis is a risk-assessment tool used to examine how changes in key assumptions affect the outcomes of a financial model or investment decision. In capital budgeting, it focuses on how variations in one input—such as sales volume, selling price, operating costs, or the discount rate—impact indicators like net present value (NPV) or internal rate of return (IRR). By adjusting one variable at a time while holding others constant, sensitivity analysis reveals which assumptions have the greatest influence on a project's results.

This method helps managers identify the most critical drivers of project performance and understand how vulnerable the project is to uncertainty. If small changes in a variable lead to large changes in NPV or IRR, the project is considered highly sensitive and therefore riskier. Sensitivity analysis supports better planning, targeted risk mitigation, and more informed investment decisions by highlighting where more accurate forecasting or additional caution is required

5. Scenario analysis: Scenario analysis is a technique used in capital budgeting to evaluate how a project's financial performance changes under different sets of assumptions. Unlike sensitivity analysis, which changes one variable at a time, scenario analysis adjusts several variables together—such as sales volume, operating costs, market conditions, and economic factors—to create realistic future situations. Common scenarios include the best case, base case, and worst case, each showing a different possible outcome for measures like NPV or IRR.

This approach helps managers understand the range of potential risks and opportunities associated with a project. By comparing results across scenarios, decision-makers can see how resilient the project is to unfavorable conditions and identify the circumstances under which it becomes profitable or unviable. Scenario analysis therefore enhances strategic planning, supports more informed investment decisions, and encourages preparedness for a variety of future business environments.

6. Stimulation analysis: Simulation analysis is a quantitative technique used in capital budgeting to assess the risk and uncertainty of a project's financial outcomes. Unlike sensitivity or scenario analysis, which consider limited changes in variables, simulation analysis assigns probability distributions to key uncertain inputs such as sales volume, costs, prices, and discount rates. By running thousands of random trials, it generates a wide range of possible outcomes for measures like NPV or IRR, providing a more comprehensive picture of potential project performance.

The main advantage of simulation analysis is that it captures the combined effect of multiple un certainties occurring simultaneously, rather than looking at one variable at a time. The results produce a probability distribution of outcomes, showing not only the expected returns

but also the likelihood of losses or unusually high gains. This allows managers to make more informed investment decisions, evaluate the overall risk of a project, and plan strategies to manage adverse scenarios effectively.

Non Statistical

1. Risk adjusted discount rate: Risk adjusted discount rate (RADR) assumes that investors expect a higher rate of return on risky projects as compared to less risky projects. It is the discount rate which is used to convert future cash inflows into present value.

RADR = Risk free interest rate Risk premium

(a) Risk free rate is the rate at which future cash inflows should be discounted if there had been no risk.

(b) Risk premium is the extra return expected by investor over the normal rate (i.e. risk free rate) on a/c of project being risky. A higher discount rate is used for more risky projects & lower rate for less risky projects.

Merits

1. It is easy to understand & very simple to calculate.
2. It gives some premium for the risk

Demerits

1. It is difficult to calculate the RADR as there is no proper method
2. It does not may use of information from probability distribution
3. Risk premium is assigned on the basis of subjective judgment

Example: A project is required to invest Rs.110000 & is expected to generate CFAT over its economic life of 5 years of 20000, 30000, 35000, 55000 & 10000.Risk free rate is 7% & the decision makers are interested to add 3% as risk premium. You are required to calculate NPV using RADR & suggest on the acceptability of the project.

Solution: RADR = Risk free interest rate Risk premium
= 7%+3%
= 10%

Calculation of NPV using RADR:

Year	CFAT	PV factor at RADR@10%	PVCFAT
1	20000	0.909	18180
2	30000	0.826	24780
3	35000	0.751	26285
4	55000	0.683	37565
5	10000	0.621	6210

ΣPVCFAT= 113020

NPV= ΣPVCFAT- Cost of the project
=113020-110000
=3020

Therefore NPV is positive, the project is acceptable.

2. Certainty equivalent coefficient method: It is a risk incorporation technique which adjust the expected cash flows instead of adjusting the discount rate. The estimated cash flows are reduced to certain are reduced to certain amount by applying a correction factor known

as 'certainty equivalent co- efficient. This correction factor is the ratio of riskless cash flows & risky cash flows

(a) Riskless cash flows are the cash flows, which the management is prepared to accept in case there is no risk involved
(b) The co- efficient assumes that the value between 0 & 1
(c) The cash flows are adjusted by multiplying estimated cash flows with certainty equivalent co-efficient
(c) A discount rate is equal to the riskless rate is used to calculate present value of adjusted cash flows

Merits
1. It is simple to understand & easy to calculate
2. It is superior to risk adjusted discount rate because it does not consider that the risk increases with increase in time

Demerits
1. It is difficult to consider increasing risk capacity,
2 It is difficult to allocate certainty equivalent co-efficient.

Example: sky way ltd is considering an investment proposal which requires 20 lakhs. The expected cash inflow and certainty co. efficient are given below:

Year	Cash inflows(Rs. In lakh)	certainty co. efficient
1	6	0.9
2	3	0.85
3	7	0.8
4	8	0.75
5	9	0.65

Risk free interest rate (RFR) is 6%. Determine NPV of proposal.

Solution: Calculation of present value of cash inflows

Year	Cash inflows (Rs. In lakh)	Certainty co. efficient	Certain CF'S	PV factor@6%RFR	Present values(Rs.)
1	6	0.9	540000	0.943	509220
2	3	0.85	255000	0.890	226950
3	7	0.8	560000	0.840	470400
4	8	0.75	600000	0.792	475200
5	9	0.65	585000	0.747	436995
					2118765

NPV= PV of Cash inflows - Cash out flow
= 2118765- 2000000
= 118765
Therefore the project should be preferred as the NPV>0.

8.4 CAPITAL RATIONING AND DECISION MAKING

Capital rationing is a decision-making process where a firm with limited capital allocates funds to projects that offer the highest possible return, even if it means rejecting other profitable

projects. The primary goal is to maximize overall value or profit within the given budget constraint.

Key Concepts

- Definition: Capital rationing occurs when a company has more potential projects with a positive Net Present Value (NPV) or a return exceeding the hurdle rate than it has funds to invest.
- **Types:**
  - Hard Rationing: Imposed by external factors beyond management's control, such as an inability to raise more debt or equity due to market conditions or the company's creditworthiness.
  - Soft Rationing: Self-imposed limits by management due to internal policies, a desire to limit risk, or a preference for internal financing (e.g., using only retained earnings).
- Decision-Making Tool: The most widely accepted method for ranking projects under capital rationing is the Profitability Index (PI), which is the present value of future cash flows divided by the initial investment cost. Projects are selected in descending order of their PI until the budget is exhausted.

DECISION PROCESS

1. Identify Viable Projects: Screen all potential projects to ensure they are profitable (e.g., have a positive NPV or an IRR greater than the cost of capital).
2. Calculate Profitability Index (PI): For each viable project, calculate its PI.
3. Rank Projects: List projects from highest PI to lowest PI.
4. Allocate Capital: Start funding projects from the top of the ranked list downwards, accepting projects until the capital budget is fully utilized. In cases of indivisible projects, select the combination of the projects which gives the highest NPV.

   Example: XYZ Ltd is planning its capital investment programme for the next year. It has 4 projects all of which gives a positive NPV, the investment outflows and discounted cash flows (DCF) are as follows. The company is limited to capital spending of Rs.300000

Project	A	B	C	D
Cost	80000	150000	70000	130000
DCF	100000	190000	114000	200000
NPV	20000	40000	44000	70000

Solution: If projects are divisible

Projects	Costs	DCF	PI	Rank
A	80000	100000	1.25	4
B	150000	190000	1.27	3
C	70000	114000	1.63	1
D	13000	200000	1.54	2

Selection of divisible projects:

Project	Cost	Investment	NPV
C	70000	✓	44000
D	130000	✓	70000
B	150000	100000	40000X100000/150000=26667
A	80000		

If projects are indivisible:

Option	NPV
A+B+C	104000
A+C+D	134000-----Best combination

8.4 SUMMARY

Risk and capital rationing are important considerations in investment decisions. Risk refers to the uncertainty associated with future cash flows of a project due to factors such as market conditions, costs, demand, technology, and economic changes. It affects the reliability of investment outcomes and requires techniques like sensitivity analysis, scenario analysis, and probability analysis to evaluate the impact on project returns. Capital rationing, on the other hand, occurs when a firm has limited funds and cannot undertake all profitable projects. In such cases, projects are ranked and selected based on measures like NPV, IRR, and Profitability Index to maximize returns within budget constraints. Together, risk analysis and capital rationing ensure that firms make informed, efficient, and value-maximizing investment decisions.

8.5 KEY TERMS:

Risk, Uncertainty, Probability, Standard deviation, RDAR, CE, Capital rationing, NPV, Investments, Projects, funds.

8.6 SELF ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

8.6.1 Short questions

1. What is risk in capital budgeting?
2. What is sensitivity analysis in investment decisions?
3. Define capital rationing.
4. What is the difference between internal and external capital rationing?
5. What is the role of the Profitability Index in capital rationing?

8.6.2 Essay questions

1. Explain the various sources of risk in capital budgeting.
2. Describe the major techniques used for risk analysis in investment decisions.
3. What is capital rationing? Explain its types and significance in investment decision-making.
4. Discuss the relationship between risk, return, and investment decisions in capital budgeting.
5. Explain how firms select optimal projects under capital rationing using NPV and PI methods.

8.6.3 MCQs

1. In investment decision-making, risk refers to:

a) Guaranteed return on capital
b) Variation between expected and actual returns
c) Increase in return without uncertainty
d) Avoiding all types of investments

2. Which of the following is a method for measuring risk in capital budgeting?

a) Trial balance
b) Standard deviation
c) Sales mix
d) Journal posting

3. Capital rationing occurs when:

a) The firm has excess funds
b) Investment funds are limited compared to available projects
c) All projects are accepted without evaluation
d) Only high-risk projects are chosen

4. Under capital rationing, project selection is generally based on:

a) Payback period alone
b) Profitability index
c) Historical cost
d) Depreciation method

5. Sensitivity analysis is used to:

a) Study the effect of changes in one variable at a time
b) Remove all risk from investments
c) Increase the project cost
d) Predict future inflation

6. A risk-averse investor will:

a) Prefer high-risk, high-return projects
b) Avoid all investments
c) Prefer low-risk projects even if returns are lower
d) Choose projects randomly

7. Scenario analysis helps in understanding:

a) A single outcome of a project
b) Best-case, worst-case, and most-likely outcomes
c) Only historical performance
d) Depreciation variations

8. Profitability index (PI) is used in capital rationing because it:

a) Measures how quickly the project pays back
b) Evaluates the value created per rupee invested
c) Shows the tax liability of a project
d) Measures accounting profit

9. A disadvantage of capital rationing is that it:

a) Eliminates the need for decision-making
b) Restricts investment to available limited funds
c) Forces the firm to accept all projects
d) Reduces project evaluation time

10. In risk-adjusted discount rate method, riskier projects are assigned:

a) Lower discount rates
b) Higher discount rates
c) Zero discount rates
d) Equal discount rates

Answer Key:

1. B
2. B
3. B
4. B
5. A
6. C
7. B
8. B
9. B
10. B

8.7 CASE STUDY PROBLEMS

1. A LTD is considering purchase of new machines the alternatives available for investments. Their machines are X & Y each costing Rs.75000. which machine should be purchased the cash flows are given below:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Machine –X	30000	30000	20000	10000	5000
Machine – Y	40000	30000	20000	10000	10000

A company has expected return on capital of 10%. Risk premium rates are 2% for machine X & 7% machine Y.

2. A company is considering two mutually exclusive investment proposals. The management uses certainty equivalent to evaluate the proposals. From the following information select the project to be accepted.

Year	Proposal A		Proposal B	
	Expected CFAT	C.E	Expected CFAT	C.E
0	-25000	1.0	-25000	1.0
1	15000	0.8	9000	0.9
2	15000	0.7	18000	0.8
3	15000	0.6	12000	0.7
4	15000	0.5	16000	0.4

The cost of capital is 12%, Risk free rate is 6%.

3. The following possible cash inflows for a project are given below:

Year	1	2	3	4	5
Cash inflows(Rs)	6000	9000	5000	8000	7000
Probability	0.10	0.30	0.20	0.20	0.20

You are required to calculate the expected monetary value.

8.8 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Sheeba Kapil. Financial Management, Pearson, 2011.
2. Jonthan Berk Financial Management, Pearson, 2010.
3. Van Home. James C. "Financial Management", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, Delhi.
4. Hampton, John J. "Financial Decision Making", Prentice Hall of India (P) Ltd, New Delhi..
5. Khan, M.Y. & Jain P.K "Financial Management", Tata McGraw Hill Pub. Co. Ltd New Delhi.
6. Panday, I.M. "Financial Management", Vikas Publishing House (P) Ltd.
7. Kulkarni, P.V. "Financial Management", Himalaya Publishing House.
8. Maheswari S.N. "Principles of Financial Management", S Chand & Sons.
9. Srivatsava R.M. "Essentials of Business Financial", Himalaya Publishing House,
10. Tulsan, P.C. "Financial Management", S. Chand & Co. New Delhi.

Dr. S. SRINIVASA RAO

LESSON - 9

CONCEPT OF LEVERAGE AND BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

OBJECTIVES

After studying this lesson, the learner will be able to:

- Understand the meaning and importance of leverage in financial management.
- Learn the types of leverage: Operating, Financial, and Combined.
- Compute Degree of Operating Leverage (DOL), Degree of Financial Leverage (DFL), and Degree of Combined Leverage (DCL).
- Explain the concept and applications of Break-even Analysis.
- Analyze cost–volume–profit (CVP) relationships for decision-making.
- Interpret leverage and break-even charts for managerial decisions.
- Apply leverage concepts to real-world numerical problems.

STRUCTURE

9.1. INTRODUCTION

Every business operates under conditions of uncertainty, where both operating and financial decisions influence profitability, risk, and long-term sustainability. To make sound managerial decisions, it is essential to understand how costs behave, how profit responds to changes in sales volume, and to what extent financing choices magnify the risk borne by shareholders.

Leverage and Break-even Analysis provide the analytical foundation for these assessments. These tools help answer questions such as:

- What is the impact of fixed costs on business risk?
- How will profits respond if sales increase by 5%, 10% or more?

- What level of sales must the firm achieve to avoid losses?
- How much debt can the company safely use to finance operations?
- How sensitive is Earnings Per Share (EPS) to changes in sales?
- What is the company's margin of safety?

A manager equipped with these analytical tools can plan production levels, determine optimal pricing, evaluate investment and financing options, and maintain financial stability in fluctuating business environments.

This lesson explores Operating Leverage, Financial Leverage, Combined Leverage, and Break-even/CVP Analysis, supported by step-by-step numerical illustrations and graphical explanations.

9.2. MEANING OF LEVERAGE

The term leverage refers to the *use of fixed costs to magnify the effect of changes in sales on profitability*.
When fixed costs are present—whether operating fixed costs or financial fixed charges—profits change more than proportionately with changes in sales.

Types of Leverage
Leverage is broadly classified into:

(i) Operating Leverage
Arises from the presence of fixed operating costs such as rent, salaries, depreciation, and insurance.
It measures the sensitivity of EBIT (Operating Profit) to changes in sales.

(ii) Financial Leverage
Arises from fixed financial charges, mainly interest on debt and preference dividends.
It measures the sensitivity of EPS to changes in EBIT.

(iii) Combined Leverage
Captures the combined effect of both operating and financial leverage.
It measures the sensitivity of EPS to changes in sales.
Together, these tools help managers assess business risk, financial risk, and total risk.

9.3. OPERATING LEVERAGE

9.3.1 Concept :
Operating leverage occurs because a business uses fixed operating costs in its cost structure.
When sales change:

- Variable costs change proportionately
- Fixed costs remain constant
- Contribution changes proportionately
- EBIT changes *more than proportionately*

Therefore: Higher the fixed operating costs → Higher the operating leverage → Higher the business risk

Operating leverage is most prominent in capital-intensive industries such as automobiles, airlines, steel, and telecommunications. Labour-intensive firms (restaurants, consulting, tailoring units) have lower operating leverage and therefore lower business risk.

9.3.2 Formula for Degree of Operating Leverage (DOL)

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{\%\text{Change in EBIT}}{\%\text{Change in Sales}}$$

Alternative formula (widely used):

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{EBIT}}$$

Where:

$$\text{Contribution} = \text{Sales} - \text{Variable Cost}$$
$$\text{EBIT} = \text{Contribution} - \text{Fixed Operating Cost}$$

9.3.3 Numerical Examples

Example 1. : A firm sells units at ₹50 each.; Variable cost is ₹30 per unit, fixed costs ₹2,00,000. Current sales = 20,000 units.

Contribution per unit = = 50 – 30 = ₹20

Total Contribution = = 20,000 × 20 = ₹4,00,000

EBIT = 4,00,000 – 2,00,000 = ₹2,00,000

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{4{,}00{,}000}{2{,}00{,}000} = 2$$

Interpretation:

A 1% increase in sales will result in a 2% increase in EBIT.

Example 2 — Comparing High vs. Low Operating Leverage Firms

Particulars	Firm A (High Fixed Cost)	Firm B (Low Fixed Cost)
Sales (10,000 units @ ₹10)	₹1,00,000	₹1,00,000
Variable Cost	₹60,000	₹60,000
Contribution	₹40,000	₹40,000
Fixed Cost	₹30,000	₹10,000
EBIT	₹10,000	₹30,000

$$\text{DOL(A)} = \frac{40{,}000}{10{,}000} = 4$$
$$\text{DOL(B)} = \frac{40{,}000}{30{,}000} \approx 1.33$$

Interpretation:

Firm A's profits are highly sensitive to sales changes → high risk.

Firm B is more stable.

Example 3 — Unit-Based Illustration

Selling price = ₹20
Variable cost = ₹12
Units sold = 100
Case A: Fixed cost = ₹500
Case B: Fixed cost = ₹400
Contribution = (20 – 12) × 100 = ₹800

Case	EBIT	DOL
A	800 – 500 = 300	800/300 = 2.67
B	800 – 400 = 400	800/400 = 2.00

Higher fixed costs → Higher DOL → Higher risk.

3.4 Managerial Significance of Operating Leverage
Operating leverage helps managers:

- Forecast the impact of sales changes on profits
- Evaluate business risk
- Compare capital-intensive and labour-intensive production
- Decide whether to automate or outsource
- Determine whether fixed or variable cost structures are preferable

High operating leverage is beneficial during boom periods but dangerous during recessions.

9.4. FINANCIAL LEVERAGE

9.4.1 Concept : Financial leverage arises when a firm uses debt or preference capital carrying fixed financial charges.

It measures how changes in EBIT translate into changes in Earnings Per Share (EPS).
Higher the fixed financial cost → Higher the financial leverage → Higher the financial risk

9.4.2 Formula for DFL

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{\%\text{Change in EPS}}{\%\text{Change in EBIT}}$$

Alternative formula:

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{\text{EBIT}}{\text{EBIT} - \text{Interest}}$$

9.4.3 Numerical Example

EBIT = ₹3,00,000
Interest = ₹1,00,000

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{3,00,000}{2,00,000} = 1.5$$

Interpretation:
A 1% change in EBIT results in a 1.5% change in EPS.
4.4 Trading on Equity
Trading on equity refers to using debt to magnify returns to equity shareholders.
Debt providers receive a fixed return, so any extra profit after interest accrues to equity holders, increasing their EPS.
When:

- EBIT > Interest cost → Favourable trading on equity
- EBIT < Interest cost → Unfavourable trading on equity

9.4.5 Example — Trading on Equity : Total capital needed = ₹5,00,000
Case A: 100% equity
Case B:

- Equity = ₹2,50,000
- Preference shares = ₹25,000 @ 7%
- Debt = ₹2,25,000 @ 6%

Profit before interest = ₹50,000
Case A: Return = 10% to equity shareholders.
Case B:
Interest on debt = 13,500
Preference dividend = 1,750
Amount left for equity = 34,750
Return = 34,750 / 2,50,000 = 13.9%
Thus, debt financing enhances equity returns.

9.5. COMBINED LEVERAGE

9.5.1 Concept

Combined leverage measures the combined effect of operating and financial leverage.

$$DCL = DOL \times DFL$$

It shows the sensitivity of EPS to changes in sales.
Higher DCL = Higher total risk.

9.5.2 Numerical Example

Suppose,

$$DOL = 2, DFL = 1.5$$
$$DCL = 2 \times 1.5 = 3$$

A 1% increase in sales → 3% increase in EPS.

9.5.3 DCL in Investment Decisions

Numerical Example: DCL in Investment Decisions
When a firm considers a new investment, both operating leverage (due to fixed operating costs) and financial leverage (due to debt financing) change. Together, they influence the Degree of Combined Leverage (DCL), which measures the sensitivity of EPS to changes in sales.
A higher DCL indicates higher total risk.
The example below shows how DCL changes depending on the financing choice for a new investment.
A. Existing Situation (Before New Investment)
Given:

- Sales = ₹50,00,000
- Variable Cost = ₹35,00,000
- Fixed Operating Cost = ₹5,00,000
- Debt = ₹20,00,000 @ 10% interest
- Tax ignored for simplicity

Step 1: Contribution

$$\text{Contribution} = \text{Sales} - \text{Variable Cost}$$
$$= 50,00,000 - 35,00,000 = ₹15,00,000$$

Step 2: EBIT

$$\text{EBIT} = \text{Contribution} - \text{Fixed Operating Cost}$$
$$= 15,00,000 - 5,00,000 = ₹10,00,000$$

Step 3: Degree of Operating Leverage (DOL)

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{EBIT}}$$
$$= \frac{15,00,000}{10,00,000} = 1.5$$

Step 4: Degree of Financial Leverage (DFL)

Interest = 10% of 20,00,000 = ₹2,00,000

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{\text{EBIT}}{\text{EBIT} - \text{Interest}}$$
$$= \frac{10,00,000}{8,00,000} = 1.25$$

Step 5: Degree of Combined Leverage (DCL)

$$\text{DCL} = \text{DOL} \times \text{DFL}$$
$$= 1.5 \times 1.25 = 1.875$$

Interpretation (Existing Business Position):

A 1% change in sales → 1.875% change in EPS.

Risk level = *moderate*.

B. New Investment: Increase in Fixed Costs

A new project increases fixed operating costs by ₹2,00,000.

So, new fixed cost becomes:

$$7,00,000 = 5,00,000 + 2,00,000$$

Contribution remains unchanged at ₹15,00,000.

EBIT (after new fixed cost):

$$\text{EBIT} = 15,00,000 - 7,00,000 = ₹8,00,000$$

Two financing options are available:

OPTION 1: Finance New Investment with Additional Debt

Additional Debt Needed: ₹10,00,000 @ 10%

Additional interest = ₹1,00,000

Total interest = ₹2,00,000 + 1,00,000 = ₹3,00,000

Step 1: Recalculate DOL

$$\text{DOL} = \frac{15,00,000}{8,00,000} = 1.875$$

(Operating leverage increases because fixed costs increased.)

Step 2: Recalculate DFL

$$\text{DFL} = \frac{8,00,000}{8,00,000 - 3,00,000} = \frac{8,00,000}{5,00,000} = 1.6$$

Step 3: New DCL (Debt Financing)

$$DCL = 1.875 \times 1.6 = 3.0$$

Interpretation:
A 1% change in sales now results in a 3% change in EPS.
Risk increases sharply because:

- Fixed operating cost increased
- Interest burden increased

This combination makes sales fluctuations more dangerous.
OPTION 2: Finance New Investment with New Equity
Interest remains unchanged at ₹2,00,000
Step 1: DOL remains same

$$DOL = 1.875$$

Step 2: Recalculate DFL

$$DFL = \frac{8,00,000}{8,00,000 - 2,00,000} = \frac{8,00,000}{6,00,000} \approx 1.33$$

Step 3: New DCL (Equity Financing)

$$DCL = 1.875 \times 1.33 \approx 2.49$$

Interpretation:
A 1% change in sales results in 2.49% change in EPS.
Risk increases moderately, but far lower than the debt option.
C. Decision Analysis

Scenario	DOL	DFL	DCL	Risk Level
Existing Business	1.5	1.25	1.875	Moderate
After Investment (Debt)	1.875	1.60	3.00	High (unsafe)
After Investment (Equity)	1.875	1.33	2.49	Moderate & safer

Final Conclusion

- Debt financing increases both financial risk and combined risk sharply.
- Equity financing increases total risk only moderately.
- Hence, equity financing is the safer choice for the new investment project.

Therefore, managers should prefer equity financing when operating leverage is already high, to avoid excessive total risk.

9.6 BREAK-EVEN ANALYSIS

Break-even analysis is a fundamental tool in financial management that helps managers understand the relationship between costs, sales volume, and profitability. It focuses on determining the level of output or sales at which the total revenue of a firm exactly equals its total cost. This point, known as the break-even point, indicates that the firm is neither making a profit nor incurring a loss. By analyzing this critical level of activity, decision-makers can assess the minimum performance required to justify the costs incurred in business operations.

In break-even analysis, costs are classified into fixed and variable components. Fixed costs remain constant regardless of the level of production, such as rent, salaries, and

insurance. Variable costs, on the other hand, change in direct proportion to the volume of production, including raw materials and direct labor expenses. Revenue is assumed to vary with the number of units sold. The break-even point is achieved when the contribution generated from sales — that is, the difference between the selling price per unit and variable cost per unit — is sufficient to cover the total fixed costs.

This analytical approach plays a crucial role in financial management because it supports planning, control, and decision-making functions. It helps managers evaluate the financial viability of new projects, determine the appropriate pricing strategy, and understand how changes in costs or sales volume can impact profitability. During uncertain market conditions or when the firm is introducing a new product, break-even analysis assists in estimating the risk level associated with different levels of output.

Additionally, break-even analysis aids in cost management by encouraging firms to monitor their cost structures closely and explore ways to reduce fixed or variable expenses. It also provides valuable insights into the margin of safety, which shows how much actual sales can fall before the business reaches the break-even point. In summary, break-even analysis is an important financial management technique that guides strategic business decisions by clarifying the relationship between cost, volume, and profit, enabling organizations to operate efficiently and sustainably.

9.6.1 Concept : Break-even analysis determines the sales volume at which: Total Revenue = Total Cost. At this point: Profit = 0. Business neither earns profit nor incurs loss

9.6.2 Break-Even Formulas

(i) Break-even in Units

$$\text{BEP(units)} = \frac{\text{Fixed Costs}}{\text{Contribution per Unit}}$$

(ii) Break-even in Rupees

$$\text{BEP(value)} = \frac{\text{Fixed Costs}}{\text{PV Ratio}}$$

Where:

$$\text{PV Ratio} = \frac{\text{Contribution}}{\text{Sales}}$$

9.6.3 Break-even Numerical Example

Selling price = ₹50

Variable cost = ₹30

Contribution = ₹20

Fixed cost = ₹2,00,000

$$\text{BEP} = \frac{2,00,000}{20} = 10,000 \text{ units}$$

9.7. Graphical Presentation of Break-Even Analysis

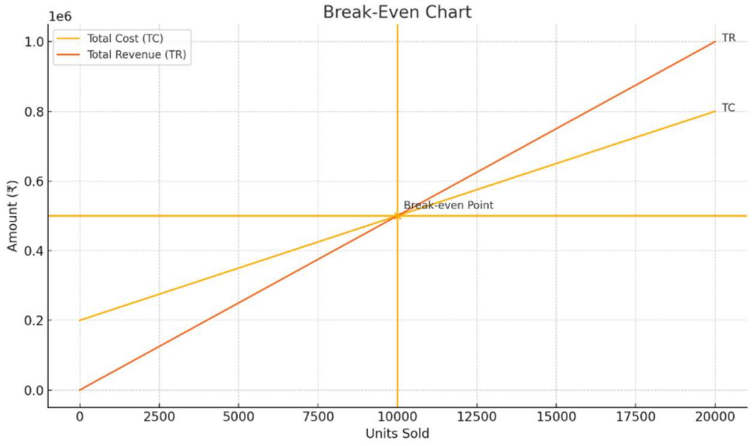
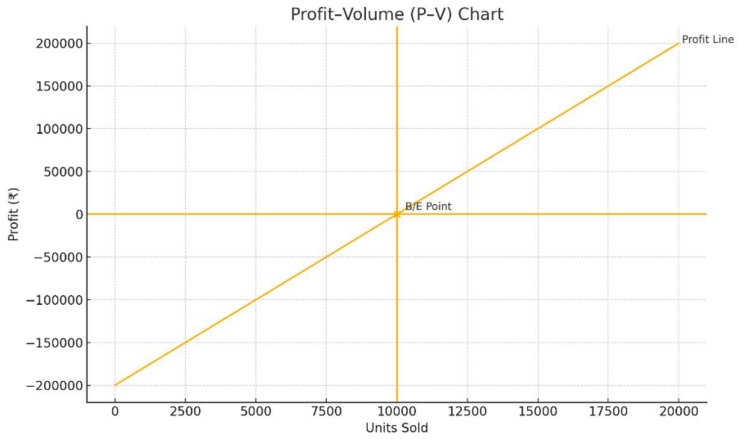


Figure 1: Break-Even Chart

Interpretation:

- TC line starts at fixed cost and rises with variable cost.
- TR line starts from origin.
- Intersection = Break-even point (10,000 units).
- Right of BEP = Profit region.
- Left of BEP = Loss region.

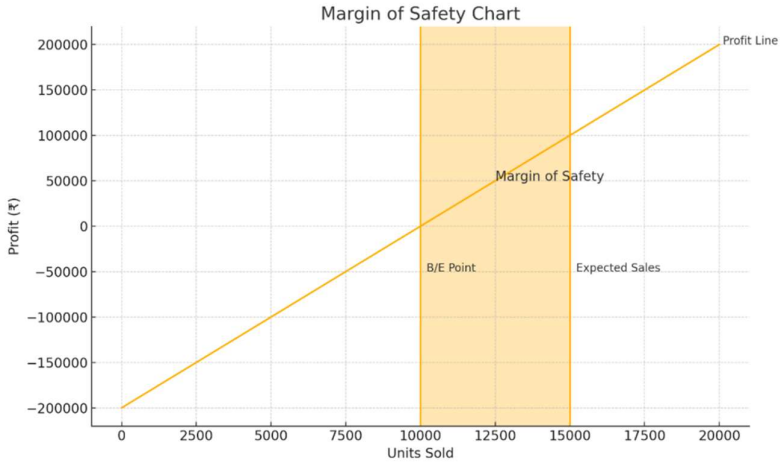
Figure 2: Profit–Volume (P–V) Chart



Interpretation:

- Profit line starts at –Fixed Cost.
- Becomes zero at BEP.
- Slope = Contribution per unit.

Figure 3: Margin of Safety Chart



The above *Chart shows shaded MoS area, BEP, and profit line*
Margin of Safety (MoS):

$$\text{MoS} = \text{Actual Sales} - \text{Break-even Sales}$$

Higher MoS ⇒ Lower risk.

9.8. Cost–Volume–Profit (CVP) Analysis

CVP analysis examines the relationship among cost, volume, and profit at various levels of activity.
CVP Table Example

Units	Sales	Variable Cost	Contribution	Fixed Cost	Profit
5,000	2,50,000	1,50,000	1,00,000	2,00,000	–1,00,000
10,000	5,00,000	3,00,000	2,00,000	2,00,000	0
15,000	7,50,000	4,50,000	3,00,000	2,00,000	1,00,000
20,000	10,00,000	6,00,000	4,00,000	2,00,000	2,00,000

9.9. TARGET PROFIT ANALYSIS

Sales required to earn target profit:
(i) Units

$$\text{Required Units} = \frac{\text{Fixed Cost} + \text{Target Profit}}{\text{Contribution per Unit}}$$

(ii) Rupees

$$\text{Required Sales} = \frac{\text{Fixed Cost} + \text{Target Profit}}{\text{PV Ratio}}$$

Numerical Example: Target Profit Analysis
A company produces a single product with the following cost data:

- Selling Price per unit = ₹50
- Variable Cost per unit = ₹30
- Fixed Cost = ₹2,00,000
- Target Profit = ₹1,20,000

Step 1: Contribution per Unit

$$\text{Contribution per Unit} = \text{Selling Price} - \text{Variable Cost}$$
$$= 50 - 30 = ₹20$$

Step 2: PV Ratio

$$\text{PV Ratio} = \frac{\text{Contribution per Unit}}{\text{Selling Price}}$$
$$= \frac{20}{50} = 0.40 = 40\%$$

(i) UNITS Required to Earn the Target Profit
Formula:

$$\text{Required Units} = \frac{\text{Fixed Cost} + \text{Target Profit}}{\text{Contribution per Unit}}$$

Substitute:

$$\text{Required Units} = \frac{2,00,000 + 1,20,000}{20}$$
$$= \frac{3,20,000}{20} = 16,000 \text{ units}$$

Answer (Units): The firm must sell 16,000 units to earn a profit of ₹1,20,000.

(ii) SALES (RUPEES) Required to Earn the Target Profit
Formula:

$$\text{Required Sales} = \frac{\text{Fixed Cost} + \text{Target Profit}}{\text{PV Ratio}}$$

Substitute:

$$\text{Required Sales} = \frac{3,20,000}{0.40}$$
$$= 8,00,000$$

Answer (Rupees): The company must achieve ₹8,00,000 in sales to earn a profit of ₹1,20,000.
Verification (Optional but Useful for Students)

Step 1: Calculate variable cost for 16,000 units:

$$\text{Variable Cost} = 16,000 \times 30 = ₹4,80,000$$

Step 2: Calculate sales:

$$\text{Sales} = 16,000 \times 50 = ₹8,00,000$$

Step 3: Contribution:

$$\text{Contribution} = 8,00,000 - 4,80,000 = ₹3,20,000$$

Step 4: Profit:

$$\text{Profit} = \text{Contribution} - \text{Fixed Cost}$$
$$= 3,20,000 - 2,00,000 = ₹1,20,000$$

Verified: The required sales level produces the target profit exactly.

9.10. MANAGERIAL IMPLICATIONS OF BREAK-EVEN AND CVP ANALYSIS

Managers use CVP and BEP analysis for:

- Pricing decisions
- Determining optimal sales mix
- Deciding on product discontinuation
- Analyzing effects of automation (high DOL)
- Make-or-buy decisions
- Evaluating safety margin and business stability
- Budgeting and forecasting

Factors that Increase a Company's Break-Even Point

It is important to calculate a company's break-even point in order to know the minimum target to cover production expenses. However, there are times when the break-even point increases or decreases, depending on certain of the following factors:

1. Increase in customer sales

When there is an increase in customer sales, it means that there is higher demand. A company then needs to produce more of its products to meet this new demand which, in turn, raises the break-even point in order to cover the extra expenses.

2. Increase in production costs

The hard part of running a business is when customer sales or product demand remains the same while the price of variable costs increases, such as the price of raw materials. When that happens, the break-even point also goes up because of the additional expense. Aside from production costs, other costs that may increase include rent for a warehouse, increases in salaries for employees, or higher utility rates.

3. Equipment repair

In cases where the production line falters, or a part of the assembly line breaks down, the break-even point increases since the target number of units is not produced within the desired time frame. Equipment failures also mean higher operational costs and, therefore, a higher break-even.

How to reduce the break-even point

In order for a business to generate higher profits, the break-even point must be lowered.

Here are common ways of reducing it:

1. Raise product prices

This is something that not all business owners want to do without hesitation, fearful that it may make them lose some customers.

2. Outsourcing

Profitability may be increased when a business opts for outsourcing, which can help reduce manufacturing costs when production volume increases.

Every company is in business to make some type of profit. However, understanding the break-even number of units is critical because it enables a company to determine the

number of units it needs to sell to cover all of the expenses it's accrued during the process of creating and selling goods or services.

Once the break-even number of units is determined, the company then knows what sales target it needs to set in order to generate profit and reach the company's financial goals.

Summary of the lesson

Leverage and Break-even Analysis provide the analytical foundations for understanding how cost structures, financing decisions, and sales volumes influence profitability and risk. Together, they enable managers to assess both the *earning potential* and *risk exposure* of a business under different operating conditions.

Operating Leverage arises from the use of fixed operating costs such as rent, salaries, and depreciation. When fixed costs are high relative to variable costs, even a small change in sales leads to a magnified change in Operating Profit (EBIT). This makes the firm more sensitive to demand fluctuations and increases business risk. Capital-intensive industries typically exhibit high operating leverage, offering greater profit potential during expansions but exposing firms to losses during downturns.

Financial Leverage results from the use of debt or preference capital that carries fixed financial charges. It measures how changes in EBIT influence Earnings Per Share (EPS). When a firm earns more than the cost of debt, financial leverage becomes favourable, increasing returns to equity shareholders (trading on equity). However, excessive debt raises financial risk and increases the likelihood of insolvency if earnings decline.

Combined Leverage integrates both operating and financial leverage, showing how changes in sales affect EPS. It is a comprehensive indicator of total risk because it reflects the combined impact of fixed operating costs and fixed financial charges. A firm with high combined leverage benefits greatly from rising sales but becomes highly vulnerable when sales decline. Hence, DCL is a critical tool in evaluating financing strategies and investment decisions.

Break-even Analysis (BEP) determines the level of sales at which total revenue equals total cost, resulting in zero profit or loss. It indicates the minimum sales volume required for the firm to survive. Break-even analysis also helps determine the margin of safety, which measures how much sales can fall before the firm begins to incur losses. By examining the relationship among cost, volume, and profit (CVP), managers can assess how pricing, product mix, production efficiency, and cost control initiatives affect profitability.

Managerial Applications of leverage and break-even tools are broad and strategic. They guide decisions related to automation, outsourcing, pricing, budgeting, capacity utilisation, profit planning, and optimal debt–equity mix selection. These tools improve managerial foresight by quantifying risk, projecting profit behaviour under varying sales conditions, and identifying safe and profitable operating zones.

In essence, leverage analysis explains *how profits react to sales and financing changes*, while break-even and CVP analysis explain *how costs and volumes interact to determine profit*. Together, they equip managers with powerful techniques to balance risk and return, formulate financial strategies, and ensure long-term business viability.

9.10. Keywords

- Operating Leverage
- Financial Leverage
- Combined Leverage

- Contribution
- Break-even Point
- CVP Analysis
- Fixed Cost
- Variable Cost
- P/V Ratio
- Margin of Safety

9.11. Self-Assessment Questions

9.11.1 Short Questions

1. Define operating leverage.
2. What is financial leverage?
3. Write the formula for DOL.
4. What is P/V ratio?
5. Define break-even point.
6. What is the margin of safety?
7. Mention two uses of break-even analysis.
8. What is combined leverage?

9.11.2 Essay Questions

1. Explain the concept of operating leverage with examples.
2. Discuss financial leverage and its importance in capital structure decisions.
3. Describe combined leverage and its managerial implications.
4. What is break-even analysis? Explain its uses and limitations.
5. Explain CVP analysis and its application in managerial decision-making.
6. Illustrate the break-even chart and explain each component.

9.11.3 Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs)

1. Operating leverage arises due to:
   a) Variable cost
   b) Fixed operating cost
   c) Interest cost
   d) None
   Answer: b
2. DFL is related to:
   a) Operating cost
   b) Fixed financial cost
   c) Variable cost
   d) Depreciation
   Answer: b
3. Break-even point occurs when:
   a) Revenue > Cost
   b) Revenue = Cost
   c) Revenue < Cost

d) None
Answer: b

4. Contribution equals:
   a) Sales – Fixed cost
   b) Sales – Variable cost
   c) Sales – Total cost
   d) Profit
   Answer: b
5. DCL =
   a) DOL + DFL
   b) DOL × DFL
   c) DOL – DFL
   d) None
   Answer: b

9.11.4 Case Studies

Case 1: Operating Leverage
ABC Ltd. produces a single product.
Selling price per unit = ₹100
Variable cost per unit = ₹40
Fixed cost = ₹6,00,000
Sales = 20,000 units
Calculate:

1. Contribution
2. EBIT
3. Degree of Operating Leverage
4. Business risk interpretation

Case 2: Break-even Analysis
A company has:
Fixed cost = ₹5,00,000
Selling price per unit = ₹200
Variable cost per unit = ₹120
Find:

1. BEP in units
2. BEP in rupees
3. Margin of safety if actual sales are ₹20,00,000

9.12. Prescribed Textbooks

1. Pandey, I.M. *Financial Management*.
2. Khan & Jain. *Financial Management*.
3. M.Y. Khan. *Cost and Management Accounting*.
4. Prasanna Chandra. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*.
5. Drury, C. *Management and Cost Accounting*.

Prof. V. Chandra Sekhara Rao

LESSON – 10

CAPITAL STRUCTURE THEORIES

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, learners will be able to:

1. Explain the meaning of financial structure and capital structure.
2. Describe the major capital structure theories — NI, NOI, Traditional, and MM.
3. Understand the assumptions underlying capital structure decisions.
4. Calculate the value of a firm and overall cost of capital using different theoretical models.
5. Interpret the effect of leverage on firm value, Ko, and MPS with numerical examples.

10 . STRUCTURE

10.1 INTRODUCTION

The three major decisions of financial management are investment decisions, financing decisions, and dividend decisions. Each decision area plays a crucial role in maximizing the value and financial health of a business.

Investment Decision : Investment decisions determine how a firm's funds are allocated to various assets, focusing on maximizing returns for the investors. These decisions can be long-term (capital budgeting, such as investing in fixed assets) or short-term (working capital management, like managing inventories and receivables). Investment decisions involve analyzing expected returns, risks, and alignment with overall business strategy.

Financing Decision : Financing decisions involve determining the sources and mix of funds required for business operations and growth. Firms can raise finance through equity (ownership shares), debt (loans and bonds), or a combination of both. The choice of financing affects the cost of capital and the overall risk profile of the business. An optimal financing strategy aims to minimize costs while ensuring financial flexibility and sustainability.

Dividend Decision : Dividend decisions relate to how much profit should be distributed to shareholders versus how much should be retained in the business for reinvestment. This decision affects shareholder satisfaction and the company's growth trajectory. A balanced dividend policy considers profitability, future funding needs, and shareholder expectations.

These three decisions are interconnected, influencing a firm's value, risk, and ability to sustain long-term growth.

Key Aspects of Financing Decision :

1. Estimating the Total Fund Requirement: Determining how much money is needed based on the firm's investment and operational plans.
2. Selecting the Sources of Funds: Deciding the proportion of different financing sources, such as: Equity: Share capital, retained earnings; Debt: Loans, debentures, bonds; Preference Capital: Funds raised through preference shares.

10.1.1 Financial Structure and Capital structure :

The financial structure of a firm shows the entire mix of all sources of finance, as presented on the liability side of the balance sheet. It includes both long-term and short-term funds.

Example: Balance Sheet of ABC Company as on 31 March 2025

Liabilities	Rs. (lakhs)	Assets	Rs. (lakhs)
1. Equity Capital	1200	1. Fixed Assets	1700
2. Preference Capital	300	Less: Depreciation	200
3. Reserves & Surplus	200	= Net Fixed Assets	1500
4. Long-term Debt	500	2. Other Long-term	500

		Assets	
5. Current Liabilities	300	3. Current Assets	500
Total Liabilities	2500	Total Assets	2500

Formula: Financial Structure = Equity Capital (1200) + Preference Capital (300) + Reserves (200) + Long-term Debt (500) + Current Liabilities (300) = 2500

Designing an Effective Financial Structure: When designing its financial structure, a firm should maintain an appropriate balance between long-term and short-term funds, carefully consider the cost of each source of finance, and evaluate the level of risk associated with every financing option.

10.1.2 Capital Structure

The capital structure represents the mix of long-term sources of finance, mainly equity and debt, that a firm uses to finance its assets and projects. It plays a key role in determining the cost of capital, financial risk, and value of the firm.

Formula: Capital Structure = Financial Structure (2500) - Current Liabilities (300) = Rs 2200

10.2 THEORIES OF CAPITAL STRUCTURE.

Capital structure theories seek to explain the relationship between capital structure decisions and the market value of the firm. There are conflicting opinions regarding whether or not capital structure decision (or leverage or proportion of debt and equity) affects the value of the firm (or shareholders' wealth). There is a viewpoint that strongly supports the close relationship between capital structure decisions and the value of a firm. There is an equally strong body of opinion that believes that capital structure decision has no impact on the value of the firm.. Capital structure theories have been proposed by various authors like David Durand, Ezra Solomon, Modigliani, and Miller. Although there are various theories but the important ones are:-

1. Net Income (NI) Approach
2. Net Operating Income (NOI) Approach
3. Traditional Approach
4. Modigliani and Miller (MM) Approach.

Out of these theories, Net Income approach and traditional approach strongly support the viewpoint that there exists a relationship between capital structure of a firm and its market value. Whereas, Net Operating Income Approach and Modigliani and Miller rule out any relationship between capital structure and market value

10.3 BASIC ASSUMPTIONS :

1. The company uses only two sources of funds that is debt and equity.
2. There are no corporate taxes.

3. The firm's total assets are given and they do not change. In other words, the investment decisions are assumed to be constant.
4. The dividend payout ratio is 100 per cent which means that whole of the earnings are distributed as dividends and there are no retained earnings.
5. The operating profits (EBIT) of the company are given and not expected to grow.
6. The company's total financing remains constant. The company can change its capital structure either by redeeming the debentures with the help of issuing shares or by raising more debt and reducing the equity capital. We assume that the firm increases leverage by raising additional debt and using theses funds to buy back of equity (increase of numerator and decrease of denominator in Debt / equity ratio);
Leverage is decreased by issue of new shares and using these proceeds to repay debt (decrease of numerator and increase of denominator in Debt / equity ratio);
7. The business risk remains constant and is assumed to be independent of capital structure and financial risk.
8. Operating earnings (EBIT) are not expected to grow , for a given firm. All investors have the same probability distribution of future expected operating earnings (EBIT) for a given firm.
9. The firm has a perpetual life.

10.4 Symbols and notations used in this lesson :

V = Total market value of the firm
B = Total market value of debt outstanding
S = Total market value of equity outstanding
V = B + S
B = V - S
E = V – B

Market Value of Debt (B) : I / K_d ;
where I = Annual interest and K_d = cost of debt
B = Annual Interest / cost of debt

Market value of Debt (B) is given by capitalizing the earnings available to Debt holders (I) with Cost of debt (Ke)

Ex: 5% debt of Rs. 1000
K_d = 5% B= Rs 1000. Annual Interest = Rs. 50
$B = I/ K_d = 50 /5\% = 50 / 0.05 = 1000$

K_d = Annual Interest payable / MV of Debt
$K_d = I / B$

1. Market value of equity (S) = NI/ Ke

NI = Earnings available for equity shareholders
Ke = Equity capitalization rate

Market value of stock (S) is given by capitalizing the earnings available to equity shareholders with equity capitalization rate Ke

$K_e = NI /S$

Equity capitalisation rate K_e is given by dividing earnings available to equity shareholders by Market value of stock outstanding

Total market value of the firm = EBIT / Ko
Ko = weighted average cost of Capital
Ko = Kd (B / B+S) + Ke (S / B+S)
Ko = EBIT / V
Summary :

1. Kd = I / B ; B = I / Kd
2. Ke = NI / S ; S = NI /Ke
3. Ko = EBIT / V ; V = EBIT / Ko
4. Ko = Kd (B/ B+S) + Ke (S / B+S)
5. MPs = S / N

10.5 NI APPROACH

This approach was given by Durand. According to this approach, capital structure decision affects the value of the firm. A change in the capital structure (Financial leverage or Debt-equity ratio) causes a change in the overall cost of capital and the value of the firm.
Use of higher debt in the capital structure will decrease the overall cost of capital and increase the value of the firm and the market price of equity shares. On the other hand, a decrease in the use of debt in capital structure will lead to an increase in the overall cost of capital and a decrease in the value of the firm and the market price of equity shares.
According to the Net Income (NI) Approach, the capital structure decision is relevant for the valuation of the firm. In other words, a change in the financial leverage (i.e. the ratio of debt to equity) will lead to a corresponding change in the value of the firm (V) as well as the overall cost of capital (Ko) and Market price of share (MPS) . Change in leverage affects : (1). V; (2) Ko (3) MPS

10.5.1 assumptions

This approach is based on three assumptions:

(a) There are no taxes.
(b) The cost of debt is less than the cost of equity.
(c) The use of debt does not change the risk perception of investors.

10.5.2 propositions

1. According to this approach, if the ratio of debt to equity is increased, the cost of capital will decline, while the value of the firm as well as the market price of equity shares will increase. With increase in D/E --- V will increase; MPS will increase and Ko will decrease.
2. Conversely, a decrease in the ratio of debt to equity will cause an increase in the overall cost of capital and a decline both in the value of the firm as well as the market price of equity shares. With decrease in D/E --- V will decrease; MPS will decrease and Ko will increase.
3. Hence, a firm can minimise the cost of capital and increase the value of the firm as well as market price of its equity shares by using debt financing to the maximum possible extent.

According to NI approach, financial leverage is an important variable in capital structure decision of a company. By making a judicious use of debt and equity, a company can achieve an optimum capital structure. The optimum capital structure is one at which the overall cost of capital (K0) is minimum and the value of the firm is maximum. At this capital structure, the market price of the equity share will be the highest.

Numerical Example :

(a) A company's operating income (EBIT) is Rs.3,00,000. It has Rs. 12,00,000, 9% debentures. The equity capitalisation rate of the company is 12%. The company has 16000 equity share of Rs 100 each. Calculate the value of the firm (V) and overall capitalisation rate (Ko), and MPS according to the Net Income Approach (Ignore Income Tax).

- (b) If the company issues 300000 additional debt to buy back of equity shares, then debenture debt is increased to Rs. 15,00,000. What shall be the value of the firm and overall capitalisation rate and MPS according to the Net Income Approach?
- (c) If the debenture debt is decreased to Rs. 10,00,000, by rising additional equity of Rs 200,000 , what shall be the value of the firm and overall capitalisation rate and MPS , according to the Net Income Approach?

Answer :

1. Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT)	=	Rs 3,00,000
2. Minus interest (9% on 12,00,000)	(-)	1,08,000
3. Earnings before Tax (EBT)	=	1,92,000
4. Tax (assumed zero)	=	0
5. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=		1,92,000
6. Divided by Ke	(-)	0.12
7. = S (market value of stock) (hint : S = NI/Ke) =		Rs16,00,000
8. + B (Market value of Debt)	+	Rs 12,00,000
9. = V (Value of the firm)	=	28,00,000
10. Ko = EBIT /V = 3,00,000 / 28,00,000 = 0.1071 =		10.71 %
11. MPS = S / N = 16,00,000 / 16,000 = Rs 100		Rs 100

Initial position : V = 28,00,000 ; Ko = 10.71%; and MPS = Rs 100

Impact of an increase in leverage on V, Ko and MPS :

- To understand the impact of increase in leverage let us assume that the company issues Rs 3,00,000 additional debt to buy back of equity shares. As a result debenture debt is increased to Rs. 15,00,000. What shall be the value of the firm and overall capitalisation rate and MPS according to the Net Income Approach?

1 Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT)	=	Rs 3,00,000
2. Minus interest (9% on 15, 00,000)	(-)	1,35,000
2. Earnings before Tax (EBT)	=	1,65,000
3. Tax (assumed zero)	=	0
4. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=		1,65,000
5. Divided by Ke		0.12

6. = S (market value of stock) (hint : S = NI/Ke) =	Rs13,75,,000
7. + B (Market value of Debt) +	Rs 15,00,000
8. = V (Value of the firm) =	28,75,000
9. Ko = EBIT /V = 3,00,000 / 28,75,000 = 0.1043 =	10.43 %
10. MPS = S / N = 13,75,,000 / (16,000-3000) =	Rs 105.76

Summary of effects of increase in leverage :

1. Impact on 3 parameters with increase in leverage :
   1. V increased from Rs 28,00,000 to Rs 28, 75, 000
   2. MPS increased from Rs 100 to 105.76
   3. Ko decreased from 10.71% to 10.43%
2. Impact on MPS : Actual shares = 16000. with Rs 3,00,000 the firm can buy back 3000 shares @ Rs 100 each ,so remaining shares are 13000. MPS now = S/ No of share outstanding . = 13,75,000 / 13 000 = Rs 105.76

Impact of an decrease in leverage on V, Ko and MPS

To understand the impact of decrease in leverage , let us assume that the debenture debt is decreased to Rs. 10,00,000, by rising additional equity of Rs 200,000 , what shall be the value of the firm and overall capitalisation rate and MPS , according to the Net Income Approach?

1. Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT) =	Rs 3,00,000
2. Minus interest (9% on 10,00,000) (-)	90,000
3. Earnings before Tax (EBT) =	2,10, ,000
4. Tax (assumed zero) =	0
5. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=	2,10,,000
6. Divided by Ke (-)	0.12
7. = S (market value of stock) (hint : S = NI/Ke) =	Rs17,50,,000
8. + B (Market value of Debt) +	Rs 10,00,000
9. = V (Value of the firm) =	27,50,000
10. Ko = EBIT /V = 3,00,000 / 27,50,000 = 0.1090 =	10.90 %
11. MPS = S / N = 17,50,000 / 18,000 = Rs 97.22	Rs 97.22

1. Impact on MPS : Actual shares = 16000 @ Rs 100 . Additional issue of 2000 share @ 100 each raises funds by Rs 2,00,000. this amount is used to repay debt worth 200000.so remaining shares are 18000
   MPS now = MV of S/ No of share outstanding . = 17,50,,000 / 18 000 = Rs 97.22
2. Impact on 3 parameters with decrease in leverage :

1. V decreased from Rs 28,00,000 to Rs 27,50, 000
2. MPS decreased from Rs 100 to 97.22
3. Ko increased from 10.71% to 10.91%

Graphical presentation of NI approach

According to the NI Approach of capital structure:

- The cost of debt (Kd) remains constant and is lower than the cost of equity (Ke).
- As the firm increases financial leverage (i.e., uses more debt relative to equity), the overall cost of capital (Ko) decreases.
- Since debt is cheaper, replacing equity with debt reduces Ko.

- As Ko falls, the value of the firm increases, because firm value is inversely related to Ko.

Graphical Presentation of NI Approach

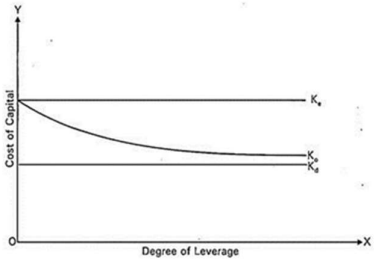


Fig. The effect of leverage on the cost of capital under NI Approach.

In the above figure, the degree of leverage is plotted along the X-axis, while the percentage rates of Ke (Cost of Equity), Kd (Cost of Debt) and Ko (Overall cost of Capital) are shown on Y-axis. The figure shows that Ke and Kd remain unchanged as the degree of leverage (proportion of debt in comparison to equity) is increased and we find that both the curves remain parallel to the X-axis.

But as the degree of leverage increases, cost of capital Ko decreases and approaches the cost of debt Kd. Ko however cannot touch Kd as there cannot be all debt firm. The optimal capital structure is one at which Ko is nearest to Kd i.e., at which the proportion of equity capital is insignificant. At this level, the firm's overall cost of capital would be lowest and the market value of the firm and market value per share is highest.

Interpretation of the Diagram:

- Ke (Cost of Equity): Remains constant despite an increase in leverage.
- Kd (Cost of Debt): Constant and lower than Ke.
- Ko (Overall Cost of Capital): Declines as leverage (Debt/Equity ratio) increases.

This downward-sloping Ko line illustrates that greater use of debt results in a lower overall cost of capital → improved firm valuation.

Under the NI Approach, an optimal capital structure exists, and the firm can maximize its value by using more debt financing.

10.6 NOI APPROACH

Another theory of capital structure, as suggested by Durand, is the Net Operating Income (NOI) Approach. It is diametrically opposite to the net income approach. The essence of this Approach is that the capital structure decision of a firm is irrelevant. Any change in the capital structure of the company does not affect the market value of the firm and the overall cost of capital remains constant irrespective of the method of financing.

It means that the overall cost of capital would remain same whether the debt-equity mix is 50 : 50 or 30 : 70 or 60 : 40 or any other combination. Thus the total value of the firm, the market price of shares as well as the overall cost of capital is independent of the degree of leverage.

10.6.1 assumptions :

This approach is based on the following assumptions:

1. The overall cost of capital K0 remains constant for all degrees of financial leverage or debt-equity ratio.
2. There are no corporate taxes.
3. The investors values the firm as a whole and do not split the value of the firm into value of equity and value of debt.
4. The increase of proportion of debt in the capital structure results in an increase in the financial risk which causes an increase in the cost of equity Ke.
5. The weighted average or overall cost of capital (K0) remains constant.

10.6.2 propositions

The Net Operating Income (NOI) approach advocates that the cost of equity (Ke) increases with the increase in the financial leverage. This is due to increased risk assumed by the equity shareholders due to the use of more debt by the firm. To compensate for increased risk, shareholders would expect a higher rate of return on their investments. As such, the cost of equity (Ke) increases as a result of increased financial leverage whereas the cost of debt (Kd) remains constant as the financial risk of lenders is not affected.

Therefore, the advantage of using the cheaper source of funds, i.e. the debt is exactly offset by the increased cost of equity. Consequently, the overall cost of capital (Ko) remains constant at all degrees of financial leverage. Since the value of the firm is measured as a whole on the basis of overall cost of capital and since the overall cost of capital (Ko) remains constant, the value of the firm (V) also remains same at all degrees of financial leverage.

Numerical example for NOI approach :

A Co. Ltd. has an operating income (EBIT) of Rs.80,000 and outstanding debt of Rs.4,00,000 at 10% rate of interest. If the overall capitalisation rate (Ko) is 12.5 per cent, No of equity shares outstanding = 2400. calculate the value of the firm and cost of equity.

Hint : NOI or EBIT is given; Ko is given . now calculate V using the formula V = EBIT / Ko From V deduct B to get S.

Plan A Increase in leverage : Raising additional Debt of Rs 2,00,000 and using this amount to buyback of shares . With Rs 2,00,000 the firm can buy back 2000 shares.so remaining shares ill be 400.

Plan B Decrease in Leverage : Issue of additional shares worth of Rs 2,00,000 and using this amount to repay debt. Remaining debt will be 2,00,000. No of shares remaining will be 4400.

Initial Situation that is calculation of V, Ko and MPS

1. Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT)	=	Rs 80,000
2. Divided by Ko 12.5 %		0.125
3. = Value of the firm (V)	=	Rs 6,40,000
4. Minus B		Rs 4,00,000
5. = S (market value of Stock)		Rs 2,40,000
6. EBIT		80,000
7. Minus interest (10 % on 4,00,000)	(-)	40, 000
8. Earnings before Tax (EBT)	=	40 000

9. Tax (assumed zero) =	0
10. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=	40,000
11. Divided by S	2,40,000
12. = Ke	16.66
13. Ko = EBIT /V = 80,000 / 6,40,000 = 0.125	12.5 %
14. MPS = S / N = 2,40,000 / 2400 = Rs 100	Rs 100

V = Rs 6,40,000; Ko = 12.5%; MPS = Rs100

10.6.3 numerical example of impact of increase in leverage

To understand the impact of increase in leverage , let us assume that the company raises additional Debt of Rs 2,00,000 and uses this amount to buyback of shares . With Rs 2,00,000 the firm can buy back 2000 shares.so remaining shares will be 400

1. Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT) =	Rs 80,000
2. Divided by Ko 12.5 %	0.125
3. = Value of the firm (V) =	Rs 6,40,000
4. Minus B (value of Debt) 400,000 + 200,000	Rs 6,00,000
5. = S (market value of Stock)	Rs 40,000
6. EBIT	80,000
7. Minus interest (10 % on 6,00,000) (-)	60, 000
8. Earnings before Tax (EBT) =	20 000
9. Tax (assumed zero) =	0
10. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=	20,000
11. Divided by S	40,000
12. = Ke	50 %
13. Ko = EBIT /V = 80,000 / 6,40,000 = 0.125	12.5 %
14. MPS = S / N = 40,000 / 400 = Rs 100	Rs 100

V = Rs 6,40,000 remained same ;
Ko = 12.5% remained same ;
MPS = Rs100 No Change .
So capital structure has no impact on V or Ko or MPS and is irrelevant.
But Ke changed due to increase in leverage from 16.66 % to 50 %

10.6.4 Impact of Decrease in leverage on V, Ko and MPS under NOI approach : To understand the impact of Decrease in Leverage, let us assume that the firm Issues additional shares worth of Rs 2,00,000 and using this amount to repay debt. Remaining debt will be 2,00,000. No of shares remaining will be 4400.

1. Earnings before Interest and tax (EBIT) =	Rs 80,000
2. Divided by Ko 12.5 %	0.125
3. = Value of the firm (V) =	Rs 6,40,000
4. Minus B (value of Debt) 200,000	Rs 2,00,000
5. = S (market value of Stock)	Rs 4,40,000
6. EBIT	80,000

7. Minus interest (10 % on 2,00,000)	(-)	20, 000
8. Earnings before Tax (EBT)	=	60 000
9. Tax (assumed zero)	=	0
10. Earnings after Tax (EAT)=		60,000
11. Divided by S		4,40,000
12. = Ke		13.63 %
13. Ko = EBIT /V = 80,000 / 6,40,000 = 0.125		12.5 %
14. MPS = S / N = 4,40,000 / 4,400 = Rs 100		Rs 100

V = Rs 6,40,000 Ko = 12.5% MPS = Rs100 No Change

V remained same;

MPS remained same;

Ko remained same

So CS is irrelevant.

Only Ke decreased from 16.67 % to 13.64%

10.6.5 Graphical presentation of NOI approach

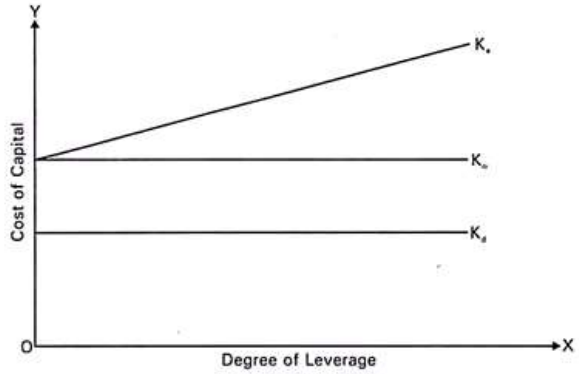


Fig. The effect of leverage on the cost of capital under NOI Approach.

In the above figure, the degree of leverage is plotted on X-axis, while the percentage rates of Ke (Cost of Equity), Kd (Cost of debt) and Ko (Overall cost of Capital) are shown on Y-axis. The figure shows that Kd and Ko remain constant as the degree of leverage is increased and we find that both the curves are parallel to the X-axis.

Cost of equity (Ke) is equal to Ko when leverage is zero. But with the increase in the leverage the cost of equity (Ke) rises in such a manner so as to offset (or Neutralise) the advantage of using cheaper debt capital. As a result, Ko and the value of firm (V) remain unchanged by the increase in the financial leverage.

The market price of shares will also not change with the change in leverage. Since KO is constant, this approach implies that there is not any unique optimum capital structure. In other words, as KO is the same at all capital structures, every capital structure is optimum.

10.7 Traditional view

Net Income (NI) Approach and Net Operating Income (NOI) Approach are the two extremes of the relationship between the capital structure and value of the firm. While Net Income Approach explains that the capital structure affects the overall cost of capital and the total value of the firm, the Net Operating Income Approach suggests that the capital structure is totally

irrelevant. Traditional Approach is a compromising viewpoint between Net Income Approach and Net Operating Income Approach. Partly it has the features of both the approaches. Therefore, it is a mid-way approach. The Traditional Approach is similar to the NI Approach to the extent that it says that leverage affects the overall cost of capital and total value of the firm.

However, it does not accept the viewpoint of NI Approach that the value of the firm will necessarily increase for all degrees of financial leverage, it is similar to the viewpoint of NOI Approach that beyond a certain degree of leverage, the overall cost of capital increases, as a result of which the total value of the firm decreases. But it is different from the NOI Approach as it does not accept the view that the overall cost of capital is constant for all degrees of leverage.

The essence of the Traditional Approach is that a firm by making a judicious use of debt and equity in its capital structure can increase its total value and decrease the overall cost of capital. This is because debt is a cheaper source of finance due to tax deductibility of interest in comparison to equity shares.

The use of cheaper source of funds (debt) by replacing equity capital will reduce the overall cost of capital. However, if the debt is raised further, it will increase financial risk for the investors, leading to a higher equity capitalisation rate (Ke). But the increase in equity capitalisation rate (Ke) may not be so high as to offset the benefit of cheaper debt.

But, if the debt is increased further, it will increase financial risk both for equity shareholders and creditors. They will demand higher rate of return from the firm. In other words, it will increase the equity capitalisation rate (Ke) as well as the cost of debt (Ki). Thus, the use of debt beyond a certain point will raise the overall cost of capital and decrease the value of the firm.

Hence, the use of debt upto a certain point will increase the value of the firm and beyond that point it will decrease the value of the firm. At this level of debt-equity mix, the capital structure of the firm would be optimum. At this level, the overall cost of capital would be the minimum. At this level, the marginal real cost of debt (both implicit and explicit) would be equal to the real cost of equity. In conclusion, it can be said that financial leverage is favourable upto a certain level but after a certain point it starts operating adversely.

The crux of the traditional approach is that through judicious use of debt, a firm can reduce its overall cost of capital (Ko) and can increase the value of the firm. The rationale behind this view is that debt is a relatively cheaper source of funds as compared to equity shares. A change in the leverage, that is, using more debt in place of equity causes a decline in overall cost of capital.

However, it occurs within a reasonable limit of debt. If the proportion of debt is increased beyond a certain point the overall cost of capital starts increasing and firm's market value begins to decline. Thus, an optimum capital structure exists, and it occurs at that degree of financial leverage where overall cost of capital is minimum and the value of the firm is maximum.

According to the traditional approach, the manner in which the overall cost of capital and the value of the firm react to changes in the degree of financial leverage can be divided into three stages:

First Stage: In the first stage, increase in financial leverage, i.e. the use of increased debt in the capital structure results in decrease in the Overall Cost of Capital (Ko) and increase

in the Value of the Firm. This is because, a relatively cheaper source of funds debt replaces a relatively costlier source of funds equity. In this stage, cost of equity (Ke) remains constant or rises negligibly. Cost of debt (Kd) also remains constant or rises negligibly since the market considers the use of debt as a reasonable policy at this stage.

Second Stage: Once the firm has reached a certain degree of financial leverage, increase in leverage does not affect the Overall Cost of Capital and the Value of the Firm. This is because the increase in the cost of equity (Ke) due to added financial risk completely offsets the advantage of using cheaper debt capital. Within that range or at a particular level of leverage the overall cost of capital will be minimum and the value of the firm will be maximum. This range or level represents optimum capital structure.

Third Stage: In the third stage, the further increase in debt will lead to increase in Overall Cost of Capital and will reduce the Value of the Firm. This happens due to two factors – (i) Owing to increased financial risk, Ke will rise sharply and (ii) Kd would also rise because the lenders will also raise the rate of interest as they may require compensation for higher risk. The behaviour of Kd, Ke and Ko has been graphically shown in the following figure:

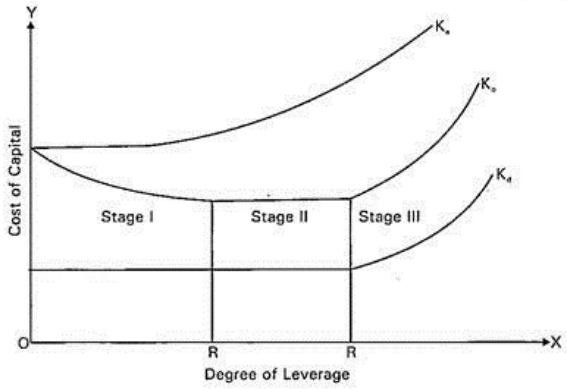


Fig. Traditional Approach.

Figure depicts that cost of equity (Ke) rises negligibly in the initial stage but starts rising sharply in the later stages. Cost of debt (Kd) remains constant upto a certain degree of leverage and thereafter it also starts rising. The overall cost of capital (Ko) curve is saucer-shaped with a horizontal range RR. The optimum capital structure of the firm is represented by range RR because in this range the overall cost of capital (Ko) is minimum and the value of firm is maximum.

Numerical Example for Traditional Approach

Assumptions

- EBIT = ₹2,00,000 (constant)
- No corporate taxes
- $V = D + E$
- $K_o = \frac{EBIT}{V}$

We consider three capital structures:

Case	Description	Debt (D)	Kd	Equity (E)	Ke	Total Value V = D+E	Ko = EBIT / V
1	No leverage	₹0	–	₹10,00,000	20%	₹10,00,000	20.0%
2	Moderate	₹5,00,000	10%	₹7,50,000	20%	₹12,50,000	16.0%

Case	Description	Debt (D)	Kd	Equity (E)	Ke	Total Value V = D+E	Ko = EBIT / V
	leverage						
3	High leverage	₹10,00,000	14%	₹2,14,286	28%	₹12,14,286 (≈)	≈16.5%

Note: Ke and Kd in each case are chosen so that
$EBIT = K_d \cdot D + K_e \cdot E$,
which ensures consistency with valuation.

Check Ko in Each Case

Case 1 – No Leverage (Unlevered firm)

- $V = ₹10,00,000$
- $EBIT = ₹2,00,000$

$$K_o = \frac{2,00,000}{10,00,000} = 0.20 = 20\%$$

This is the initial overall cost of capital.

Case 2 – Moderate (Favourable) Leverage

- Debt $D = ₹5,00,000$, $K_d = 10\%$
- Equity $E = ₹7,50,000$, $K_e = 20\%$
- Total value $V = ₹5,00,000 + ₹7,50,000 = ₹12,50,000$

$$K_o = \frac{2,00,000}{12,50,000} = 0.16 = 16\%$$

Here:

- Ko falls from 20% to 16%,
- Value of the firm rises from ₹10,00,000 to ₹12,50,000.

➞ This illustrates Stage I & II (favourable leverage and optimum region).

Case 3 – High (Unfavourable) Leverage

- Debt $D = ₹10,00,000$, $K_d = 14\%$(lenders demand more)
- Equity $E \approx ₹2,14,286$, $K_e = 28\%$(shareholders demand much more)
- Total value $V \approx ₹12,14,286$

$$K_o = \frac{2,00,000}{12,14,286} \approx 0.1647 = 16.5\%$$

Now:

- Ko rises from 16% to about 16.5%,
- Value of the firm falls slightly from ₹12,50,000 to ≈₹12,14,286.

➞ This shows Stage III, where excessive debt raises Ko and reduces firm value.

How This Fits the Traditional View

- Stage I (Low leverage): introducing cheap debt ↓ Ko (20% → 16%).
- Stage II (Optimum range): Ko is at minimum (16%); firm value is maximum.
- Stage III (High leverage): further debt ↑ financial risk → ↑Kd, ↑Ke → Ko rises (16% → 16.5%) and value falls.

This fully aligns with:

$$K_o = \frac{EBIT}{V}$$

and with the saucer-shaped Ko curve.

Summary of 3 stages :

Case 1 : No Leverage

- Debt (D): ₹0
- Cost of Debt (Kd): – NA
- Equity (E): ₹10,00,000
- Cost of Equity (Ke): 20%
- Total Value of the Firm (V = D + E): ₹10,00,000
- Overall Cost of Capital (Ko = EBIT / V): 20.0%

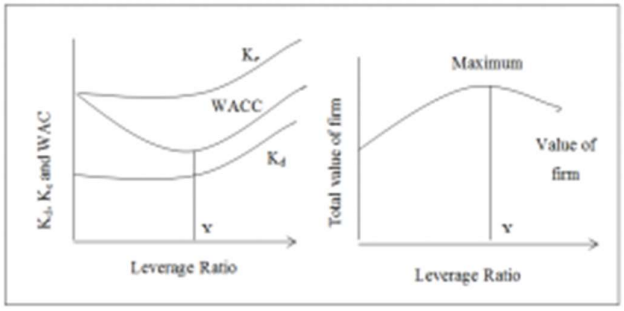
Case 2 : Moderate Leverage

- Debt (D): ₹5,00,000
- Cost of Debt (Kd): 10%
- Equity (E): ₹7,50,000
- Cost of Equity (Ke): 20%
- Total Value of the Firm (V = D + E): ₹12,50,000
- Overall Cost of Capital (Ko = EBIT / V): 16.0%

Case 3 : High Leverage

- Debt (D): ₹10,00,000
- Cost of Debt (Kd): 14%
- Equity (E): ₹2,14,286
- Cost of Equity (Ke): 28%
- Total Value of the Firm (V = D + E): ≈ ₹12,14,286
- Overall Cost of Capital (Ko = EBIT / V): ≈ 16.5%

Another variation of traditional Approach



Explanation of the Diagram : The diagram has two parts:

Left Side – Cost of Capital vs. Leverage

- The horizontal axis shows the Leverage Ratio (use of more debt in capital structure).
- The vertical axis shows cost of capital:
  - Kd = Cost of debt
  - Ke = Cost of equity
  - WACC / Ko = Overall cost of capital

How the curves behave:

- Kd (cost of debt): Starts low because debt is cheaper. But as the firm borrows more, the lender's risk increases → Kd gradually rises.

- Ke (cost of equity): Equity shareholders feel more financial risk as debt increases → Ke rises sharply.
- WACC / Ko: At first, adding cheaper debt reduces overall cost of capital → Ko decreases. After a certain point (x), rising Kd and Ke push Ko upward → Ko increases. Point x is the lowest point of Ko → this indicates the optimum capital structure.

Right Side – Firm Value vs. Leverage

- As leverage increases initially → Ko decreases → Value of firm increases.
- At point x → the firm's value is maximum.
- Beyond point x → more debt increases risk → cost rises → firm value falls.

Summary of the fig above :

Stage	Effect of More Debt	Cost of Capital	Value of Firm
Initial Leverage	Beneficial	Decreases	Increases
At Point x	Best Situation	Minimum	Maximum
Beyond x	Harmful	Increases	Decreases

Using debt is good only up to a limit. After that limit, extra debt becomes risky, increasing the cost of capital and reducing the value of the firm. This is exactly what the Traditional Capital Structure Theory states.

10.8 MM Approach

The Modigliani-Miller Approach is similar to the net operating income approach when taxes are ignored. The theory proves that there is no relationship between the capital structure decision and the value of the firm and its overall cost of capital. However it is an improvement over the net operating income approach as it provides the behavioural justification for the contention that capital structure decision is not related to overall cost of capital. In other words, it justifies the proposition that overall cost of capital remains constant at any level of debt-equity ratio.

(i) The Modigliani-Miller Approach – When the Taxes are Ignored:

The theory propounds that a change in capital structure (i.e., debt-equity ratio) does not affect the overall cost of capital and the total value of the firm. The Modigliani-Miller (MM) approach is also similar to the net Operating Income approach. However, the NOI approach does not provide operational justification for irrelevance of capital structure to the valuation of the firm and it is of definitional nature while MM approach provides behavioural justification for constant cost of capital and value of the firm.

In other words, MM approach says that the weighted average cost of capital and hence, the total value of the firm does not change with the change in the capital structure. The behavioural justification in MM approach lies in the arbitrage process. Arbitrage means buying an asset in one market at lower price and selling the same in another market at higher price. This arbitrage process restores equilibrium in both the markets.

Assumptions:

MM Approach is based on the following assumptions:

1. Capital markets are perfect – Securities are traded in a perfect capital market situation.

A perfect market implies that:

(a) Securities are infinitely divisible;

(b) The investors are free to buy or sell securities;

(c) There are no transaction costs, i.e., the cost of buying and selling securities do not exist;

(d) The investors can borrow without restrictions on the same terms and conditions as the firms can;

(e) Information is perfect and freely available to the investors; and

(f) Investors behave rationally.

2. Homogeneous risk classes of firm – Firms can be grouped into homogeneous risk classes. In other words, the expected earnings of a group of firms have identical risk characteristics.

3. Expectations about the net operating income – All the investors have same expectations about the net operating income of the firm with which to evaluate its value.

4. 100% payout ratio – The dividend payout ratio is 100%, i.e. all the earnings are distributed to the shareholders.

5. No corporate taxes – There are no corporate taxes. (This assumption is later withdrawn.)

6. The rate of investment – The cut-off rate of investment in a firm is the capitalisation rate.

7. Behavioural Justification for Irrelevance of Capital Structure Decision – The Arbitrage Process:

Basic Propositions:

The MM approach has the following three propositions:

1. The overall cost of capital (K0) and the value of the firm (V) are independent of the capital structure of the firm. It means that for all levels of debt-equity mix, the overall cost of capital and value of the firm will remain constant.

2. The cost of equity (Ke) is equal to capitalisation rate of a free equity stream plus a premium for financial risk. The financial risk increases as the proportion of debt is increased in the capital structure.

3. The cut off rate for investment purposes is totally independent of the manner in which an investment is financed.

Arbitrage Process:

The operational justification in MM approach is provided by the 'arbitrage process'. Arbitrage means buying an asset or security in one market at lower price and selling it in another market at higher price. This activity will increase the price in the market where it is low due to more demand and decrease the price in the market where it is higher due to increase in supply.

This will make the price in the two markets equal. On the same basis, the market price of the securities of the two firms exactly similar in all respects except the capital structures (debt-equity ratio) cannot remain different in different markets for long. It implies that a security cannot sell at different prices in different markets.

Arbitrage process will bring the price into equilibrium. The total value of the homogeneous firms which differ only in terms of capital structure will be the same due to arbitrage. By selling the shares of the overvalued firm (higher price) and buying the shares of the

undervalued firm (lower price) the investor can earn the same return at lower investment without bearing additional risk.

He will borrow additional funds personally to purchase the shares of the undervalued firm. The use of personal debt, by the investor is called personal leverage or homemade leverage.

It will be explained with the help of following illustration:

Illustration : There are two firms X and Y which are similar in all respects except that firm X has 10 per cent Rs.10,00,000 debentures. The earnings before interest and taxes (EBIT) of both the firms are the same, that is Rs.1,50,000. The equity capitalisation rate of firm X is 20% while that of firm Y is 12.5%. You are required to ascertain the total market value of each firm.

	X Company Levered (with Debt)	Y Company Unlevered) No Debt)
EBIT	1,50,000	1,50,000
(-) I	1,00,000	0
= NI	50,000	1,50,000
÷ Ke	÷ 0.20	÷ 0.125
= S	2,50,000	12,00,000
+ B	10,00,000	0
V=	12,50,000	12,00,000
Ko= EBIT÷ V	12%	12.5 %
Debt / equity ratio	10,00,000 / 2,50,000 = 4	-

The above calculations show that the value of the levered firm X is higher than that of unlevered firm Y. However, according to MM approach this difference in values of both the firm will not continue for long because of arbitrage process. The arbitrage process will make the values of both the firms equal.

Arbitrage process :

Suppose an investor Mr. A holds 10 per cent of outstanding shares of the levered firm X. His holdings would be Rs.25,000 (10% of Rs.2,50,000) and his share of earnings (Dividend) belonging to equity shareholders will be Rs.5,000 (10% of Rs.50,000).

Because the EBIT of both the firms are the same but the market value of firm Y (unlevered) is lower than that of firm X (levered), the investor will sell his holdings in firm X and invest in unlevered firm Y. As firm Y has no debt in capital structure, the financial risk for the investor will be less in comparison to firm X.

To have the same level of financial risk as of firm X, he would borrow additional amount equal to his proportionate share in the levered firm's debt in his personal capacity. It means that the investor will use his personal leverage for the firm's leverage. The effect would be the same whether the firm uses the debt or the investor borrows on personal account.

Thus, Mr. A will borrow Rs.1,00,000 at 10% rate of interest. The proportionate holdings of Mr. A in firm Y will be Rs.1,20,000 (i.e. 10% of Rs.12,00,000) and he will receive a dividend income of Rs.15,000. Out of this dividend income from firm Y he will pay Rs.10,000 as interest on his personal loan. In this way, he will be having same income of Rs.5,000 which he was getting from levered firm X. However, his investment expenditure in unlevered firm Y is less.

1. Mr. A's position in firm X with 10% equity holding:	
(i) Investment outlay	25,000
(ii) Dividend Income (10% of ₹ 50,000)	5,000
2. Mr. A's position in firm Y with 10% equity holding:	
(i) Total funds available (own funds ₹25,000 + borrowed funds ₹1,00,000	1,25,000
(ii) Investment outlay (own funds ₹20,000 + borrowed funds ₹1,00,000)	1,20,000
(iii) Dividend Income:	
Total Income (10% of ₹1,50,000) = ₹15,000	
Less Interest on borrowed funds = ₹10,000	5,000
3. Mr. A's position in firm Y if he invests the total funds:	
(i) Total investment outlay (own funds ₹ 25,000 + borrowed funds ₹ 1,00,000	1,25,000
(ii) Total income: (₹ 1,50,000/12,00,000) × 1,25,000	15,625
(iii) Net Income (₹ 15,625 – Interest ₹ 10,000)	5,625

- This will bring down the price of shares of firm X and increase the price of shares of firm Y.
- This process will continue till the market price of both the firms becomes equal. After this point, these will be no arbitrage.
- In this way, according to MM, the value of levered firm cannot be more than that of the unleavered firm.
- Similarly, the value of the unlevered firm cannot be more than the value of the levered firm because of the working of arbitrage process, which will decrease the value of the unlevered firm and increase the value of the levered firm.

Arbitrage process reversal :

- According to the MM theory, the debt financing has neither any advantage nor any disadvantage, thus just as the total value of a levered firm cannot be more than that of an unlevered firm, the value of an unlevered firm can also not be greater than the value of a levered firm.
- This is because the arbitrage process will set in and decrease the value of the unlevered firm and increase the value of the levered firm.
- The arbitrage would, thus, operate in the opposite direction.
- Here, the investors will dispose of their holdings in the unlevered firm and obtain the same return by acquiring proportionate share in the equity capital and the debt of the levered firm at a lower outlay and without any increase in the risk.
- Ex: X and Y are similar companies with EBIT of Rs. 150000 each. X is levered company with a debt of 10,00,000 @ 10% interest. Y has no debt. Cost of equity of X company = 20% and for Y company = 10%. Compute value of X and Y?

	X Company Levered	Y Company Unlevered
EBIT	1,50,000	1,50,000
(-) I	1,00,000	0
= NI	50,000	1,50,000
÷ Ke	÷ 0.20	÷ 0.10
= S	2,50,000	15,00,000
+ B	10,00,000	0
V=	12,50,000	15,00,000
Ko= EBIT÷ V	12%	10%

- Mr. A has 10% stake in Y. He will sell his stake in Y and buy 10% stake in X, since value of Y is more than value of X.
- Funds available to Mr. A 10% of 15,00,000 = 1,50,000.
- Now he will buy 10% debt and 10% equity in X company.
- 10% of debt = 1,00,000
- 10% of Equity = 25,000
- Total 10% stake = Rs. 1,25,000
- A's return before arbitrage = 10% of 1,50,000= 15,000
- A's return after arbitrage :
- 10% of interest amount = 10,000
- 10% of net income = 5,000
- So total income = 15,000
- So A is getting same return before and after. But he has 1,50,000 funds but invested only 1,25,000. That means he has still 25,000 funds available to invest which can generate some more return.
- Advantage to A : He is getting same return with less investment.
- A's return when he invested 1,50,000?
- He can purchase 1,20,000 debt and 30,000 equity, now A's return with 1,50,000 :
- Interest on 1,20,000 debt , 10% on 1,20,000 = 12,000
- Return on Rs. 30,000 equity i.e., 20% on 30,000 = 6,000
- Total return = 12000 + 6000 = 18,000
- A's Earnings before Arbitrage =15,000
- A's Earnings after Arbitrage =18,000

MM Approach with corporate taxes :

- Modigliani and Miller agree that the value of the firm will increase and cost of capital will decline with the use of debt if corporate taxes are considered.
- Since interest on debt is tax-deductible, the effective cost of borrowing will be less than the rate of interest.

- Hence, the value of the levered firm would exceed that of the unlevered firm by an amount equal to the levered firm's debts multiplied by the tax rate.

Example for MM theory with Taxes

- X and Y are similar companies with EBIT of Rs. 1,50,000 each. X is levered company with a debt of 10,00,000 @ 10% interest. Y has no debt. Cost of equity of X company = 20% and for Y company = 12%. Tax rate = 30% Compute value of X and Y?

	X Company Levered	Y Company Unlevered
EBIT	1,50,000	1,50,000
(-) I	(-) 1,00,000	(-) 0
EBT=	50,000	1,50,000
(-) T @ 30%	15,000	45,000
= NI	35,000	1,05,000
÷ Ke	÷ 0.20	÷ 0.12
= S	1,75,000	8,75,000
+ B	10,00,000	0
V=	**11,75,000**	**8,75,000**
Ko= EBIT÷ V	12.76 %	17.14 %

- Value of levered company = Value of unlevered company + Tax shield
- Tax shield = B X r X T / r = B T
- So, $V_L = V_{UL} + BT$
- = 8,75,000 + (10,00,000 X 30%)
- = 8,75,000 + 3,00,000 = 11,75,000

Limitations of MM Approach:

- The operational justification for MM approach is the arbitrage process.
- However, the arbitrage process fails to bring equilibrium due to the following limitations:

(1) Cost of borrowing is not the same for individuals and firms:

- In MM approach, it is assumed that personal leverage can be substituted for corporate leverage, that is, the investor is able to borrow the funds on his personal account at the same rate of interest at which the firm can. In actual practice, it is not so. Lending cost is not the same for all types of borrowers.
- Large borrowers are able to raise funds at lower rate of interest due to better credit standing. Hence, firms can borrow funds at lower rate of interest than the individual investors. To the extent cost of borrowing differs, the personal leverage is not a perfect substitute for corporate leverage.

(2) The extent of risk is not same for the investor when he himself borrows or the firm borrows:

- The degree of risk for the investor is not the same when he himself borrows proportionate to his share in the firm's debt and when the firm itself borrows. The risk is higher when the investor himself borrows in comparison to the situation when the firm borrows.
- If the firm borrows, the investor's liability will be confined to his proportionate holdings in the equity of the company due to limited liability clause in case the company is liquidated. When the individual borrows, he has to face unlimited liability and his personal property can be sold for payment of his creditors.

3) Transaction costs are there:

- Under MM approach, it is assumed that there are no transaction costs. But in actual practice, when securities are purchased or sold, transaction costs in the form of brokerage are incurred. As a result of transaction costs, the net amount received by the investor from sale of the shares of the levered firm would be less.
- Similarly, when the shares of the unlevered firm are purchased, transaction costs are incurred, as a result of transaction cost, the net amount received by the investor from sale of the shares of the levered firm would be less. Similarly, when the shares of the unlevered firm are purchased, transaction costs are incurred, as a result of which less amount will be available for investment.

4) Institutional restrictions:

- The financial institutions like Unit Trust of India, Life Insurance Corporation of India, Commercial Banks, etc. are not allowed to use personal leverage. In this way, the switching option from levered firm to unlevered firm and vice-versa does not apply to institutional investors. Thus, the personal leverage is not the perfect substitute for corporate leverage.

(5) Corporate taxes distort the MM hypothesis:

- MM assume that there are no corporate taxes. However, in actual practice, these are corporate taxes. Interest on borrowed funds is tax deductible, whereas the dividend on equity shares is not. As a result of this, the return to the shareholders of a levered firm is higher in comparison to the unlevered firm.
- Due to this fact, the market value of the levered firm will be higher than that of the unlevered firm. However, MM also accepted his fact and gave another theory, taking into consideration the existence of corporate taxes.

Brief Summary of the Lesson

This lesson explains the concept of capital structure, which represents the long-term financing mix of equity and debt used by a firm. It highlights the importance of capital structure decisions in determining the overall cost of capital (Ko), market value of the firm (V), and ultimately, shareholder wealth. The lesson begins with the basic elements — financial structure vs. capital structure — followed by the assumptions used for analyzing financing mix decisions.

Further, the lesson discusses four major theories on capital structure: Net Income Approach, which states capital structure is relevant; Net Operating Income Approach, which argues that capital structure is irrelevant; Traditional Approach, a balanced view believing an optimum structure exists; and Modigliani–Miller Approach, which supports irrelevance under perfect market assumptions but accepts the benefits of debt when

corporate taxes are considered. Numerical illustrations and diagrams throughout the lesson demonstrate how leverage impacts Ko, firm value, and cost of equity.

Key Words

Financial Structure ; Capital Structure ; Leverage / Debt–Equity Ratio ; EBIT (Earnings Before Interest & Tax); Cost of Debt (Kd) ;Cost of Equity (Ke) ; Overall Cost of Capital (Ko / WACC); Market Value of Firm (V = D + E) ; NI Approach (Relevant capital structure); NOI Approach (Irrelevant capital structure) ; Optimum Capital Structure ;m Arbitrage Process ; Tax Shield ; Market Price per Share (MPS)

Self-Assessment Questions

A. Short Answer Questions

1. What is capital structure? Explain with formula.
2. Distinguish between financial structure and capital structure.
3. What is leverage? How does it impact equity shareholders?
4. State any three assumptions of the NI Approach.
5. According to NOI Approach, why does Ko remain constant?
6. Define optimum capital structure in the Traditional Approach.
7. What is arbitrage? How is it relevant in MM theory?
8. What is the role of tax-shield under MM theory with taxes?
9. Write the formula for computing firm value (V) using EBIT and Ko.
10. What is Equity Capitalisation Rate (Ke)? Provide its formula.

B. Essay Type / Long Answer Questions

1. Explain the Net Income (NI) Approach along with assumptions, propositions, numerical example, and diagram.
2. Discuss the Net Operating Income (NOI) Approach and show why capital structure is irrelevant under this theory with illustrations.
3. Explain in detail the Traditional Approach to capital structure. Describe the three stages of leverage with diagrams showing Ko, Kd, and Ke.
4. Elaborate M-M Approach without taxes and explain arbitrage process with suitable example.
5. Explain MM theory with corporate taxes. How does inclusion of taxes affect firm value and Ko? Provide the supporting formula and example.
6. Compare and contrast NI, NOI, Traditional, and MM approaches of capital structure. Which approach is more realistic in practice and why?
7. Capital structure decision is important for the maximisation of shareholders' wealth. Justify with theoretical support and numerical evidence.

Reference Textbooks

1. Khan, M.Y. & Jain, P.K. — *Financial Management: Text, Problems & Cases*
2. Pandey, I.M. — *Financial Management*
3. Prasanna Chandra — *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*
4. Van Horne, J.C. & Wachowicz, J.M. — *Fundamentals of Financial Management*
5. Brigham, E.F. & Houston, J.F. — *Financial Management: Theory & Practice*

Prof. V. Chandra Sekhara Rao

LESSON - 11

COST OF CAPITAL

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, the student will be able to:

- Understand the concept and economic meaning of cost of capital.
- Explain the link between risk, return, investor expectations and cost of funds.
- Evaluate the components of cost of capital: cost of debt, cost of preference share capital, cost of equity, and cost of retained earnings.
- Analyse factors that influence cost of capital at firm-level and market-level.
- Understand the strategic importance of cost of capital in investment, financing and dividend decisions.
- Use cost of capital as a discount rate in NPV and IRR-based investment evaluation.

11.0 STRUCTURE

11.1 INTRODUCTION TO COST OF CAPITAL

Every business requires funds to acquire assets, build capacity, finance working capital, or expand into new markets. These funds are raised from different sources—equity shares, preference shares, debentures, term loans, or retained earnings. Each source comes at a cost, because investors who supply the funds expect a minimum return for parting with their money and bearing risk. This minimum expected return is known as the cost of capital.

In simple terms, cost of capital represents the price the firm must pay for using someone else's money. Just as the cost of raw materials determines the pricing of products, the

cost of capital influences investment decisions, financing mix, dividend policy, and ultimately the enterprise value. It is the benchmark rate that the firm must earn on its investment projects if it aims to maintain or increase shareholder wealth.

The cost of capital is not merely an accounting figure. It is an economic concept rooted in time-value-of-money principles and market expectations. It is determined not by the management but by the capital market, reflecting prevailing interest rates, stock market conditions, investor preferences, inflation expectations, and the firm's risk profile.

Thus, the cost of capital serves as the bridge between long-term investment decisions and financial market realities.

11.2 ECONOMIC MEANING AND CONCEPT

Conceptually, the cost of capital can be viewed as the opportunity cost of using funds. Investors always have alternative places to invest—government bonds, fixed deposits, equity markets, or other corporations. When they choose to invest in a particular company, they do so expecting to receive a return that is at least equal to what they could earn elsewhere, adjusted for risk.

For example, if a risk-free government bond yields 7% and the equity market provides 12% for a company of similar risk, an investor will expect the firm to at least match this 12% return. If the firm earns less, investors will move their capital elsewhere, causing the firm's share price to fall.

Therefore, the cost of capital becomes the minimum acceptable rate of return that ensures investors continue to hold the company's securities.

Economists often refer to this as the hurdle rate, or the minimum risk-adjusted return necessary to justify a capital project. Engineers and project managers call it the cut-off rate, while financial analysts label it as the discount rate for evaluating cash flows of investment proposals.

The core idea remains the same:

Unless a project earns at least the cost of capital, it will reduce the wealth of shareholders.

11.3 Relevance of Cost of Capital in Financial Decisions

The cost of capital plays a central role in three major financial decisions: investment decisions (capital budgeting), financing decisions (capital structure), and dividend decisions.

In capital budgeting, the cost of capital acts as the discount rate in NPV and IRR calculations. A positive NPV exists only if the return exceeds the cost of capital. Thus, cost of capital acts as the financial viability test for investment proposals.

In capital structure decisions, costs of debt and equity determine the optimal leverage level. Although debt is cheaper due to tax benefits, too much debt increases financial risk and cost of equity. Therefore, understanding cost of capital helps in designing a financing mix that minimizes overall cost and maximizes firm value.

Dividend policy also interacts with cost of capital. Retaining earnings increases the firm's internal funds but does so at an implicit cost—the return shareholders could have earned elsewhere. Thus, payout decisions must consider this implicit cost when determining whether reinvestment is beneficial.

In all these areas, the cost of capital serves as a guiding indicator that aligns financial decision-making with shareholder-value maximization.

11.4 COMPONENTS OF COST OF CAPITAL

The overall cost of capital of a firm is a weighted combination of the costs of each individual source of finance. These sources broadly include debt, preference capital, equity capital, and retained earnings. Each source has its own unique characteristics, risk profile, contractual obligations, and investor expectations. As a result, the calculation procedure and conceptual meaning differ across components.
Below is an elaborated explanation of each component.

11.4.1 Cost Of Debt

Cost of debt represents the effective rate that a company pays to its lenders (banks, bondholders, debenture holders).
Because interest on debt is tax-deductible, the true cost of debt is always lower than the nominal (coupon) rate.
The formula for after-tax cost of debt is:

$$K_d = i(1 - T)$$

Where:

- i= Interest rate
- T= Corporate tax rate

When debt is issued at discount/premium, we use:

$$K_d = \frac{I + \frac{(P_0 - NP)}{n}}{\frac{(P_0 + NP)}{2}}(1 - T)$$

Where NP = Net proceeds; P_0= Par value.
Why cost of debt is the cheapest source?

- Interest is tax-deductible
- Lower risk for investors (secured or senior claims)
- Lower return expectations compared to equity

Numerical Example 1 (Simple): After-tax Cost of Debt :
A company issues ₹10,00,000 worth of debentures at 10% interest.
Corporate tax rate = 30%.
Solution

$$K_d = 0.10(1 - 0.30) = 0.10 \times 0.70 = 0.07$$

After-tax cost of debt = 7%
Numerical Example 2 (Issued at Discount):
A company issues 5-year ₹1,000 debentures at ₹950.
Coupon rate = 12%
Tax rate = 25%.
Step 1: Compute annual interest

$$I = 12\% \times 1000 = 120$$

Step 2: Compute cost before tax

$$K_d = \frac{I + \frac{(P_0 - NP)}{n}}{\frac{(P_0 + NP)}{2}}$$

$$K_d = \frac{120 + \frac{(1000 - 950)}{5}}{\frac{(1000 + 950)}{2}}$$

$$K_d = \frac{120 + 10}{975} = \frac{130}{975} = 13.33\%$$

Step 3: After-tax cost

$$K_d(1 - T) = 13.33\%(1 - 0.25) = 10\%$$

After-tax cost of debt = 10%

3.2 COST OF PREFERENCE CAPITAL

Preference capital carries a fixed dividend but dividends are not tax-deductible.
Thus:

$$K_p = \frac{D_p}{NP}$$

Where:

- D_p= Preference dividend
- NP = Net proceeds (issue price – floatation costs)

Why preference capital costs more than debt?

- No tax shield
- Higher risk than debt (dividend may be skipped)
- Fixed obligation towards investors

Numerical Example 1: Simple Case
A firm issues preference shares of face value ₹100 at par with a 12% dividend.

$$K_p = \frac{12}{100} = 12\%$$

Cost of preference capital = 12%

Numerical Example 2: Issued at Discount with Floatation Costs
Face value = ₹100
Dividend = ₹10 per share
Issue price = ₹95
Floatation cost = ₹5
Net proceeds (NP):

$$NP = 95 - 5 = 90$$

Then:

$$K_p = \frac{10}{90} = 11.11\%$$

Cost of preference capital = 11.11%

3.3 COST OF EQUITY CAPITAL

Cost of equity is the most important and complex component.
Equity shareholders bear the highest risk → they demand the highest return.

There are THREE common methods:

1. Dividend Discount Model (DDM)
2. Earnings Yield / Realized Yield Method
3. Capital Asset Pricing Model (CAPM)

Each is explained below with real clarity and numerical examples.

(A) COST OF EQUITY USING DIVIDEND DISCOUNT MODEL (DDM)
Constant growth DDM (Gordon Model):

$$K_e = \frac{D_1}{P_0} + g$$

Where:

- $D_1 = D_0(1 + g)$
- P_0= Current market price
- g = Growth rate of dividends

This model works best for mature, stable dividend-paying companies (e.g., ITC, utilities).
Numerical Example 1: Constant Growth
Current dividend = ₹5
Market price = ₹100
Growth rate = 8%

$$D_1 = 5(1.08) = 5.40$$
$$K_e = \frac{5.40}{100} + 0.08 = 0.054 + 0.08 = 13.4\%$$

Cost of equity = 13.4%
Numerical Example 2: Zero Growth DDM
If dividend is constant:

$$K_e = \frac{D}{P_0}$$

Dividend = ₹8
Price = ₹80

$$K_e = \frac{8}{80} = 10\%$$

Cost of equity = 10%

(B) COST OF EQUITY USING EARNINGS YIELD METHOD
Used when:

- Company does not pay dividends
- Profit is retained for reinvestment

Formula:

$$K_e = \frac{E}{P_0}$$

Where E = Expected EPS.
Numerical Example 1
EPS = ₹20
Market price = ₹200

$$K_e = \frac{20}{200} = 10\%$$

Numerical Example 2
EPS = ₹10
Share price = ₹50

$$K_e = \frac{10}{50} = 20\%$$

A high earnings yield indicates a high cost of equity (investors expect more).

(C) COST OF EQUITY USING CAPITAL ASSET PRICING MODEL (CAPM)
CAPM incorporates market risk and is the most widely used in modern finance.

$$K_e = R_f + \beta(R_m - R_f)$$

Where:

- R_f= Risk-free return (govt. bonds)
- R_m= Market return
- β = Systematic risk

Numerical Example 1 (Moderate Risk Stock)
Risk-free rate = 6%
Market return = 12%
Beta = 1.2

$$K_e = 6 + 1.2(12 - 6)$$
$$K_e = 6 + 1.2 \times 6 = 6 + 7.2 = 13.2\%$$

Numerical Example 2 (Low-Risk Stock)
Risk-free rate = 7%
Market return = 11%
Beta = 0.8

$$K_e = 7 + 0.8(11 - 7) = 7 + 0.8 \times 4 = 10.2\%$$

Lower beta → lower cost of equity.

11.4 COST OF RETAINED EARNINGS

Retained earnings are the profits kept in the business instead of distributed as dividends.
They carry an implicit cost, not explicit.
Why retained earnings have a cost?
Because shareholders could have invested that money elsewhere and earned returns.
Thus:

$$K_r = K_e(1 - f)$$

Where f = floatation savings (0 if none).
Often, $K_r \approx K_e$.
Numerical Example 1
Cost of equity (Ke) = 14%
No floatation cost involved.

$$K_r = 14\%$$

Thus, using retained earnings is NOT free—it costs 14%.
Numerical Example 2 (Including floatation benefit)
Cost of equity = 15%
If new equity were issued → 5% floatation cost
Retained earnings avoid this cost.
Thus:

$$K_r = K_e(1 - f)$$
$$K_r = 15(1 - 0.05) = 15(0.95) = 14.25\%$$

Cost of retained earnings = 14.25%

11.5 FACTORS AFFECTING COST OF CAPITAL

The cost of capital of a firm does not arise in isolation; rather, it is the reflection of how investors perceive the firm's risk, profitability, stability, and future prospects. These perceptions are influenced by several internal and external factors. Internal factors are largely within the control of management, whereas external factors arise from macroeconomic conditions and capital market behaviour.

Internal Factors

1. Business Risk

Business risk refers to the variability in the firm's operating income (EBIT) due to changes in sales, input prices, or operational efficiency. A firm whose revenues fluctuate widely—such as airlines, e-commerce companies, or luxury product manufacturers—will have high business risk. Investors perceive such volatility as a sign of uncertainty, and therefore demand a higher return to compensate for this unpredictability. This raises the cost of equity and, in many cases, the cost of debt because lenders consider unstable firms more likely to default.

For example, a cement manufacturer with stable sales tied to infrastructure spending will have relatively low business risk, whereas an online fashion retailer facing unpredictable seasonal demand will have high business risk. The higher the volatility in operating income, the higher the firm's cost of capital.

2. Financial Risk

Financial risk arises from the firm's use of debt in its capital structure. Debt involves a fixed financial obligation—interest payments—regardless of whether the firm is performing well or poorly. When a firm increases its debt, the burden of meeting these fixed obligations increases. This causes greater fluctuation in the earnings available to equity shareholders, leading to higher equity risk.

As a result, shareholders demand a higher expected return to compensate for this increased financial risk, which ultimately raises the cost of equity. Credit rating agencies may also downgrade a firm with excessive debt, increasing the cost of borrowing.

Real-world example: Companies like Tata Motors or Vodafone Idea saw increased cost of equity and debt due to high leverage. On the other hand, firms with conservative leverage like Infosys or TCS enjoy a lower cost of capital because they carry minimal financial risk.

3. Dividend Policy

Dividend policy affects the amount of internal financing available to the firm. A company with a high dividend payout ratio distributes a large proportion of its earnings to shareholders, reducing the amount retained within the company. When retained earnings are low, the firm must issue new equity to finance growth. Issuing new equity is more expensive because of floatation costs, possible dilution of ownership, and the need to offer attractive returns to new shareholders.

Thus, firms with aggressive dividend payouts often have a higher cost of capital. In contrast, firms that retain a larger portion of earnings—like Apple or Reliance Industries during expansion phases—can finance projects internally at a lower implicit cost.

4. Investment Policy

The nature of projects undertaken by the firm influences investor perception and therefore the cost of capital. If a firm consistently invests in high-risk or speculative projects—such as biotechnology research, cryptocurrency ventures, or innovative but uncertain technologies—it will be viewed as a high-risk firm. Investors will demand a higher rate of return, leading to an increase in the firm's cost of capital.

In contrast, a company with stable, predictable, and profitable investment opportunities—like utilities (NTPC), FMCG companies (HUL), or banks with diversified portfolios—enjoys a lower cost of capital because investors have greater confidence in future cash flows.

In essence, a firm's investment strategy signals its risk temperament. Riskier investments translate into a higher cost of capital.

External Factors

1. Level of Interest Rates

The prevailing interest rate in the economy has a direct and immediate impact on the cost of capital. When interest rates rise, borrowing becomes expensive for firms, increasing the cost of debt. Moreover, higher returns on government securities make equity investors expect higher returns from risky investments like corporate equity.

Thus, both cost of debt and cost of equity increase during periods of rising interest rates. Conversely, when interest rates fall—as they did post-COVID-19 in many economies—corporate borrowing costs decline, reducing the overall cost of capital.

Example: In India, when RBI increases the repo rate, home loan rates, corporate bond yields, and bank lending rates all rise, increasing financing costs for businesses.

2. Inflation

Inflation erodes the purchasing power of money. When inflation rises, investors—both lenders and shareholders—expect a higher nominal return to compensate for this loss in purchasing power. As a result, the required return on debt, preference capital, and equity all rise.

For instance, if inflation increases from 4% to 7%, an investor who previously accepted a 10% return may now demand 13% just to maintain the same real return. This directly increases the firm's cost of capital.

3. Market Conditions

Financial markets strongly influence investor sentiment. During a bull market, investors are optimistic, risk appetite is high, and equity prices rise. When share prices rise, the cost of equity falls because the company can raise funds at higher valuation, resulting in lower earnings yield. Additionally, investors may accept lower returns due to positive expectations.

Conversely, during a bear market, pessimism dominates, share prices fall, and investors demand much higher returns to compensate for perceived risk. Cost of equity rises substantially during downturns.

Example: During the global financial crisis (2008) or during COVID-induced lockdowns (2020), cost of equity increased because markets became risk-averse.

4. Tax Rate

Corporate tax policy affects the after-tax cost of debt. Since interest on debt is tax-deductible, the effective cost of debt is:
Cost of debt after tax = Interest rate × (1 – Tax rate)

Thus, higher corporate taxes reduce the after-tax cost of debt because they increase the tax shield benefit. Conversely, lower tax rates reduce the tax advantage of using debt, increasing the effective cost of capital.

For example, when India reduced corporate tax rates to 22% in 2019, the tax shield benefit reduced, making debt marginally more expensive in after-tax terms.

11.6 SIGNIFICANCE OF COST OF CAPITAL

The cost of capital plays a central, foundational role in modern financial management. It goes far beyond being a mechanical calculation or an academic formula. Instead, it acts as a strategic tool that connects investment choices, financing strategies, dividend decisions, and overall value creation.

A. Cost of Capital in Project Evaluation (Capital Budgeting)

Investment decisions—whether to open a new plant, introduce a new product, enter a foreign market, or replace aging machinery—require an estimation of future cash flows. The cost of capital becomes the discount rate used to convert these future cash flows into their present value.

If the return generated by a project is higher than the cost of capital, the project creates value and should be accepted. If the return is lower than the cost of capital, the project destroys value and should be rejected.
This is the essence of the NPV rule:

- NPV > 0 → Accept
- NPV < 0 → Reject

Similarly, in the IRR method, only projects whose IRR exceeds the cost of capital are deemed acceptable.

Thus, cost of capital acts as the minimum acceptable rate of return or the benchmark for evaluating whether a project enhances shareholder wealth.

B. Cost of Capital in Financing Decisions (Capital Structure Management)

Financing decisions are concerned with selecting the optimal mix of debt, equity, and retained earnings. The objective is to minimize the cost of capital while ensuring financial stability.

If the firm uses too much debt, its financial risk increases, raising the cost of equity and negating the benefit of cheaper debt. If it relies too much on equity, it may fail to take advantage of tax-deductible interest payments.

Therefore, cost of capital helps managers determine the optimal capital structure—the combination of financing sources that minimizes WACC and maximizes the value of the firm.

C. Cost of Capital in Dividend Decisions

Dividend policy influences the availability of internal funds. Retained earnings are not free—they carry an implicit cost, equal to what shareholders could earn if dividends were distributed and invested elsewhere.

When managers decide whether to retain earnings or distribute them, the cost of capital provides the benchmark. If retained earnings can be invested into projects earning more than their implicit cost, retention is justified. Otherwise, dividends should be paid out.
Thus, the cost of capital helps ensure that dividend decisions are aligned with wealth maximization.

D. Cost of Capital as a Measure of Management Performance

Cost of capital offers a powerful way to evaluate managerial effectiveness. If managers invest in projects or assets yielding returns below the cost of capital, they are effectively destroying shareholder wealth. If returns exceed the cost of capital, they are creating value. Performance metrics like Economic Value Added (EVA) explicitly use cost of capital to determine whether the firm's operations are adding economic value.

$$EVA = NOPAT - (Capital\ Employed \times Cost\ of\ Capital)$$

A positive EVA signals efficient management; a negative EVA indicates poor capital utilization.

E. Cost of Capital for Financial Policy Design

Cost of capital influences decisions relating to:

- Raising funds
- Pricing securities
- Timing of market entry
- Mergers and acquisitions
- Restructuring and buybacks

For example, when the cost of debt is low, firms may issue bonds or borrow to finance expansion. When equity markets are overvalued (bull phase), firms may issue new shares to raise funds at a lower effective cost. Thus, cost of capital helps align financial policies with market conditions.

F. Cost of Capital in Risk Management

Cost of capital incorporates the risk perception of investors. By understanding what drives these perceptions, management can undertake risk mitigation strategies—such as hedging, diversifying business operations, or maintaining conservative leverage—to bring down the cost of capital. Lower risk leads to lower required return, which decreases WACC and increases firm value.

Overall, the cost of capital serves as a strategic compass for the firm. It guides:

- investment decisions by acting as a hurdle rate
- financing decisions by identifying the cheapest mix of funds
- dividend decisions by evaluating whether profits should be retained or distributed
- managerial performance by serving as a benchmark for value creation

In every major long-term financial decision, cost of capital lies at the heart of the value-maximization process.

11.7 OPPORTUNITY COST OF CAPITAL

The concept of opportunity cost underlies the economic meaning of cost of capital. It represents the return foregone on the next best alternative with similar risk.

For example, if investors can earn 9% in government securities, a company must ensure its projects generate at least 9% for investors to justify investing in the company. Otherwise, rational investors will shift funds to safer alternatives.

Thus, cost of capital is essentially the opportunity cost of funds based on comparable investment opportunities.

11.8 EXPLICIT VS IMPLICIT COST OF CAPITAL

Explicit cost is the actual interest or dividend paid. Implicit cost is the opportunity cost associated with retained earnings.
If a company retains profits instead of distributing dividends, investors forgo the opportunity to earn returns elsewhere. Therefore, retained earnings have an implicit cost equal to shareholders' required return.

11.9 MARGINAL COST OF CAPITAL

Marginal cost of capital (MCC) refers to the cost of raising an additional rupee of capital. As more funds are raised, MCC typically increases because:

- cheap financing options get exhausted
- lenders demand risk compensation
- equity investors expect higher returns due to increased leverage

MCC is used in capital budgeting when funds are limited (capital rationing).

11.10 WEIGHTED AVERAGE COST OF CAPITAL (WACC)

WACC represents the overall required rate of return on the firm as a whole and is used as the discount rate for evaluating investment opportunities.
WACC = Σ (Weight of each source × Cost of that source)
Weights are based on market values.
For example, if:

- Debt = 40% at 7%
- Equity = 60% at 14%

Then:
WACC = (0.4 × 0.07) + (0.6 × 0.14)
= 2.8% + 8.4%
= 11.2%
This 11.2% becomes the hurdle rate for investment projects.

11.11 REAL-WORLD CORPORATE EXAMPLES

Example 1: Reliance Jio's Capital Structure Strategy

Jio raised billions in debt to roll out its telecom network. Interest rates were low, and tax shields reduced effective cost. Debt financing lowered WACC, enabling aggressive pricing and rapid market capture.

Example 2: Tesla's Equity Financing Approach
Tesla heavily relied on equity issues during early years. Its cost of equity was high because the business was loss-making and risky. However, bullish investor sentiment reduced its cost of capital.

Example 3: TCS and Retained Earnings
TCS relies mainly on retained earnings, reducing floatation costs. However, retained earnings carry an implicit cost equal to shareholders' expected return, which is high for a stable IT company.

Example 4: Indian Government's Bond Market
When government bond yields rise, cost of debt increases for all companies because bank lending rates and corporate bond yields move upward.
These examples highlight how firms use cost of capital strategically.

11.12. SUMMARY

The cost of capital is the minimum return a company must earn to satisfy investors. It is a composite measure consisting of the cost of debt, preference capital, equity, and retained earnings. Internally, it is influenced by the firm's business risk, financial risk, and dividend policy. Externally, it is shaped by inflation, tax rates, interest rates, and market conditions.

Cost of capital plays a central role in financial management. It is the discount rate for evaluating investment proposals, a guide for designing capital structure, and a benchmark for dividend decisions. It reflects the opportunity cost of funds and helps determine whether a project enhances shareholder wealth.

Understanding cost of capital is essential for making informed, value-maximizing financial decisions in any business.

11.13. KEYWORDS

- Cost of Capital; Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC); Explicit Cost ; Implicit Cost; Marginal Cost of Capital; Opportunity Cost; Business Risk; Financial Risk ; Cost of Debt ; Cost of Equity ; CAPM ; Dividend Discount Model

11.14 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Short Answer Questions

1. What is cost of capital, and why is it important?
2. Explain business risk and financial risk and their impact on cost of capital.
3. What is the difference between explicit and implicit cost of capital?
4. Define opportunity cost of capital.
5. Why is debt cheaper than equity?

Long Answer Questions

1. Explain the concept of cost of equity using both the Dividend Discount Model and CAPM.
2. Discuss the significance of cost of capital in capital budgeting decisions.
3. Analyse the factors that affect a firm's overall cost of capital. Provide examples.
4. Explain marginal cost of capital and its relevance in capital rationing.
5. What is WACC? Explain how it is computed and how it is used in investment decisions.

A. MULTIPLE-CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQs)

1. The cost of capital primarily represents:
A. The maximum return a firm can earn on a project
B. The minimum return needed to satisfy investors
C. The average profit margin earned by the company
D. The return earned by competitors

2. Which of the following factors will directly decrease the after-tax cost of debt?
A. Lower interest rates
B. Higher tax rate
C. Higher dividend payout
D. Increase in inflation

3. Business risk is primarily associated with variability in:
A. Dividends
B. EBIT
C. Interest expenses
D. Cash balances

4. The explicit cost of capital refers to:
A. Opportunity cost of retained earnings
B. Floatation cost on issuing shares
C. The actual return investors expect
D. Real, contractual payments to providers of funds

5. The implicit cost of retained earnings is best described as:
A. Dividend paid to preference shareholders
B. Interest foregone by shareholders
C. Opportunity return shareholders could have earned elsewhere
D. Cost incurred for issuing bonus shares

6. If a firm increases its financial leverage, which of the following is most likely to increase?
A. Cost of debt
B. Cost of equity
C. Both cost of debt and equity
D. Neither cost of debt nor equity

7. Market conditions during a bull phase generally lead to:
A. Higher cost of equity
B. Lower cost of equity
C. Higher cost of debt
D. Higher financial risk

8. Which of the following is *not* an internal factor affecting cost of capital?
A. Business risk
B. Dividend policy
C. Tax rate
D. Investment policy

9. What is the impact of increasing inflation on cost of capital?
A. Cost of capital decreases
B. Cost of capital remains constant
C. Investors demand higher returns
D. Cost of equity falls

10. Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) uses weights based on:
A. Book values only
B. Market values only
C. Either book or market values, depending on firm policy
D. Historical cost of equity

Answer Key
1–B, 2–B, 3–B, 4–D, 5–C, 6–C, 7–B, 8–C, 9–C, 10–B

B. SMALL ANALYTICAL CASE STUDY WITH DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

CASE STUDY: "Galaxy Electronics Ltd – The Capital Structure Dilemma"

Galaxy Electronics Ltd (GEL) is a mid-sized Indian manufacturing company producing consumer appliances. Over the last five years, the company has enjoyed stable sales and predictable cash flows due to strong demand in Tier-2 and Tier-3 cities.
The firm's current capital structure is:

- Debt: ₹200 crore at 10% interest
- Equity: Market value ₹400 crore
- Corporate Tax Rate: 25%

GEL is now planning a major expansion involving a ₹150 crore investment in a new smart appliance product line. The CFO must decide whether to finance the expansion using additional debt or issue fresh equity.

Recent Developments Influencing the Decision

1. Interest rates in the economy have recently increased by 1%.
   Banks are now offering loans at 11% instead of 10%.
2. Stock market conditions are very favorable.
   GEL's share price has increased by 30% in the last six months due to strong quarterly results.

3. Business risk is expected to rise slightly because smart appliances involve technology integration and higher competition.
4. Current shareholders expect at least a 15% return on equity, assuming higher future growth.

Financial Information

- After-tax cost of current debt:
$$10\% \times (1–0.25) = 7.5\%$$
- New debt, if taken, will cost:
$$11\% \times (1–0.25) = 8.25\%$$
- Expected cost of new equity (based on market expectations): 15%
- Current WACC (before expansion):
Debt weight = 200 / 600 = 33.3%
Equity weight = 400 / 600 = 66.7%
WACC = (0.333 × 7.5%) + (0.667 × 15%)
WACC = 12.5%
Expansion Decision Challenge
The CFO must decide the financing mix for the ₹150 crore project.
He is aware that:
- Raising debt is cheaper, but increasing leverage also increases financial risk.
- Raising equity is expensive, but current market conditions make share issuance attractive.
- Investors expect the firm to maintain a WACC below 13% to remain competitive in the industry.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. Based on the revised market interest rates, should GEL rely more on debt or equity for financing the expansion? Explain analytically.
(Consider cost of new debt vs cost of equity.)

2. How will the increase in business risk affect GEL's overall cost of capital?
(Discuss impact on cost of equity, investor expectations, and WACC.)

3. Considering current bull market conditions, what are the benefits of issuing new equity for GEL?
(Think about valuation, dilution impact, and floatation cost.)

4. If GEL wants to maintain WACC below 13%, what capital mix (debt vs equity) would be advisable?
(Students may calculate weighted costs using different proportional mixes.)

5. If the company takes the entire ₹150 crore as debt, how will the financial risk and cost of equity likely change?
(Apply the concept of leverage: higher debt → higher equity risk → higher Ke.)

6. Should rising interest rates discourage GEL from borrowing? Why or why not?
(Discuss relationship of interest rate cycles with cost of capital.)

7. Evaluate whether GEL's investment decision should be guided more by the cost of capital or market optimism.

(Where should managerial attention be focused to maximize shareholder value
Numerical problems

Problem 10 – Cost of Debt (After Tax)
A company issues debentures at 12% interest.
Corporate tax rate = 30%.
Required:
Compute the after-tax cost of debt.

Problem 11 – Cost of Preference Capital
₹100 preference share issued at par with 10% dividend.
Required:
Compute cost of preference capital.

Problem 12 – Cost of Equity (Earnings Yield Method)
EPS = ₹8
Market price = ₹80
Required:
Compute cost of equity.

Problem 13 – Cost of Equity Using DDM (Constant Growth)
Current dividend = ₹5
Growth rate = 6%
Current market price = ₹125
Required:
Compute cost of equity.

Problem 14 – Cost of Equity Using CAPM
Risk-free rate = 7%
Market return = 13%
Beta = 1.2
Required:
Compute cost of equity.

Problem 15 – WACC Calculation
Capital structure and costs:

- Equity: ₹40,00,000, Ke = 14%
- Preference shares: ₹10,00,000, Kp = 10%
- Debt: ₹30,00,000, Kd = 9%
- Corporate tax = 30%

Required:
Compute WACC using market value weights.

Problem 16 – Cost of Debt With Discount Issue

10-year ₹1000 debenture issued at ₹950, 10% coupon rate.
Floatation cost = ₹20
Tax rate = 25%.
Required:
Compute before-tax and after-tax cost of debt using approximation formula.
Problem 17 – WACC With Retained Earnings Break Point
Capital structure weights:
Equity = 50%
Debt = 50%

Costs:

- Cost of retained earnings = 14%
- Cost of new equity = 17%
- Cost of debt (after-tax) = 7%

Investment plan requires ₹80 lakh.
Retained earnings available = ₹20 lakh.

Required:

1. Calculate the break point.
2. Compute WACC before and after the break point.

Problem 18 – Comprehensive Cost of Capital Analysis
Data of Alpha Ltd:

- Equity: Market value ₹60,00,000, Ke via CAPM
- Risk-free rate = 6%
- Market return = 15%
- Beta = 1.3
- Debt: Market value ₹40,00,000
  – 10% coupon, issued at 95%, tax rate 30%
- Preference capital: Market value ₹20,00,000
  – 12% dividend, issued at ₹100 with 5% floatation cost

Required:

Compute a detailed WACC incorporating all components.
FULL SOLUTIONS – COST OF CAPITAL PROBLEMS
Problem 10 Solution – After-tax Cost of Debt
Interest rate = 12%
Tax = 30%

$$K_d = 12(1 - 0.30) = 8.4\%$$

Cost of debt = 8.4%
Problem 11 Solution – Cost of Preference Capital
Dividend = 10%
Issue at par

$$K_p = \frac{10}{100} = 10\%$$

Cost of preference capital = 10%
Problem 12 Solution – Cost of Equity (Earnings Yield)

$$K_e = \frac{E}{P} = \frac{8}{80} = 10\%$$

Problem 13 Solution – DDM

$$D_1 = 5 \times 1.06 = 5.30$$

$$K_e = \frac{5.30}{125} + 0.06 = 0.0424 + 0.06 = 10.24\%$$

Problem 14 Solution – CAPM

$$K_e = 7 + 1.2(13 - 7)$$
$$= 7 + 1.2(6)$$
$$= 7 + 7.2 = 14.2\%$$

Problem 15 Solution – WACC

Equity weight = 40 / 80 = 0.50

Preference weight = 10 / 80 = 0.125

Debt = 30 / 80 = 0.375

After-tax debt:

$$9(1 - 0.30) = 6.3\%$$

$$WACC = (0.5 \times 14) + (0.125 \times 10) + (0.375 \times 6.3)$$
$$= 7 + 1.25 + 2.36 = 10.61\%$$

WACC = 10.61%

Problem 16 Solution – Cost of Debt With Discount

Before-tax cost:

$$K_d = \frac{I + \frac{(P_0 - NP)}{n}}{\frac{(P_0 + NP)}{2}}$$

$$I = 100$$

$$NP = 950 - 20 = 930$$

$$K_d = \frac{100 + \frac{(1000 - 930)}{10}}{\frac{1000 + 930}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{100 + 7}{965} = 11.09\%$$

After-tax:

$$11.09(1 - 0.25) = 8.32\%$$

Problem 17 Solution – Break Point and WACC

Break point:

$$BP = \frac{20}{0.50} = 40 \text{ lakh}$$

Before BP:

Use Ke = 14%

$$WACC = 0.5(14) + 0.5(7) = 7 + 3.5 = 10.5\%$$

After BP:

Use Ke = 17%

$$WACC = 0.5(17) + 0.5(7) = 8.5 + 3.5 = 12\%$$

Before BP: 10.5%

- After BP: 12%

Problem 18 Solution – Comprehensive WACC

Step 1: Cost of equity (CAPM)

$$K_e = 6 + 1.3(15 - 6) = 6 + 11.7 = 17.7\%$$

Step 2: Cost of debt

$$NP = 1000 \times 0.95 = 950$$

$$K_d = \frac{100 + \frac{(1000 - 950)}{10}}{975} = \frac{100 + 5}{975}$$

$$= 10.77\%$$

After-tax:

$$10.77(1 - 0.30) = 7.54\%$$

Step 3: Cost of preference capital

Floatation = 5%

NP = 100 – 5 = 95

Dividend = 12

$$K_p = \frac{12}{95} = 12.63\%$$

Step 4: Weights

Total = 60 + 40 + 20 = 120 lakh

Equity weight = 0.50

Debt weight = 0.33

Pref weight = 0.17

Step 5: WACC

$$WACC = 0.5(17.7) + 0.33(7.54) + 0.17(12.63)$$

$$= 8.85 + 2.49 + 2.15 = 13.49\%$$

Final WACC = 13.49%

11.15. REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Prasanna Chandra — *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*
2. I.M. Pandey — *Financial Management*
3. Van Horne & Wachowicz — *Fundamentals of Financial Management*
4. Brealey, Myers & Allen — *Principles of Corporate Finance*
5. Khan & Jain — *Financial Management*

Prof. V. Chandra Sekhara Rao

LESSON 12

WEIGHTED AVERAGE AND MARGINAL COST OF CAPITAL

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, the learner will be able to:

- Understand the conceptual and economic meaning of WACC.
- Identify the role of market-value weights in computing WACC.
- Compute WACC under different financing scenarios.
- Understand marginal cost of capital (MCC) and its relevance.
- Analyse the rising cost of incremental financing through break points.
- Interpret the use of WACC and MCC in investment and financing decisions.
- Relate WACC and MCC to shareholder wealth maximisation.

STRUCTURE

12.1 INTRODUCTION

A firm requires funds for investment in fixed assets, working capital, new product development, expansions, or diversification. These funds come from a combination of debt, preference capital, equity capital, and retained earnings. Each of these sources carries its own cost, reflecting the return expectations of the investors supplying that financial capital.

In the real world, a company does not rely on a single source of finance. Instead, it uses a financing mix that reflects market conditions, risk appetite, company strategy, and regulatory factors. Thus, when evaluating investment decisions, a firm must consider the weighted

average cost of capital (WACC)—the average rate of return required by all suppliers of funds. This serves as the benchmark or hurdle rate for investment decisions.

However, funding needs are dynamic. As a company raises additional capital, the cost of that new capital may be higher than past costs due to increased risk or exhaustion of cheaper funds. This gives rise to the marginal cost of capital (MCC)—the cost of raising the next rupee of capital.

Both WACC and MCC are foundational concepts in financial management, linking investment appraisal and financing strategy with shareholder value maximisation.

12.2 MEANING OF WEIGHTED AVERAGE COST OF CAPITAL

Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) is the average rate of return required by all the providers of capital, weighted according to their relative contribution to the total capital structure. It is computed using market values of capital components because market values reflect the current opportunity cost of funds.

WACC reflects the firm's composite cost of financing and serves as the minimum return a project must earn to justify investment.

Conceptually:

$$WACC = \sum(w_i \times K_i)$$

Where:

- w_i= Weight of each component (market value basis)
- K_i= Cost of each component (after-tax for debt, before tax for equity)

Components and Weights

A typical capital structure consists of:

1. Debt (Kd) – interest-bearing obligations
2. Preference capital (Kp) – fixed dividend securities
3. Equity capital (Ke) – ordinary shareholders' required return
4. Retained earnings (Kr) – internal funds with implicit cost

Weights are assigned according to market value proportions, not book values. This is because investment decisions are forward-looking, based on the cost of raising capital in the market.

For example:

If market values are:

- Equity = ₹600 crore
- Debt = ₹400 crore

Then:

$$w_E = \frac{600}{1000} = 0.60, w_D = 0.40$$

12.3 STEPS IN COMPUTING WACC

1. Compute cost of each capital source:
    - After-tax cost of debt
    - Cost of preference capital
    - Cost of equity (using DDM/CAPM)
    - Cost of retained earnings
2. Compute market value of each capital component.
3. Assign weights based on market values.
4. Multiply cost of each component by its weight.
5. Add the weighted costs to obtain WACC.

12.4 WACC COMPUTATION – DETAILED EXPLANATION

The WACC calculation must reflect:

- After-tax cost of debt, due to tax deductibility
- Current market conditions, not historical costs
- Opportunity cost principle
- Risk profile of the firm
- Investor expectations

When computing WACC, equity normally carries the highest cost because shareholders bear highest risk. Debt is cheaper due to lower risk and tax shield.

The resulting WACC is used as the discount rate in capital budgeting. Projects must generate an internal rate of return (IRR) higher than WACC to create value.

12.5 IMPLICATIONS OF WACC IN INVESTMENT DECISIONS

WACC is the hurdle rate for evaluating long-term investments. If a project's expected return exceeds the WACC, it adds value. If the return is less than WACC, it destroys value.

WACC affects:

- Net Present Value (NPV)
- Internal Rate of Return (IRR) decisions
- Economic Value Added (EVA)
- Share price and valuation
- Financing strategy (debt vs equity use)

A low WACC indicates efficient capital structure and strong investor confidence. A high WACC indicates perceived risk or inefficient financing.

12.6 MEANING OF MARGINAL COST OF CAPITAL (MCC)

Marginal Cost of Capital is the cost of obtaining one additional unit of capital. As firms raise more funds, the cost of capital tends to rise because:

- cheaper financing options become exhausted
- lenders increase risk premium
- equity investors expect higher returns
- financial leverage increases firm risk

MCC therefore increases stepwise as more capital is raised.

12.7 MCC AND BREAK POINTS

A break point occurs when a cheaper source of capital is exhausted (e.g., retained earnings) and the firm must shift to a costlier source (e.g., new equity).

$$\text{Break Point} = \frac{\text{Amount Available from Cheap Source}}{\text{Weight of that Source}}$$

Above each break point, MCC rises.

A schedule of MCC usually looks like a rising staircase.

12.8 MCC IN FINANCING DECISIONS

MCC is used to:

- determine the optimal capital budget
- evaluate capital rationing decisions
- identify the level of financing after which costs rise
- align financing mix with the investment opportunity schedule (IOS)

Financial managers compare the MCC schedule with the return on potential projects. Only projects whose return exceeds the MCC should be accepted.

12.9 NUMERICAL EXAMPLES

Example 1: WACC Computation

A company has the following market values:

- Equity: ₹600 crore ; Debt: ₹400 crore

Costs:

- Cost of equity (Ke): 14%; Cost of debt (Kd): 10% ; Tax rate: 30%

Compute WACC.

Step 1: Compute after-tax cost of debt

$$K_d = 10\%(1 - 0.30) = 7\%$$

Step 2: Compute weights

Total = 600 + 400 = 1000 crore

$$w_E = 0.60, w_D = 0.40$$

Step 3: Compute WACC

$$WACC = (0.60 \times 14\%) + (0.40 \times 7\%)$$
$$= 8.4\% + 2.8\% = 11.2\%$$

WACC = 11.2%

NUMERICAL PROBLEMS ON WACC

Problem 1: Basic WACC Computation

A company has the following market-value capital structure:

- Equity: ₹500 crore
- Debt: ₹300 crore
- Cost of equity, Ke = 16%
- Cost of debt (before tax), Kd = 10%
- Tax rate = 30%

Tasks

1. Compute the after-tax cost of debt.
2. Compute the market-value weights.
3. Compute WACC.

Problem 2: WACC with Preference Shares

Given:

- Equity market value = ₹800 crore, Ke = 14%
- Preference share value = ₹200 crore, Kp = 12%
- Debt market value = ₹400 crore, Kd = 9%
- Tax rate = 25%

Compute WACC.

Problem 3: WACC with Retained Earnings vs New Equity

A firm has:

- Cost of retained earnings = 15%
- Cost of new equity = 18%

- Retained earnings available = ₹50 crore
- Capital structure weights: Equity = 60%, Debt = 40%
- Cost of debt (after tax) = 7%

Tasks

1. Compute WACC when retained earnings are used.
2. Compute WACC when new equity is used.
3. Show the increase in marginal cost of capital (MCC).

Problem 4: Break Point Calculation

A company has retained earnings of ₹30 crore.
Equity proportion in the capital structure = 0.50.

Calculate the break point beyond which the company must issue new equity.

HINT : Formula (from lesson):

$$\text{Break Point} = \frac{\text{Retained Earnings}}{\text{Equity Weight}}$$

Problem 5: WACC for Capital Budgeting (NPV Decision)

A project requires an investment of ₹100 crore and generates cash inflows:

Year	Cash Flow (₹ crore)
1	40
2	40
3	40
4	40

WACC = 12%

Tasks:

1. Compute NPV.
2. Should the project be accepted?

Problem 6: NPV Decision Using WACC

A project costs ₹50 lakh and produces:

Year	Cash Flow (₹ lakh)
1	15
2	15
3	15
4	15

WACC = 10%

Tasks

1. Compute NPV.
2. Should the firm invest?
3. What happens if WACC rises to 14%?

Problem 7: IRR vs WACC

A firm is evaluating a project with IRR = 13.5%.
Its WACC = 11%.

Tasks

1. Should the project be accepted?
2. What if the firm increases debt and WACC becomes 14%?

Problem 8: EVA Using WACC

Capital employed = ₹200 crore
Operating profit after tax = ₹30 crore
WACC = 12%

Compute EVA:

$$EVA = NOPAT - (WACC \times Capital)$$

WACC IN CAPITAL STRUCTURE THEORIES

Problem 9: Traditional Theory – U-shaped WACC

A firm considers different financing mixes:

Debt %	Cost of Equity	After-tax Cost of Debt	WACC
0%	12%	6%	?
20%	13%	6%	?
40%	15%	7%	?
60%	18%	8%	?

Tasks

1. Compute WACC for each scenario.
2. Identify the optimal capital structure (minimum WACC).
3. Explain whether MM theory (without taxes) would agree.

Problem 10: Modigliani–Miller with Taxes

Given:

- Unlevered cost of equity = 15%
- After-tax cost of debt = 6%
- Debt–equity ratio = 1.0
- Tax rate = 30%

Use MM with taxes:

$$WACC = K_u(1 - \frac{D}{V}T)$$

Tasks

1. Compute WACC.
2. Show that increasing debt lowers WACC.

Problem 11: Net Income (NI) Approach

Under NI approach:

- Debt = ₹50 crore @ 8%
- Equity = ₹50 crore @ 15%

If debt increases to ₹80 crore while cost of debt stays at 8%:

Tasks

1. Compute WACC before change.
2. Compute WACC after increase.

3. Does WACC fall? (Yes – NI approach predicts this.)

WACC IN VALUATION OF FIRMS :

Problem 12: Enterprise Valuation Using WACC

A firm has free cash flows (FCF):

Year	FCF (₹ crore)
1	40
2	45
3	50

Terminal growth rate = 4%
WACC = 10%

$$\text{Terminal Value} = \frac{FCF_3(1+g)}{WACC - g}$$

Find enterprise value (EV).

Problem 13: Value of Levered Firm Using WACC

FCF = ₹60 crore per year (perpetual)
WACC = 12%

$$\text{Value} = \frac{FCF}{WACC}$$

If the firm reduces WACC to 10%, compute the increase in firm value.

Problem 14: Share Price Valuation Using WACC

Free cash flow to equity (FCFE) next year = ₹10 per share
Growth = 5%
WACC = 12%
Debt negligible.

Use Gordon Growth:

$$P_0 = \frac{FCFE_1}{WACC - g}$$

Compute share value.

HOW WACC IS USED IN DECISION-MAKING :

1. Capital Budgeting Decisions (NPV, IRR, EVA)

As your lesson states, WACC is the **hurdle rate** or minimum acceptable return.

lesson 12 - weighted average cost of capital

- If **Project IRR > WACC → Accept**
- If **NPV > 0 using WACC → Accept**
- If **EVA > 0 → Value created**

WACC directly influences:
✓ NPV
✓ IRR acceptance
✓ Capital rationing
✓ Risk-adjusted return analysis

2. Capital Structure Theories

WACC is central to:

Traditional theory

- WACC decreases, reaches optimum, and then rises.

Modigliani–Miller without tax

- WACC constant regardless of leverage.

MM with tax

- WACC decreases as debt increases due to tax shield.

NI / NOI Approach

- NI: WACC falls as leverage rises
- NOI: WACC remains constant

3. Firm Valuation

Lower WACC → Higher firm value
Because:

$$\text{Firm Value} = \sum \frac{FCF_t}{(1+WACC)^t}$$

So reducing WACC through optimal capital structure **increases share price** and **enterprise value**.

☑ F. Summary of WACC Implications:

✓ A low WACC indicates

- Efficient capital structure
- Lower perceived risk
- Strong investor confidence
- Higher valuation and share price

✓ A high WACC indicates

- Higher risk
- Inefficient financing
- Lower firm value
- Projects may be rejected

✓ Used in

- Valuation models
- Discounting future cash flows
- Financing decisions
- Determining optimal debt–equity mix
- Calculating EVA
- Capital rationing under MCC schedules

A. SOLUTIONS — WACC CALCULATION PROBLEMS

Problem 1: Basic WACC Computation – Solution

Given:
Equity = 500; Debt = 300
Ke = 16%, Kd = 10%, Tax = 30%

Step 1: After-tax cost of debt

$$K_d(1-T) = 10\%(1-0.30) = 7\%$$

Step 2: Weights

Total value = 500 + 300 = 800

$$W_e = \frac{500}{800} = 0.625$$

$$W_d = \frac{300}{800} = 0.375$$

Step 3: WACC

$$WACC = (0.625)(16\%) + (0.375)(7\%)$$
$$= 10\% + 2.625\% = 12.625\%$$

✓ WACC = 12.63%

Problem 2: WACC with Preference Shares – Solution

Given:
Equity = 800, Ke = 14%
Preference = 200, Kp = 12%
Debt = 400, Kd = 9%, Tax = 25%

Step 1: After-tax cost of debt

$$K_d(1 - T) = 9\%(1 - 0.25) = 6.75\%$$

Step 2: Weights

Total = 800 + 200 + 400 = 1400

$$W_e = \frac{800}{1400} = 0.571$$
$$W_p = \frac{200}{1400} = 0.143$$
$$W_d = \frac{400}{1400} = 0.286$$

Step 3: WACC

$$= 0.571(14\%) + 0.143(12\%) + 0.286(6.75\%)$$
$$= 7.994 + 1.716 + 1.931 = 11.641\%$$

✓ WACC ≈ 11.64%

Problem 3: WACC with Retained Earnings vs New Equity – Solution

Weights: Equity = 60%, Debt = 40%
Cost of retained earnings = 15%, new equity = 18%
After-tax cost of debt = 7%

Case 1: Using Retained Earnings

$$WACC = 0.60(15\%) + 0.40(7\%)$$
$$= 9\% + 2.8\% = 11.8\%$$

Case 2: Using New Equity

$$WACC = 0.60(18\%) + 0.40(7\%)$$
$$= 10.8\% + 2.8\% = 13.6\%$$

Increase in MCC

$$13.6\% - 11.8\% = 1.8\%$$

✓ **MCC rises by 1.8 percentage points after retained earnings are exhausted.**

Problem 4: Break Point – Solution

Retained earnings = 30 crore
Equity weight = 0.50

$$\text{Break Point} = \frac{30}{0.50} = 60 \text{ crore}$$

✓ **Break point = ₹60 crore** (Beyond this, new equity must be issued)

Problem 5: WACC for NPV — Solution

Investment = 100; annual cash inflow = 40 for 4 years
WACC = 12%

NPV Calculation

PV factor for 4-year annuity at 12%:

$$PV = 40 \times 3.037 = 121.48$$
$$NPV = 121.48 - 100 = 21.48$$

✓ **NPV = ₹21.48 crore → Accept the project**

B. SOLUTIONS — CAPITAL BUDGETING & WACC

Problem 6: NPV Using WACC – Solution

Investment = 50 lakh
Cash inflow = 15 lakh per year for 4 years
WACC = 10%

Step: Present Value

4-year annuity factor @10% = 3.1699

$$PV = 15 \times 3.1699 = 47.5485$$
$$NPV = 47.55 - 50 = -2.45$$

✓ **NPV negative → Reject**

If WACC increases to 14%

Annuity factor @14% for 4 years = 2.9137

$$PV = 15 \times 2.9137 = 43.706$$
$$NPV = 43.71 - 50 = -6.29$$

✓ Higher WACC makes NPV even more negative.

Problem 7: IRR vs WACC – Solution

Project IRR = 13.5%
WACC = 11%

✓ Since **IRR > WACC**, accept the project.

If WACC rises to 14%:

13.5% < 14% → **Reject**

Problem 8: EVA – Solution

Capital employed = 200 crore
NOPAT = 30 crore
WACC = 12%

$$EVA = 30 - (0.12)(200)$$
$$= 30 - 24 = 6$$

✓ **EVA = +₹6 crore (value created)**

C. SOLUTIONS — CAPITAL STRUCTURE THEORIES

Problem 9: Traditional Theory – Solution

We compute WACC at various leverage levels.

Debt %	Ke	Kd	We	Wd	WACC
0%	12%	6%	1.0	0	12%
20%	13%	6%	0.8	0.2	0.8×13 + 0.2×6 = 11.2%
40%	15%	7%	0.6	0.4	9 + 2.8 = 11.8%
60%	18%	8%	0.4	0.6	7.2 + 4.8 = 12%

Conclusion

- Minimum WACC = **11.2% at 20% debt**
- Traditional theory validated: WACC falls, reaches minimum, then rises.

✓ **Optimal capital structure = 20% debt**

Problem 10: MM with Taxes – Solution

Given:
Ku = 15%
Kd(after tax) = 6%
Debt–equity ratio = 1.0
Tax rate = 30%

$$WACC = K_u(1 - \frac{D}{V}T)$$

If D = E → D/V = 0.5:

$$WACC = 15(1 - 0.5 \times 0.30)$$
$$= 15(1 - 0.15) = 15 \times 0.85 = 12.75\%$$

✓ WACC decreases due to tax shield.

Problem 11: Net Income (NI) Approach – Solution

Before change

Debt = 50 @ 8%
Equity = 50 @ 15%

Weights = 0.5, 0.5

$$WACC = 0.5(15) + 0.5(8) = 7.5 + 4 = 11.5\%$$

After debt increases

Debt = 80; Equity = 50 → Total = 130

Weights:
Wd = 80/130 = 0.615
We = 50/130 = 0.385

$$WACC = 0.385(15) + 0.615(8)$$
$$= 5.775 + 4.92 = 10.695\%$$

✓ WACC falls → NI theory confirmed

D. SOLUTIONS — FIRM VALUATION USING WACC

Problem 12: Enterprise Value – Solution

Given FCF:

- Year 1 = 40
- Year 2 = 45
- Year 3 = 50

g = 4%, WACC = 10%

Step 1: Terminal Value

$$TV = \frac{FCF_3(1+g)}{WACC - g}$$
$$= \frac{50(1.04)}{0.10 - 0.04}$$
$$= \frac{52}{0.06} = 866.67$$

Step 2: Present value of FCF

Discount factors at 10%:

DF1 = 0.9091
DF2 = 0.8264
DF3 = 0.7513

$$PV(FCF_1) = 40(0.9091) = 36.36$$
$$PV(FCF_2) = 45(0.8264) = 37.19$$
$$PV(FCF_3) = 50(0.7513) = 37.56$$

Step 3: Present value of terminal value

$$PV(TV) = 866.67 \times 0.7513 = 651.77$$

Enterprise Value

$$EV = 36.36 + 37.19 + 37.56 + 651.77 = 762.88$$

✓ **Enterprise Value = ₹762.88 crore**

Problem 13: Value of Levered Firm – Solution

FCF = 60 crore per year (perpetuity)

Case 1: WACC = 12%

$$V = \frac{60}{0.12} = 500$$

Case 2: WACC = 10%

$$V = \frac{60}{0.10} = 600$$

Increase in value

$$600 - 500 = 100$$

✓ Firm value increases by **₹100 crore** when WACC falls to 10%.

Problem 14: Share Price Valuation – Solution

$FCFE_1 = 10$
$g = 5\%$
$WACC = 12\%$

$$P_0 = \frac{10}{0.12 - 0.05}$$
$$= \frac{10}{0.07} = 142.86$$

✓ Share value = ₹142.86

Example 2: MCC with Break Point

Company retains earnings of ₹60 lakh.
Equity weight in capital structure = 0.50

Break point:

$$BP = \frac{60}{0.50} = 120 \text{ lakh}$$

If financing requirement exceeds ₹120 lakh, new equity must be issued at higher cost (say 18%) vs retained earnings cost (15%).

Thus:

- MCC for first ₹120 lakh = WACC using Kr = 15%
- MCC beyond ₹120 lakh = WACC using Ke(new) = 18%

This creates a rising MCC.

12.10 SUMMARY

WACC provides a consolidated measure of the firm's cost of capital by assigning weights to individual sources. It is central to investment analysis and financial decision-making. MCC highlights that incremental financing may cost more as risk rises and cheaper sources get exhausted. Understanding both helps firms choose optimal capital budgeting and financing strategies.

12.11 KEYWORDS

- WACC; Marginal Cost of Capital; Break Points; Market Value Weights; Hurdle Rate; Tax Shield

12.12 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

12.12.1 SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

1. Define Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC). Why is it considered the firm's hurdle rate?

2. Explain why market-value weights are preferred over book-value weights in calculating WACC.
3. What is the after-tax cost of debt, and why is debt adjusted for taxes in WACC?
4. Distinguish between cost of equity and cost of retained earnings with reference to their conceptual meaning.
5. What is the Marginal Cost of Capital (MCC)? How is it different from WACC?
6. What are break points in MCC calculations? Why do they occur?
7. Why does MCC generally increase as a firm raises more capital? Give one practical reason.
8. What is the significance of WACC in capital budgeting decisions like NPV and IRR?
9. How do changes in capital structure affect WACC? Provide a brief explanation.
10. What are implicit costs in MCC and WACC computation? Give an example.

12.12.2 Long / Essay-Type Questions

1. Explain the concept of Weighted Average Cost of Capital (WACC) in detail. Describe the steps involved in its calculation and discuss why WACC is important for investment evaluation. Provide a numerical example to support your explanation.

2. Discuss the role of market-value weights in WACC computation. Explain how using book-value weights can mislead investment decisions. Illustrate your answer with a hypothetical numerical example.

3. Analyse the significance of Marginal Cost of Capital (MCC) in financing decisions. Explain how MCC changes with rising financing requirements and discuss the concept of break points. Include a numerical demonstration.

4. "A firm should only accept investment projects whose expected return exceeds its WACC." Justify this statement with financial reasoning, supported by examples and diagrams where necessary.

5. Describe the relationship between MCC and the Investment Opportunity Schedule (IOS). How does a firm use these two tools together to determine the optimal capital budget? Provide a detailed explanation with a diagrammatic interpretation.

6. Compare and contrast WACC and MCC with respect to their roles, computation procedures, and implications for financial decision-making. Use examples to clarify how both indicators guide investment and financing strategies.

7. Discuss how changes in cost of debt, cost of equity, or capital structure influence the firm's WACC. Provide real-world examples (Indian or global companies) to illustrate these dynamics.

8. Explain why WACC acts as a "bridge" between financing decisions and capital budgeting decisions. Support your explanation with conceptual arguments and practical illustrations.

9. With the help of a multi-step numerical example, show how the marginal cost of capital rises when retained earnings are exhausted and new equity must be issued. Discuss the managerial implications of this phenomenon.

10. Evaluate the statement: “An optimal capital structure minimizes WACC and maximizes firm value.” Discuss the theoretical justification and practical limitations of this principle.

12.12.3 MCQs

1. WACC uses weights based on:

A. Book values
B. Market values
C. Historical values
D. Liquidation values

Answer: B

2. Marginal cost of capital increases primarily because:

A. Company reduces debt
B. Cheaper funds get exhausted
C. Market value increases
D. Tax rates fall

Answer: B

3. WACC is mainly used as:

A. Working capital tool
B. Inventory valuation rate
C. Discount rate for capital budgeting
D. Dividend distribution rate

Answer: C

4. Break point indicates:

A. When firm becomes bankrupt
B. When cheap capital is exhausted
C. When project returns fall
D. When interest rates fall

Answer: B

5. After-tax cost of debt is:

A. Higher than before-tax cost
B. Always zero
C. Lower due to tax shield
D. Equal to cost of equity

Answer: C

12.12.4 ANALYTICAL CASE STUDY: "SUNRAY POWER LTD: THE CAPITAL DECISION"

Sunray Power Ltd, a renewable energy firm, plans to raise ₹300 crore for expansion. Its current capital structure (market value) is:

- Equity: ₹700 crore
- Debt: ₹300 crore

Costs:

- Cost of equity = 15%
- Cost of debt = 9%
- Tax rate = 25%

The company has retained earnings of ₹50 crore available at an implicit cost of 14%. Beyond this, new equity must be raised at 17%.

The management has three investment proposals with the following returns:

- Project A: 16%
- Project B: 13.5%
- Project C: 12%

Sunray wants to finance the full ₹300 crore requirement.

Tasks for Students
1. Compute current WACC.
2. Compute break point using retained earnings.
3. Prepare a marginal cost of capital schedule.
4. Decide which projects should be accepted.
5. Discuss whether new equity should be issued early or retained earnings should be exhausted first.

12.13 Prescribed Text books

1. Prasanna Chandra — *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*
2. I.M. Pandey — *Financial Management*
3. Van Horne & Wachowicz — *Fundamentals of Financial Management*
4. Brealey, Myers & Allen — *Principles of Corporate Finance*
5. Khan & Jain — *Financial Management*

Prof. V. Chandra Sekhara Rao

LESSON – 13

DIVIDEND POLICY

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:

- Explain the concept and role of dividend policy.
- Recognize the importance of balancing shareholder returns and business growth.
- Identify key factors influencing dividend policy.
- Describe different types of dividends.
- Assess the impact of dividend decisions on shareholder wealth.
- Understand how dividend policy affects firm value and investor confidence.

13. STRUCTURE:

13.1 INTRODUCTION

Every business enterprise aims to earn profits and maximize shareholder wealth. Once profits are earned, management must decide how much of the profit should be distributed to shareholders as dividends and how much should be retained for reinvestment in the business. This decision is guided by the company's dividend policy, which forms a vital part of its financial management strategy.

Dividend policy thus deals with the allocation of net earnings between dividend payments to shareholders and retained earnings to finance future growth. It plays a key role in determining the company's capital structure, market value, and investor perception.

13.2 CONCEPT OF DIVIDEND POLICY

Dividend Policy refers to the guidelines or principles that a company's management follows while deciding the portion of profits to be distributed as dividends to shareholders and the portion to be retained in the business.

It reflects the firm's approach toward dividend declaration and distribution, aiming to balance:

- The expectations of shareholders for regular income, and
- The need of the company to reinvest profits for future expansion and stability.

In essence, a sound dividend policy ensures that the company maintains financial flexibility, investor confidence, and long-term value creation.

Importance of Dividend Policy

A sound dividend policy is crucial for several reasons:

- Investor Attraction: Regular and stable dividends enhance investor confidence and attract both current and potential shareholders.
- Market Value: Consistent dividends can positively influence a company's share price, signalling financial stability.
- Capital Structure Management: Helps in maintaining a proper balance between debt and equity.
- Shareholder Satisfaction: Dividends are a direct return to shareholders, reflecting the company's profitability and goodwill.
- Future Growth: Retained earnings (undistributed profits) support reinvestment and long-term sustainability.

13.3 IMPORTANCE AND DETERMINANTS OF DIVIDEND POLICY OF DIVIDEND POLICY

Importance:

1. Dividend Policy as a Tool of Shareholder Wealth Maximization
2. Impact of Dividend Policy on Market Price of Shares
3. Dividend Policy and Investor Confidence
4. Dividend Policy and Capital Structure Decisions
5. Effect of Dividend Policy on Corporate Image

Determinants:

Dividend policy is influenced by several internal and external factors that affect a company's decision on how much profit to distribute as dividends and how much to retain for future growth.

These factors are known as the determinants of dividend policy.

1. Profitability

- The most important determinant of dividend policy.
- A company can declare dividends only if it earns adequate profits.
- Firms with stable and high profits generally pay regular and higher dividends, whereas firms with fluctuating or low profits tend to retain earnings.

2. Liquidity Position

- Even if a company has high profits, it must have enough cash or liquid assets to pay dividends.
- A poor liquidity position may force a company to reduce or postpone dividend payments.

3. Stability of Earnings

- Companies with stable and predictable earnings are more likely to adopt a stable dividend policy.
- Volatile earnings make it difficult to maintain regular dividend payments.

4. Growth Opportunities

- Firms with greater expansion and investment opportunities prefer to retain earnings rather than pay high dividends.
- Growth-oriented companies usually adopt a low or zero dividend payout policy.

5. Legal and Contractual Restrictions

- Company laws, capital protection rules, and loan covenants restrict dividend payments.
- For example, dividends can only be paid out of profits and not from capital, according to the Companies Act.

6. Shareholder Preferences

- Different shareholders have different expectations:
  - Retired or conservative investors prefer regular dividends.
  - Growth-oriented investors prefer capital appreciation through retained earnings.
- Companies often consider these preferences while framing their policy.

7. Taxation Policy

- Tax rates on dividends and capital gains influence dividend decisions.
- If dividends are heavily taxed, companies may prefer to retain earnings or repurchase shares instead.

8. Access to Capital Markets

- Companies with easy access to external financing (through equity or debt) can afford to pay higher dividends, as they can raise funds later for investment.
- Firms with limited access retain more earnings to fund future projects.

9. Business Cycles and Economic Conditions

- During booms, firms may declare higher dividends due to better profits and liquidity.
- During recessions, they tend to conserve cash and reduce dividends.

10. Control Considerations

- Management may retain profits to avoid issuing new shares and diluting ownership control.
- This affects dividend payout levels.

11. Inflation and Economic Stability

- In times of inflation, companies retain more earnings to replace fixed assets at higher costs.
- Economic stability allows more consistent dividend payments.

12. Past Dividend Practices

- Companies often follow dividend stability, meaning they maintain consistency with past dividend rates to preserve investor trust and market reputation.

13.4 FORMS OF DIVIDENDS:

Dividends represent the portion of profits distributed by a company to its shareholders as a return on their investment.

Companies may distribute dividends in different forms, depending on their financial position, liquidity, and long-term strategy.

1. Cash Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend paid in the form of cash or cheque to shareholders.
- Most common form of dividend distribution.
- Declared as a specific amount per share (e.g., ₹5 per share).
- Suitability: When the company has adequate cash and liquidity.
- Example: A company declares ₹2 cash dividend per equity share.

2. Stock Dividend (Bonus Shares)

- Meaning: Dividend paid in the form of additional shares instead of cash.
- Shareholders receive extra shares in proportion to their existing holdings.
- Does not reduce the company's cash balance.
- Purpose: To capitalize retained earnings and reward shareholders without cash outflow.
- Example: A 1:10 bonus means one additional share for every ten shares held.
-

3. Property Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend paid in the form of assets or property (other than cash or shares), such as inventory, real estate, or investment securities.
- Rarely used in practice.
- Example: Distribution of physical goods or investments held by the company to shareholders.

4. Scrip Dividend (Promissory Note Dividend)

- Meaning: When a company lacks sufficient liquidity to pay cash immediately, it issues a promissory note to shareholders promising payment at a later date.
- Essentially an IOU (I Owe You) to be redeemed later.
- Example: A company issues a note promising to pay ₹5 per share dividend after six months.

5. Bond Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend paid in the form of bonds or debentures instead of cash.
- The company promises to pay interest on these bonds until maturity.
- Used when: The company wants to defer cash payments but still reward shareholders.

6. Liquidating Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend paid out of capital instead of profits, usually when a company is winding up or liquidating.
- Represents a return of invested capital rather than profit.
- Example: A firm sells its assets and distributes proceeds to shareholders.

7. Interim Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend declared and paid between two annual general meetings (AGMs), before final accounts are prepared.
- Usually based on profits earned during part of the financial year.
- Example: A company declares an interim dividend after six months of operation.

8. Final Dividend

- Meaning: Dividend declared at the end of the financial year after accounts are finalized and approved by shareholders in the AGM.
- Represents the final distribution of profits for that year.

13.5 DIVIDEND POLICY AS A TOOL OF SHAREHOLDER WEALTH MAXIMIZATION

One of the primary financial goals of any company is to maximize the wealth of its shareholders.

This wealth is reflected in the market value of the company's shares, which depends on investors' expectations about the company's future earnings and dividend payments.

Dividend Policy plays a vital role in this process, as it directly influences both the current income of shareholders (through dividends) and the future capital gains (through retained earnings and share price appreciation).

Figure 01

13.6 Link between Dividend Policy and Shareholder Wealth

Shareholder wealth is maximized when the company's dividend policy:

1. Ensures regular and stable income to investors.
2. Signals financial stability and growth potential to the market.
3. Enhances share price through positive investor perception.
4. Maintains adequate retained earnings for future expansion, which increases the company's intrinsic value.

Thus, dividend policy acts as a communication and performance tool, shaping investor confidence and the firm's reputation in the market.

13.7 PRACTICAL IMPLICATIONS

- Stable and predictable dividend policies attract long-term investors.
- Regular dividends enhance trust and reflect management's confidence in profitability.
- Retention of earnings ensures sustainable growth, which increases future dividends and capital appreciation.
- Companies that maintain consistent dividend records often enjoy higher market valuations.

Dividend policy is not merely a routine financial decision; it is a strategic tool for building shareholder value.
By balancing the trade-off between current dividends and future growth, a well-designed dividend policy helps:

- Maintain investor satisfaction,
- Strengthen market confidence, and
- Ultimately maximize shareholder wealth through higher market capitalization and long-term profitability.

13.8 RELEVANCE TO SHAREHOLDERS

Dividend policy is an important financial decision because it directly affects shareholders' returns and their perception of the company's performance.
For shareholders, dividends are not just a source of income — they are also a signal of the company's financial health, profitability, and management efficiency.
Reasons Why Dividend Policy is Relevant to Shareholders
(a) Regular Income

- Dividends provide a steady and predictable income to shareholders.
- Especially important for retired or conservative investors who depend on dividends for regular cash flow.

(b) Indicator of Financial Strength

- Consistent dividend payments signal profitability and stability.
- A sudden cut or omission of dividends may create negative perceptions in the market.

(c) Market Price Influence

- Dividend announcements often lead to positive reactions in stock prices, reflecting investor confidence.
- Higher or stable dividends can increase demand for shares, raising market value.

(d) Shareholder Confidence and Loyalty

- Regular and transparent dividend policies build trust and loyalty among investors.
- They demonstrate management's commitment to rewarding shareholders.

(e) Wealth Maximization

- Dividends contribute directly to shareholders' total returns (dividends + capital gains).
- A well-balanced policy enhances shareholder wealth through both income and share price appreciation.

(f) Information Signalling

- Dividend changes convey information about the company's future prospects:
    - Increase in dividends → signals optimism and growth.
    - Decrease in dividends → signals financial stress or future challenges.

(g) Preference for Current Income

- Many investors prefer immediate cash dividends over uncertain future capital gains (as explained in Gordon's Bird-in-Hand Theory).

13.9 SUMMARY

Dividend policy is a key aspect of a company's financial management, dealing with the decision on profit distribution between dividends to shareholders and retained earnings for business growth. It aims to achieve a balance between current shareholder satisfaction and long-term financial stability.

A well-designed dividend policy enhances investor confidence, improves market value, and contributes to shareholder wealth maximization. The policy is influenced by several determinants such as profitability, liquidity, growth opportunities, taxation, legal constraints, and shareholder preferences.

Dividends can be paid in various forms — cash, stock (bonus shares), property, scrip, bond, interim, final, or liquidating — depending on the company's financial position and strategy.

Ultimately, an effective dividend policy serves as a strategic tool for financial communication, signalling a company's stability and growth prospects, while ensuring a fair and consistent return to shareholders.

13.10 KEY TERMS

1. Dividend – The portion of a company's profits distributed to its shareholders as a return on their investment.
2. Dividend Policy – The strategy or guidelines that determine how much profit is paid out as dividends and how much is retained in the business.
3. Profitability – The company's ability to generate earnings, which directly influences dividend decisions.
4. Liquidity – The availability of cash or liquid assets to pay dividends.
5. Interim Dividend – A dividend declared and paid before the end of the financial year.
6. Final Dividend – A dividend declared after the financial year-end and approved at the Annual General Meeting (AGM).
7. Shareholder Wealth Maximization – The main financial objective of a firm, achieved by enhancing the market value of its shares.
8. Bonus Shares (Stock Dividend) – Additional shares issued to shareholders instead of a cash dividend.
9. Stable Dividend Policy – A policy of maintaining consistent dividends over time, despite fluctuations in profits.
10. Growth Opportunities – Future investment projects that may require retaining earnings instead of paying dividends.

13.11 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

13.11.1 Short questions

1. Define dividend and dividend policy.
2. What are the main objectives of a company's dividend policy?
3. Explain the importance of dividend policy in financial management.
4. What factors influence the dividend decision of a company?
5. List any five determinants of dividend policy and explain briefly.
6. How does dividend policy relate to shareholder wealth maximization?
7. What is meant by information signalling in dividend decisions?

13.11.2 Essay questions

1. Discuss the concept of dividend policy and explain why it is an important decision in corporate finance.
2. Examine the objectives and significance of dividend policy in achieving financial stability and investor confidence.
3. "Dividend policy is a reflection of a company's financial strategy." — Discuss this statement in light of corporate financial management.
4. Explain in detail the determinants of dividend policy. How do profitability, liquidity, taxation, and legal constraints affect dividend decisions?

13.11.3 MCQs

1. Dividend policy primarily deals with:
a) Investment decisions
b) Financing decisions
c) Profit distribution decisions
d) Marketing decisions
→ Answer: c) Profit distribution decisions
2. The main objective of dividend policy is to:
a) Increase the company's liabilities
b) Maximize shareholders' wealth
c) Minimize the firm's market value
d) Reduce retained earnings
→ Answer: b) Maximize shareholders' wealth
3. The decision regarding how much profit to distribute as dividends and how much to retain is known as:
a) Capital budgeting decision
b) Dividend policy decision
c) Investment decision
d) Working capital decision
→ Answer: b) Dividend policy decision
4. Dividend policy is important because it affects:
a) Only the employees
b) The company's goodwill and market value
c) Only the customers
d) None of the above
→ Answer: b) The company's goodwill and market value
5. Which of the following factors affects dividend policy?
a) Legal restrictions
b) Tax considerations
c) Liquidity position
d) All of the above
→ Answer: d) All of the above
6. A company with stable and predictable earnings is more likely to:
a) Pay no dividends
b) Follow a stable dividend policy

c) Reduce its payout ratio
d) Borrow funds to pay dividends
→ Answer: b) Follow a stable dividend policy
7. Higher corporate tax rates generally lead to:
a) Higher dividend payments
b) Lower dividend payments
c) No impact on dividends
d) Increase in bonus shares
→ Answer: b) Lower dividend payments
8. Legal restrictions on dividend payments are laid down under:
a) The Income Tax Act
b) The Companies Act
c) The FEMA Act
d) The RBI Act
→ Answer: b) The Companies Act
9. Dividend decisions depend on liquidity because:
a) Dividends are paid in cash
b) Dividends are paid in kind
c) Dividends are non-monetary benefits
d) Liquidity does not affect dividends
→ Answer: a) Dividends are paid in cash
10. Dividend announcements often act as:
a) Negative signals to investors
b) Positive signals of financial health
c) Neutral statements
d) None of the above
→ Answer: b) Positive signals of financial healtCase Study
Case Study 1:
Dividend Policy in Practice — Tata Consultancy Services (TCS)
Background:
Tata Consultancy Services (TCS), one of India's largest IT companies, has a consistent dividend payout policy, often distributing around 80–85% of its profits as dividends. Despite this, it continues to grow steadily due to high retained earnings and efficient capital management.
Problem:
New investors often question how TCS manages to balance high dividend payouts and business expansion simultaneously.
Questions:

1. What kind of dividend policy does TCS follow — stable, constant payout, or residual?
2. How does TCS's dividend strategy support shareholder wealth maximization?
3. Which determinants of dividend policy are visible in this case?
4. What lessons can other companies learn from TCS's dividend management approach?

Case Study 2: Determinants of Dividend Policy — Profitability vs. Liquidity
Background:

Beta Manufacturing Ltd. earned a net profit of ₹25 crores in the current year. However, the company's liquidity position is tight due to high working capital needs and delayed customer payments.

Problem:

Although the company is profitable, it lacks sufficient cash to declare a dividend. The Board faces pressure from shareholders demanding regular dividends.

Questions:

1. What are the major determinants of dividend policy evident in this case?
2. Should profitability or liquidity be given more importance in deciding dividends?
3. What alternative forms of dividend (other than cash) can the company consider?
4. How does this reflect the trade-off between current dividends and future growth?

Case Study 3: Dividend Policy and Shareholder Perception

Background:

Delta Pharma Ltd. had a stable dividend history for 8 years. In the recent year, the company skipped its dividend due to declining profits and regulatory expenses. The share price dropped by 12% within two days of the announcement.

Problem:

Some investors started selling their shares, believing the company was in financial trouble, although its fundamentals remained strong.

Questions:

1. What does this case reveal about the signalling effect of dividend policy?
2. How does dividend stability affect investor trust and market valuation?
3. What steps can the company take to restore investor confidence?
4. How do theories of dividend relevance apply here?

13.12 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. James C. Van Horne & John M. Wachowicz Jr. (2018), Financial Management and Policy, Pearson Education

2. Stephen A. Ross, Randolph W. Westerfield & Jeffrey Jaffe (2020), Corporate Finance, McGraw Hill Education

1. I.M. Pandey (2021), Financial Management, Vikas Publishing House

2. M.Y. Khan & P.K. Jain (2018), Financial Management: Text, Problems and Cases, McGraw Hill Education

3. Gomase, H., Akula, S., Thakare, S. V., Shukla, H., & Chowdary, V. G. R. (2024). *Corporate finance unveiled: Insights and applications*. Zenodo. https://zenodo.org/records/13998399.

Dr. Venu Gopalarao Chowdary

LESSON – 14

THEORIES OF DIVIDENDS

OBJECTIVES:

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:

1. Understand the concept and significance of dividend policy in financial management.
2. Explain traditional dividend theories and their relevance to firm value.
3. Describe modern dividend theories like the MM hypothesis and their arguments.
4. Analyze the assumptions, implications, and limitations of various dividend models.
5. Compare global dividend practices in developed and developing economies.
6. Examine the impact of taxation, legal systems, investor protection, and culture on dividend decisions.

STRUCTURE:

14.1 INTRODUCTION

Dividend theories explain the relationship between a firm's dividend decisions and its market value or shareholders' wealth. Over time, economists and financial theorists have developed various views on whether dividend policy affects the value of a firm or not. These views are broadly categorized into Traditional Theories and Modern Theories of dividend policy.

Traditional Dividend Theories

Traditional or Relevance Theories suggest that dividend decisions influence the value of a firm. According to these theories, investors prefer current dividends to uncertain future capital gains, as dividends provide immediate and assured returns. The key idea is that a well-designed dividend policy can maximize the wealth of shareholders and increase the market price of shares.

Main Traditional Theories

- Walter's Model (James E. Walter, 1963)
  Proposes that dividend policy directly affects the market value of a firm, depending on the relationship between the rate of return (r) and cost of capital (k).
  - If $r > k$, the firm should retain earnings.
  - If $r < k$, it should pay dividends.

- Gordon's Model (Myron Gordon, 1959)
  Known as the "Bird-in-Hand" theory, it suggests investors prefer certain dividends today to uncertain capital gains in the future. Hence, a higher dividend payout leads to a higher share price.
- Residual Theory of Dividends
  States that dividends should be paid only after all profitable investment opportunities are funded. Thus, dividend distribution is treated as a residual decision.

Modern Dividend Theories
Modern or Irrelevance Theories argue that in a perfect capital market, dividend policy has no effect on the value of the firm or shareholders' wealth. Investors are indifferent between receiving dividends and capital gains since they can create their own cash flows by selling shares if they need income.

Main Modern Theory

- Modigliani and Miller (MM) Hypothesis (1961)
  Franco Modigliani and Merton Miller proposed that the value of a firm depends solely on its earning power and investment decisions, not on the way it distributes profits.
  The assumptions include:
  - No taxes or transaction costs
  - Perfect capital markets
  - Rational investors
  - Fixed investment policy

Under such conditions, the division of earnings between dividends and retained earnings does not impact share value.

Both traditional and modern dividend theories provide valuable insights into corporate financial management. In practice, firms often balance both perspectives — maintaining stable dividends to satisfy investors while retaining earnings for growth and investment. The true impact of dividend policy lies between these two extremes, influenced by market conditions, taxation, and investor psychology.

14.2 Classification of Dividend Theories

- Traditional (Relevance) Theories
- Modern (Irrelevance) Theories

I. Traditional Dividend Theories (Relevance Theories)
A. Walter's Model
B. Gordon's Model (Bird-in-Hand Theory)
C. Residual Theory of Dividends

- D. Other Supporting Theories
  (1) Clientele Effect Theory: Investors form groups based on dividend preferences.

(2) Signaling Theory: Dividend changes signal management's expectations about future performance.
(3) Agency Cost Theory: Dividend policy helps reduce conflicts between management and shareholders.

II. Modern Dividend Theories (Irrelevance Theories)

Modigliani and Miller (MM) Hypothesis

14.3 GLOBAL PATTERNS IN DIVIDEND POLICIES

Dividend policies represent a critical aspect of corporate financial management, reflecting how companies distribute earnings to shareholders. These policies vary significantly across different global regions due to varying economic, legal, and cultural factors. Understanding these patterns offers valuable insights into how dividend practices are shaped by diverse economic environments and corporate governance structures. Overview of Dividend Policies Dividend policy is central to corporate finance, influencing both firm value and investor behaviour. The dividend decision involves determining the portion of earnings to be distributed as dividends versus retained for reinvestment. Different countries exhibit distinctive dividend practices based on their economic structures, legal frameworks, and market conditions.

Overview of Dividend Policies
Dividend policy is central to corporate finance, influencing both firm value and investor behaviour. The dividend decision involves determining the portion of earnings to be distributed as dividends versus retained for reinvestment. Different countries exhibit distinctive dividend practices based on their economic structures, legal frameworks, and market conditions.

14.4 REGIONAL VARIATIONS IN DIVIDEND POLICIES

United States:

In the United States, dividend policies are characterized by a preference for stable and predictable dividend payouts. Many American companies follow a policy of paying regular, quarterly dividends and aim for consistency, even during economic downturns (Fama & French, 2001). The preference for stability can be attributed to the signaling theory, where consistent dividends are viewed as a positive signal about a company's financial health and future prospects (Lintner, 1956). Additionally, the U.S. tax system provides favorable treatment of dividends compared to capital gains, which influences companies to return profits to shareholders (Harris & Raviv, 1991).

Europe European companies often exhibit different dividend practices compared to their American counterparts. In many European countries, such as Germany and the Netherlands, companies are known for paying higher dividend yields and distributing a larger portion of their earnings (DeAngelo, DeAngelo, & Stulz, 2006). This is partly due to the higher level of corporate governance standards and shareholder protection laws in these countries, which mandate more substantial payouts. Additionally, European firms tend to favor cash dividends over share repurchases, reflecting a preference for direct returns to shareholders

(Brennan & Thakor, 1990). Asia In Asia, dividend policies vary widely, reflecting diverse economic conditions and cultural attitudes towards dividends. For example, Japanese firms historically maintained low dividend payout ratios due to a strong focus on reinvestment and growth (Kang, Kim, & Stulz, 1999). However, recent trends show a shift towards higher dividends as companies seek to attract more investors and improve shareholder value. In contrast, Chinese companies have traditionally had low dividend payouts due to state ownership and reinvestment strategies aimed at sustaining rapid economic growth (Chen, Chen, & Wei, 2011). The pattern in Asia reflects a broader emphasis on growth and expansion rather than immediate shareholder returns.

14.5 FACTORS INFLUENCING GLOBAL DIVIDEND POLICIES

Economic Conditions

Economic conditions play a significant role in shaping dividend policies. In economically stable environments, firms are more likely to distribute higher dividends as they experience consistent profitability. Conversely, during economic downturns or periods of uncertainty, companies may reduce or suspend dividends to conserve cash and manage risk (Miller & Modigliani, 1961). The impact of economic cycles on dividend policies is evident across different regions, influencing how companies adapt their dividend strategies based on prevailing economic conditions.

Corporate Governance

Corporate governance structures significantly impact dividend policies. In countries with strong investor protection and robust corporate governance frameworks, companies are more likely to adopt transparent and shareholder friendly dividend policies. For instance, firms in the U.S. and Western Europe are often subject to stringent disclosure requirements and shareholder rights laws, which encourage regular and predictable dividend payments (La Porta, Lopez-de Silanes, Shleifer, & Vishny, 2000). In contrast, in countries with weaker governance structures, dividend policies may be less predictable and more influenced by managerial discretion.

Taxation

Taxation policies influence dividend decisions by affecting the relative attractiveness of dividends compared to capital gains. Countries with favorable tax treatment for dividends, such as lower dividend tax rates or tax credits, may encourage higher dividend payouts. For example, the tax reforms in the U.S. have made dividends more attractive relative to capital gains, leading to increased dividend distributions (Auerbach & Hassett, 2003). Conversely, in jurisdictions where dividends are taxed heavily, companies may prefer share buybacks or retained earnings over dividend payouts.

14.6 RECENT TRENDS AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Increased Focus on Shareholder Returns

Recent trends show a growing emphasis on shareholder returns globally, driven by increasing shareholder activism and pressure for higher returns. Companies worldwide are adopting more shareholder-friendly policies, including increased dividend payouts and share buybacks, as they seek to enhance shareholder value and respond to investor demands (Jensen,

1986). This trend is evident across various regions, reflecting a shift towards aligning corporate policies with shareholder interests.

Impact of Globalization

Globalization has influenced dividend policies by increasing cross-border investments and integrating global financial markets. As companies operate in multiple countries and attract international investors, they are more likely to adopt dividend practices that align with global standards. This convergence of dividend policies across regions reflects a broader trend towards harmonizing financial practices and addressing the needs of a diverse investor base (Aggarwal & Goodell, 2013).

Global patterns in dividend policies reflect a complex interplay of economic conditions, corporate governance, and taxation. While dividend practices vary across regions, recent trends indicate a growing emphasis on shareholder returns and increased convergence of dividend policies due to globalization. Understanding these global patterns provides valuable insights into how companies adapt their dividend strategies in response to diverse economic and regulatory environments.

14.7 SUMMARY

Dividend theories explain the relationship between a firm's dividend decisions and its market value or shareholders' wealth. These theories are broadly classified into Traditional (Relevance) and Modern (Irrelevance) views.

Dividend policies differ across the world due to variations in economic development, taxation systems, ownership structures, legal environments, and investor preferences. These differences shape how companies distribute profits and how investors value dividend income versus capital gains.

While traditional theories emphasize that dividends are a major factor in enhancing firm value and investor confidence, modern theories suggest that in ideal market conditions, dividends are irrelevant.

In practice, firms often adopt a balanced approach, maintaining stable dividends to signal financial health while retaining earnings for future growth — blending both traditional and modern perspectives.

Overall, global dividend practices reflect a balance between shareholder expectations and corporate growth strategies, influenced by regional norms, taxation, and market maturity.

14.8 KEY TERMS

1. Dividend Policy The firm's decision regarding how much profit to distribute to shareholders and how much to retain for reinvestment.

2.Relevance Theory	The view that dividend policy affects the market value of the firm (Traditional approach).

3.Irrelevance Theory	The view that dividend policy has no impact on the firm's value (Modern approach).
4.Walter's Model	A theory by James E. Walter suggesting dividend policy influences firm value depending on the relationship between the rate of return (r) and cost of capital (k).
5.Gordon's Model	Proposed by Myron Gordon; also called the *Bird-in-Hand Theory*, it emphasizes investors' preference for certain dividends.
6Residual Dividend Theory	States that dividends are paid only after funding all profitable investment opportunities.
7.Bird-in-Hand Theory	The belief that investors prefer certain dividends today over uncertain future capital gains.
8.Clientele Effect	Different groups of investors prefer different dividend policies depending on their income needs and tax situations.
9.Signaling Effect	Dividend announcements convey information about a firm's financial health and future prospects.
10.Agency Cost Theory	Dividends can reduce agency problems between management and shareholders by limiting free cash flow misuse.

14.9 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

14.9.1 Short questions

1. What is a dividend policy?
2. Define dividend relevance theory.
3. Define dividend irrelevance theory.
4. Who proposed the Walter's Model of dividend policy?
5. What is the key assumption of Walter's Model?
6. Mention one difference between Walter's Model and Gordon's Model.
7. What is the "Bird-in-Hand" theory?
8. Explain the concept of the residual dividend policy.
9. What is meant by global dividend policy?
10. How does taxation affect dividend policy internationally?

14.9.2 Essay questions

1. Discuss in detail the Traditional and Modern Theories of Dividend Policy.
2. Explain the relevance and irrelevance theories of dividend policy with suitable examples.
3. "Dividend policy is irrelevant in a perfect capital market." – Discuss this statement with reference to MM theory.
4. Explain the concept of Residual Dividend Policy and its significance in corporate financial management.
5. Discuss the behavioral theories of dividend policy and their implications for managerial decision-making.
6. Examine the practical applicability of traditional and modern dividend theories in the Indian corporate sector.

14.9.3 MCQs

1. According to Walter's Model, dividend policy is relevant when:
   a) The cost of capital equals the rate of return
   b) The rate of return differs from the cost of capital
   c) The cost of equity is zero
   d) None of the above
   → (b)
2. The "Bird-in-Hand" theory is associated with:
   a) Walter
   b) Modigliani and Miller
   c) Gordon
   d) Lintner
   → (c)
3. Modigliani and Miller's theory assume:
   a) Imperfect capital markets
   b) Taxes exist
   c) Perfect capital markets with no taxes
   d) Information asymmetry
   → (c)
4. According to MM hypothesis, dividend policy is:
   a) Relevant to firm value
   b) Irrelevant to firm value
   c) Determined by tax rates
   d) Dependent on management decisions
   → (b)
5. In Walter's Model, if $r > k$, the firm should:
   a) Pay 100% dividend
   b) Retain all earnings
   c) Pay no dividend
   d) Both b and c
   → (d)
6. Gordon's Model is also known as:
   a) Risk Return Model
   b) Growth Model
   c) Cost of Capital Model
   d) Dividend Irrelevance Model
   → (b)
7. The Residual Theory of Dividends suggests:
   a) Pay dividends first, then invest
   b) Pay dividends after financing all profitable investments
   c) Retain entire profits

d) Pay fixed dividends every year
→ (b)

8. Which one is NOT an assumption of MM theory?
   a) No taxes
   b) Perfect capital market
   c) Variable cost of capital
   d) No transaction costs
   → (c)
9. Which theory suggests that dividend acts as a signal of firm's financial health?
   a) Signaling theory
   b) Clientele theory
   c) Bird-in-Hand theory
   d) Agency cost theory
   → (a)
10. Clientele Effect theory implies:
    a) All investors prefer the same dividend policy
    b) Different investors prefer different dividend policies
    c) Dividend policy is irrelevant
    d) Dividend decision depends only on management
    → (b)
11. Firms in developed countries generally have:
    a) High dividend payout ratios
    b) Low dividend payout ratios
    c) No dividend payments
    d) Irregular dividend payments
    → (a)
12. The term "dividend smoothing" refers to:
    a) Paying variable dividends each year
    b) Maintaining stable dividends over time
    c) Reducing dividends during growth phases
    d) Paying dividends only when profits are high
    → (b)
13. Dividend yield is calculated as:
    a) Dividend per share ÷ Earnings per share
    b) Dividend per share ÷ Market price per share
    c) Earnings per share ÷ Dividend per share
    d) Market price per share ÷ Dividend per share
    → (b)
14. Which factor influences dividend policy globally?
    a) Legal restrictions
    b) Taxation
    c) Cultural factors
    d) All of the above
    → (d)
15. The U.S. and U.K. companies are known for:
    a) No dividend payments

b) High and stable dividends
c) Random payout decisions
d) Irregular capital gains
→ (b)

14.10 CASE STUDY

Case Study: Dividend Policy at Zenith Power Corporation (ZPC)

Background

Zenith Power Corporation (ZPC) is a listed energy company headquartered in Singapore, operating across Asia and the Middle East. It has a strong asset base, stable cash flows, and a track record of consistent profitability. Over the past five years, the company's earnings per share (EPS) have grown steadily, but its dividend payout ratio has declined — from 65% to 35%.

The board of directors argues that retaining more earnings will allow the company to fund new renewable energy projects and reduce reliance on debt financing. However, several shareholders, particularly institutional investors from Europe, have voiced concerns that the falling dividends are depressing the market value of shares.

The company's share price has indeed shown a mixed trend: while earnings grew by 20% annually, the stock's market price increased only marginally, lagging behind peers who maintained higher dividend payouts.

Financial Summary (Last 3 Years)

Year	EPS (₹)	DPS (₹)	Retention Ratio (%)	Market Price per Share (₹)
2022	10.00	6.50	35	140
2023	12.50	5.00	60	150
2024	15.00	5.25	65	155

Key Management Views

- CEO's View (Growth Focus):
  "Retaining earnings strengthens our internal financing and supports long-term growth. Shareholders benefit more from capital appreciation than short-term dividends."
- CFO's View (Market Perception):
  "Investors in global markets, particularly Europe, value stable dividends as a signal of corporate strength. Reducing payouts may harm investor confidence."
- Investor's Perspective:
  "We invest in ZPC for stable and predictable returns. Irregular dividend patterns send mixed signals about management's confidence and financial health."

Discussion Questions

1. Analyze the dividend policy of Zenith Power Corporation in light of Walter's Model and Gordon's Model.
   - Does the current policy maximize shareholder value?
   - Should ZPC increase its payout ratio?

2. Using the Modigliani–Miller (MM) hypothesis, discuss whether the declining dividend payout is justified in a "near-perfect" market like Singapore.
3. Evaluate the impact of ZPC's dividend policy on its market price per share using the given data. What trends can you identify?
4. How might global investor expectations influence ZPC's dividend decisions? Consider differences in dividend preferences between Asian and European shareholders.
5. If you were the Financial Advisor, recommend an optimal dividend policy balancing growth opportunities and shareholder wealth. Justify your reasoning with theoretical support.

Case Study 2: Dividend Dilemma at Orion Technologies Ltd. (OTL)

Background

Orion Technologies Ltd. (OTL) is a fast-growing Indian software company specializing in cloud computing and fintech solutions. Established in 2010, OTL quickly expanded to global markets including the USA, UK, and Southeast Asia.

For several years, OTL has maintained a low dividend payout ratio (20–25%), preferring to reinvest earnings in research and development (R&D) and new product innovations. However, with consistent profits and strong reserves, investors are now questioning this policy.

Recently, OTL's share price has become volatile, even though profits continue to rise. Analysts suggest that the uncertainty around dividend policy might be influencing investor sentiment.

Financial Snapshot (₹ in Crores)

Year	Net Profit	Dividend Paid	Retention Ratio	Market Price per Share (₹)
2021	200	40	80%	310
2022	250	50	80%	340
2023	300	75	75%	330
2024	350	70	80%	315

Boardroom Discussion

- CEO's Argument (Growth-Oriented):
  "Our strategy has always been to reinvest profits into innovation. Dividends can wait — our long-term growth will reward shareholders through higher stock prices."
- CFO's Counterpoint (Investor Confidence):
  "Consistent dividends signal financial stability. Our international investors compare us with global tech peers who pay regular dividends or buy back shares."
- Independent Director's View:
  "We must balance both — sustainable growth and steady shareholder return. A hybrid model could satisfy both short-term and long-term goals."

Industry Context

Globally, tech companies often retain earnings for R&D, but in recent years, many such as Apple, Microsoft, and Infosys have adopted regular dividend or buyback programs to enhance investor trust and reduce stock volatility.

Discussion Questions

1. Examine OTL's dividend policy in the context of Traditional Dividend Theories (Walter's and Gordon's Models). Does a low payout ratio support or hinder shareholder wealth maximization?
2. Using MM's Irrelevance Theory, discuss whether OTL's dividend decisions truly affect its market value, assuming a semi-efficient Indian capital market.
3. Based on the data, evaluate how OTL's dividend policy impacts investor perception and share price behavior.
4. Should OTL adopt a stable dividend policy, a residual policy, or a hybrid payout model? Support your answer using both theoretical and practical reasoning.
5. Compare OTL's approach to global technology giants. How do global dividend patterns in the IT industry influence the expectations of OTL's shareholders?

14.11 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. George Frankfurter, Bob Wood & James Wansley (2003), Dividend Policy: Theory and Practice, Elsevier Academic Press
2. Harold Bierman (2001), Increasing Shareholder Value: Distribution Policy, Springer
3. Gomase, H., Akula, S., Thakare, S. V., Shukla, H., & Chowdary, V. G. R. (2024). *Corporate finance unveiled: Insights and applications*. Zenodo. https://zenodo.org/records/13998399.
4. Luis Correia da Silva, Marc Goergen & Luc Renneboog (2004), Dividend Policy and Corporate Governance, Oxford University Press.

Dr. Venu Gopalarao Chowdary

LESSON – 15

DIVIDEND MODELS

OBJECTIVES

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:

1. Understand the concept and importance of dividend valuation models.
2. Analyze how dividend decisions affect shareholder wealth and firm value.
3. Explain major dividend models like Walter, Gordon, MM, and Residual models.
4. Distinguish between dividend relevance and irrelevance theories.
5. Apply the mathematical framework of dividend models to firm valuation.
6. Compare traditional and modern dividend theories and their assumptions.
7. Evaluate the practical usefulness of dividend models in corporate decisions.
8. Assess the role of dividend models in determining payout and retention levels.
9. Interpret empirical evidence related to dividend theories.
10. Use dividend models analytically in real-world financial cases and valuations.

STRUCTURE:

15.1 INTRODUCTION

Dividend models are theoretical frameworks developed to explain the relationship between a firm's dividend policy and its market value or shareholders' wealth. In corporate finance, one of the fundamental questions is whether a company's dividend decisions—how much profit to distribute and how much to retain—influence the value of the firm.

Dividend models attempt to answer this question by examining the impact of dividend payout ratios on the market price of shares under different assumptions and market conditions. They form the basis for understanding whether dividend policy is relevant (affects firm value) or irrelevant (does not affect firm value).

15.2 CLASSIFICATION OF MODELS

These models can broadly be classified into two categories:

1. Traditional or Relevance Models – These models argue that dividend policy plays a vital role in determining the value of a firm. Investors prefer certain dividends over uncertain future capital gains. The key models in this category include:

- Walter's Model
- Gordon's Model (Bird-in-Hand Theory)
- Residual Dividend Model

2. Modern or Irrelevance Models – These models, led by Modigliani and Miller (MM Theory), state that dividend policy has no effect on firm value in a perfect capital market. According to this view, the firm's value depends only on its investment and earning capacity, not on the distribution of dividends.

Each model offers a unique perspective on how dividends, retained earnings, and firm growth interact. Together, these models provide a comprehensive understanding of the theoretical foundations of dividend decisions and their implications for corporate financial management.

15.3 IMPORTANT DIVIDEND MODELS

(1) Walter's Model
(2) Gordon's Model (Bird-in-Hand Theory)
(3) Modigliani–Miller (MM) Model
(4) Residual Dividend Model
(5) Behavioral and Signaling Theories

15.4 EMPIRICAL EVIDENCE ON DIVIDEND MODELS

- Global research findings supporting and contradicting dividend models
- Evidence from developed markets (US, UK, Japan)
- Evidence from emerging markets (India, Southeast Asia)
- Relevance of MM and traditional models in modern financial systems

15.5 COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS

Aspect	Walter's Model	Gordon's Model	MM Model	Residual Model
Type	Relevance	Relevance	Irrelevance	Relevance/Practical
Basis	Return vs. Cost of Capital	Growth & Payout	Perfect Market	Investment Needs
Investor Preference	High dividends	Stable dividends	Indifferent	Flexible
Conclusion	Dividends affect value	Dividends affect value	No effect	Depends on investment decisions

Table 01:

15.6 Walter's Model

Walter's Model (James E. Walter) is a traditional (relevance) dividend model that links a firm's dividend policy to its market value.
It shows how the rate of return on
Internal investments (r) and
The cost of equity (k) interacts with dividend payout to determine share price.

15.6.1 Key idea

If a firm's internal rate of return r differs from its cost of equity k, the dividend policy does affect firm value:

- If r > k → retaining earnings (lower payout) increases value.
- If r < k → paying out earnings (higher payout) increases value.
- If r = k → dividend policy is irrelevant to firm value.
-

15.6.2 Formula

Let

- E= Earnings per share (EPS)
- D= Dividend per share (D = payout ratio × E)
- r= Internal rate of return (return on retained earnings)
- k= Cost of equity (required rate of return)

Walter's formula for price per share $P$is:

Walter's formula for the price per share (P) is:

$$P = \frac{D + (E - D) \times (r/k)}{k}$$

15.7 ASSUMPTIONS AND IMPLICATIONS

- Firm's earnings and risk are constant and perpetual.
- All earnings are either paid out or reinvested at internal return r.
- No floatation costs or taxes (simplifying).
- Cost of equity $k$is constant and known.

Implications

- If $r > k$: retaining earnings (higher b) increases P. Best policy: retain (low payout).
- If $r < k$: paying dividends (lower b) increases P. Best policy: pay out (high payout).
- If $r = k$: payout level does not affect P.

15.8 LIMITATIONS

- Unrealistic assumptions (no taxes, constant r, constant k).
- Ignores market imperfections, signaling, clientele effects, agency problems.
- Assumes reinvested earnings always earn r(no project risk variation).
- Not ideal for firms with variable earnings or short-term projects.

  Problem 1:

  Basic price calculation (case r > k)

  Given: $E = ₹10$, payout ratio = 40% → $D = 0.4 \times 10 = ₹4$.

  Given $r = 12\% = 0.12$, $k = 10\% = 0.10$.

  Use Walter's formula:

$$P = \frac{D + (E - D)\frac{r}{k}}{k} = \frac{4 + (10 - 4) \cdot \frac{0.12}{0.10}}{0.10}$$

Compute step by step:

- $E - D = 10 - 4 = 6$.
- $\frac{r}{k} = \frac{0.12}{0.10} = 1.2$.
- $(E - D)\frac{r}{k} = 6 \times 1.2 = 7.2$.
- Numerator $= 4 + 7.2 = 11.2$.
- $P = 11.2 \div 0.10 = 112$.

Answer: $P = ₹112$.

Interpretation: since $r(= 12\%) > k(= 10\%)$, retaining earnings is valuable — higher retention would raise P.

Problem 2 — compare full-payout vs no-payout (case r < k)

Given: $E = ₹10$, $r = 8\% = 0.08$, $k = 10\% = 0.10$.

(a) 100% payout (D = 10):

$$P = \frac{10 + (10 - 10) \cdot \frac{0.08}{0.10}}{0.10} = \frac{10 + 0}{0.10} = 100$$

(b) 0% payout (D = 0):

$$P = \frac{0 + (10 - 0) \cdot \frac{0.08}{0.10}}{0.10} = \frac{10 \times 0.8}{0.10} = \frac{8}{0.10} = 80$$

Answers: $P_{100\%} = ₹100$; $P_{0\%} = ₹80$.

Interpretation: because $r < k$, paying dividends (100% payout) yields higher market price.

Problem 3 — price at different retention ratios (case r > k)

Given: $E = ₹12$, $r = 15\% = 0.15$, $k = 10\% = 0.10$. Compute $P$for retention ratios $b = 0, 0.5, 1$.

(i) $b = 0$(payout 100%): $D = E = 12$.

$$P = \frac{12 + (12 - 12)\frac{0.15}{0.10}}{0.10} = \frac{12}{0.10} = 120$$

(ii) $b = 0.5$(payout 50%): $D = 0.5 \times 12 = 6$.

$$P = \frac{6 + (12 - 6) \cdot \frac{0.15}{0.10}}{0.10}$$

Compute:

- $E - D = 6$.
- $\frac{r}{k} = 1.5$.
- $(E - D)\frac{r}{k} = 6 \times 1.5 = 9$.
- Numerator $= 6 + 9 = 15$.
- $P = 15 \div 0.10 = 150$.

(iii) $b = 1$(payout 0%): $D = 0$.

$$P = \frac{0 + 12 \cdot \frac{0.15}{0.10}}{0.10} = \frac{12 \times 1.5}{0.10} = \frac{18}{0.10} = 180$$

Answers: $P_{b=0} = 120$; $P_{b=0.5} = 150$; $P_{b=1} = 180$.
Interpretation: with $r > k$, higher retention (= larger b) increases P; best to retain all earnings.

Problem 4 — the neutral case $r = k$
Let $E = ₹10$, $r = k = 10\% = 0.10$. For any payout, say payout 0% and 100%:
(a) 100% payout $D = 10$:

$$P = \frac{10 + 0}{0.10} = 100$$

(b) 0% payout $D = 0$:

$$P = \frac{0 + 10 \cdot \frac{0.10}{0.10}}{0.10} = \frac{10 \times 1}{0.10} = 100$$

Answer: $P = ₹100$ for all payout levels.
Interpretation: when $r = k$, payout policy does not affect

Points to remember :

- Walter's Model uses r and k to decide whether dividends or retention maximize firm value.
- It is easy to apply for perpetual-earnings firms and gives clear policy direction: retain when $r > k$, pay when $r < k$.
- Use Walter's formula to compute price for any payout/retention level; compare to choose the policy that maximizes P.
- Remember real-world limitations — use alongside other theories (Gordon, MM) and practical considerations (taxes, signaling, investor preferences).

Classroom practice problems (unsolved — for assignment)

1. $E = ₹8.50$, $k = 12\%$. If $r = 18\%$, compute P for payout ratios 0%, 40%, 60%, and 100%. Which payout maximizes P?
2. Firm has EPS $E = ₹20$, $r = 9\%$, $k = 11\%$. Compute P for payout ratios 0%, 50%, and 100%. Discuss.
3. For a firm with $E = ₹5$, $k = 10\%$, find the payout ratio that maximizes P if $r = 10\%$. (Hint: show independence.)
4. A company is considering two projects: Project A yields internal return $r_A = 14\%$, Project B yields $r_B = 9\%$. If firm's $k = 11\%$ and EPS = ₹16, discuss optimal dividend strategy using Walter's reasoning.

15.7 GORDON'S MODEL

Gordon's Model (also called the Gordon Growth Model or the Dividend Discount Model — constant growth version) is a classic traditional (relevance) dividend model. It values a share as the present value of an infinite stream of dividends that grow at a constant rate g.

Core formula

If D_1= dividend expected next year, k= required rate of return (cost of equity), and g= constant growth rate of dividends, then:

$$\boxed{P_0 = \frac{D_1}{k - g}}$$

Conditions: $k > g$(required return must exceed growth), and dividends grow perpetually at constant rate g.

When you have current earnings $E$and retention ratio b, then:

- payout ratio $= 1 - b$
- current dividend $D_0 = E(1 - b)$
- growth $g = b \times r$, where $r$is return on retained earnings

So, an alternative expression:

$$\boxed{P_0 = \frac{E(1 - b)(1 + g)}{k - g}} \text{where} g = br$$

Or sometimes written (if using D_0):

$$P_0 = \frac{D_0(1 + g)}{k - g}$$

15.7.1 Assumptions and Implications

Assumptions:

1. Dividends grow at a constant rate $g$forever.
2. Required return $k$is constant and $k > g$.
3. Firm's return on retained earnings $r$is constant (when linking to retention).
4. No taxes, no transaction costs, and dividends are the only cash flow to shareholders.
5. Market is reasonably efficient, so present value pricing applies.

Implications:

1. Investors prefer certain dividends; higher current dividends (or higher growth funded by profitable reinvestment) increase value.
2. If a firm can reinvest at a high $r$and retains earnings (higher b), $g$rises and so can the price — but only if $g < k$.
3. If $g$approaches k, denominator becomes small → P_0becomes very large (the model breaks down in practice).
4. Easy to use for mature firms with stable dividend growth.

Limitations

- Unrealistic for firms with non-constant or unstable dividend growth (startups, cyclical firms).
- Sensitive to estimates of $k$and g. Small changes can produce large swings in P_0.
- Ignores share buybacks and other payout forms unless converted to equivalent dividends.
- Assumes dividends are the only return — capital gains are just implied via growth in dividends.

Example 3: Basic price calculation (given D_0)

A company just paid a dividend $D_0 = ₹4.00$. Dividends are expected to grow at $g = 6\% = 0.06$per year. Investors require $k = 12\% = 0.12$. Find P_0.

Solution:

1. Compute next year's dividend: $D_1 = D_0(1 + g)$.

$$D_1 = 4.00 \times (1 + 0.06) = 4.00 \times 1.06 = 4.24.$$

2. Apply Gordon formula:

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1}{k - g} = \frac{4.24}{0.12 - 0.06} = \frac{4.24}{0.06}.$$

3. Divide: $4.24 \div 0.06$. Multiply numerator and denominator by 100 to remove decimals: $424 \div 6$.
   - 6goes into 42→ 7times ($7 \times 6 = 42$), remainder 0.
   - Bring down 4→ 6goes into 4→ 0times, remainder 4. Append decimal: add 0 → bring down 0 → 6into 40→ 6times ($6 \times 6 = 36$), remainder 4. Repeats → 6.666...

So $424 \div 6 = 70.6666..$

4. Therefore $P_0 = ₹70.67$(rounded to two decimals).

Answer: ₹70.67

Example 2 — using earnings and retention (linking $g = br$)

Given: EPS $E = ₹10$; retention ratio $b = 0.60$(so payout = 40%); internal return on retained earnings $r = 12\% = 0.12$; required return $k = 10\% = 0.10$. Compute P_0.

Solution:

1. Current dividend $D_0 = E(1 - b) = 10 \times (1 - 0.60) = 10 \times 0.40 = 4.00$.
2. Growth $g = b \times r = 0.60 \times 0.12 = 0.072 = 7.2\%$.
3. Next year dividend $D_1 = D_0(1 + g) = 4.00 \times (1 + 0.072) = 4.00 \times 1.072$.

Multiply: $4.00 \times 1.072 = 4.288$.

4. Apply Gordon:

$$P_0 = \frac{4.288}{0.10 - 0.072} = \frac{4.288}{0.028}.$$

5. Divide: $4.288 \div 0.028$. Multiply numerator & denominator by 1000 → $4288 \div 28$.
   - 28into 42→ 1 ($1 \times 28 = 28$), remainder 14. Bring down 8→ 148.
   - 28into 148→ 5 ($5 \times 28 = 140$), remainder 8. Bring down next 8→ 88.
   - 28into 88→ 3 ($3 \times 28 = 84$), remainder 4. Append decimal and bring down 0 → 40.
   - 28into 40→ 1 ($1 \times 28 = 28$), remainder 12... continuing gives repeating decimals.

Compute quotient so far: 153 remainder ... exact value is $4288/28 = 153.142857..$

6. So $P_0 \approx ₹153.14$.

Answer: ₹153.14

Interpretation: Because $g = 7.2\% < k = 10\%$, model valid. Retention produces growth; price reflects both payout and growth.

Example 3 — compare two payout policies
Firm has EPS $E = ₹8$, $r = 14\% = 0.14$, $k = 12\% = 0.12$. Compute P_0under:

- Policy A: payout ratio = 100% (b=0)
- Policy B: payout ratio = 50% (b=0.5)

Solution:
Policy A (100% payout):

1. $D_0 = E(1-b) = 8 \times (1-0) = 8.00$.
2. $g = br = 0 \times 0.14 = 0$.
3. $D_1 = D_0(1+g) = 8.00 \times 1 = 8.00$.
4. $P_0 = \frac{8.00}{0.12-0} = \frac{8.00}{0.12}$.

Divide $8.00 \div 0.12$: multiply by $100 \rightarrow 800 \div 12$.

- 12into 80→ 6 ($6 \times 12 = 72$), remainder 8. Bring down 0 → 80 → again 6 → repeating → result $66.6666..$

So $P_0 = ₹66.67$.
Policy B (50% payout):

1. $D_0 = 8 \times (1-0.5) = 8 \times 0.5 = 4.00$.
2. $g = br = 0.5 \times 0.14 = 0.07 = 7\%$.
3. $D_1 = 4.00 \times (1+0.07) = 4.00 \times 1.07 = 4.28$.
4. $P_0 = \frac{4.28}{0.12-0.07} = \frac{4.28}{0.05}$.

Divide $4.28 \div 0.05$: multiply numerator & denominator by $100 \rightarrow 428 \div 5$.

- 5into 42→ 8 ($8 \times 5 = 40$), remainder 2; bring down 8 → 28 → 5($5 \times 5 = 25$), remainder 3 → append 0 → 30 → 6 → so 85.6

Exact $428/5 = 85.6$.
So $P_0 = ₹85.60$.
Comparison: P_0under 50% payout (₹85.60) > under 100% payout (₹66.67). Since here $r(14\%) > k(12\%)$, retaining (some) earnings to fund high-return projects increases firm value — consistent with Gordon/Walter-type logic.

Example 4 — warning: $g$close to k
Suppose $D_1 = ₹2.00$, $k = 10\% = 0.10$, and $g = 9.9\% = 0.099$.
Then:

$$P_0 = \frac{2.00}{0.10 - 0.099} = \frac{2.00}{0.001} = 2000.$$

A tiny difference between $k$and $g$yields a huge price — shows model sensitivity.
practice problems (with brief answer keys)
Problem A (solve): EPS $E = ₹12$. Retention ratio $b = 40\%$. Return on retained earnings $r = 10\%$. Required return $k = 14\%$. Compute P_0.

- *Hint:* $D_0 = 12(1-0.4) = 7.2$. $g = 0.4 \times 0.10 = 0.04$. $D_1 = 7.2 \times 1.04 = 7.488$. $P_0 = 7.488/(0.14-0.04) = 7.488/0.10 = 74.88$.

Problem B (solve): A firm pays all earnings as dividend (payout 100%). EPS = ₹9, $k = 11\%$. What is P_0?

- *Answer:* $D_0 = 9$, $g = 0$, $D_1 = 9$, $P_0 = 9/(0.11 - 0) = 81.82$(compute: $9 \div 0.11 = 900 \div 11 = 81.818..$).

Problem C (challenge): For a firm with $E = ₹8$, $r = 12\%$, and $k = 10\%$, find the payout ratio $1 - b$that maximizes P_0.

- *Hint/Answer outline:* Since $r > k$, Gordon's logic suggests retaining more (higher b) increases g, so price rises as payout falls — maximum at $b = 1$(retain all). But remember Gordon requires $g < k$, so ensure $br < k$(i.e., $b < k/r$). Here $k/r = 10/12 = 0.8333$. So, you can retain up to 83.33%; beyond that $g \geq k$invalidates model. So optimum is $b$as large as possible but < 0.8333. Practical answer: retain all profitable projects up to constraint.

Comparison with Walter's Model

- Both Gordon and Walter are relevance models — they say dividend policy matters.
- Gordon uses constant growth and directly values dividends as a perpetuity growing at g. Walter's expresses price in terms of EPS, payout and ratio r/k.
- If you set assumptions appropriately both models can give similar qualitative guidance: retain when internal returns exceed required retu
- Summary
- Gordon's Model: $P_0 = D_1/(k - g)$— simple and powerful for stable, mature firms.
- Compute $g = br$when linking payout to earnings retention.
- Always check $k > g$. If $g$is close to k, price becomes extremely sensitive.
- Use for mature firms with stable growth; be cautious for high-growth or irregular payers.

15.8 M–M HYPOTHESIS

Modigliani and Miller (1961) proposed a landmark set of propositions in corporate finance. When applied to dividend policy, their main conclusion is that in a perfect capital market dividend policy is irrelevant — it does not affect the value of the firm. Below is a clear, step-by-step explanation, assumptions, intuition (arbitrage/home-made dividends), criticisms, and worked numerical problems with full arithmetic.

Under perfect market assumptions (no taxes, no transaction costs, no information asymmetry, rational investors, fixed investment policy), the firm's value is determined only by its earning power and investment policy — not by how earnings are split between dividends and retained earnings.

Therefore, changes in dividend policy (higher or lower payout) do not change the market value of the firm.

Assumptions and Intuition

Assumptions:

M–M's dividend irrelevance result relies on the following idealised assumptions:

1. No taxes (or identical tax treatment of dividends and capital gains).

2. No transaction costs (buying/selling shares is frictionless).
3. Perfect markets — all investors have the same information and can trade freely.
4. Investors are rational and can borrow/lend at the same rate as firms.
5. Firm investment policy is fixed and independent of dividend policy.
6. No bankruptcy costs and no agency problems.

Because these assumptions are strong/idealised, M–M is a theoretical benchmark — useful for understanding the logic of dividend policy, even if real markets deviate.

Intuition:

The core intuition is simple:

- If a company pays lower dividends, an investor who wants cash can sell part of her holdings to create her own cash flow (a "homemade dividend").
- If a company pays higher dividends, an investor who prefers capital gains can reinvest dividends by buying additional shares.
- If two firms identical in all respects except dividend policy traded at different prices, arbitrageurs could buy the cheaper one and sell the expensive one to earn riskless profit. This forces prices to adjust until they are equal.

Thus, dividend policy alone cannot create value in perfect market

Criticisms:

In reality, many frictions make dividend policy matter:

- Taxes: If dividends and capital gains are taxed differently, investors prefer one over the other (M–M with taxes shows preference for retained earnings / buybacks if dividends taxed higher).
- Transaction costs & illiquidity: Selling shares to create homemade dividends may be costly.
- Information asymmetry / signaling: Dividend changes can convey private information, affecting prices.
- Agency problems: Dividends can reduce free cash flow and agency costs.
- Investor clienteles: Different investors prefer different payout patterns.
  Thus, M–M provides a baseline; deviations explain why dividend policy matters in practice.

Worked problems

Problem 1 — Price equality under M–M (simple numeric)

Two firms, Alpha and Beta, are identical except dividend policy.

- Both earn perpetual earnings per share $E = ₹5$each year.
- Required return $k = 10\% = 0.10$.
- Alpha pays full earnings as dividends (payout 100% → $D_A = ₹5$).
- Beta pays no dividends (payout 0% → $D_B = 0$) and retains earnings to grow capital.

Show: Under M–M (no taxes, no costs) the market price of both shares should be equal.

Solution (Alpha — dividend payer):

Price P_A =present value of perpetual dividend $D_A$at discount rate k:

$$P_A = \frac{D_A}{k} = \frac{5}{0.10}$$

Compute: $5 \div 0.10 = 5 \times 10 = 50$.
So $P_A = ₹50$.
Solution (Beta — no dividend):
Beta retains earnings — but value comes from capital gains (future sale). Under M–M, the present value of all future earnings available to shareholders equals the same as Alpha's dividend stream. So $P_B$must equal ₹50 by arbitrage. We can also see this by imagining an investor sells a fraction of Beta to obtain cash equivalent to ₹5:
If price is P_B, selling fraction $x$yields $xP_B = 5 \rightarrow x = 5/P_B$. If $P_B$were different from 50, arbitrageurs would buy the cheaper and sell the expensive until equal.
Conclusion: $P_A = P_B = ₹50$.

Problem 2 — Homemade dividend (constructing cash)
Investor Jane holds 1 share of Beta (non-dividend payer). She needs ₹2 cash today. Show how she can create this by selling some shares and compare to owning Alpha.
Solution:
Given from Problem 1, $P_B = ₹50$.
Jane sells $x$fraction of her share so that $x \times 50 = 2 \rightarrow x = 2/50 = 0.04$.
So she sells 4% of her share, receives ₹2 cash, and retains 0.96 share.
This replicates the cash she'd have received if Beta paid ₹2 dividend (and share price adjusted accordingly). Transaction costs zero → homemade dividend works perfectly.

Problem 3 — Two firms with different declared dividends (arbitrage)
Firm X and Firm Y are identical in earnings and risk. Firm X pays dividend ₹6 and is trading at ₹120. Firm Y pays dividend ₹4.50. If M–M holds, what must be Y's price? If market quotes $P_Y = ₹130$, suggest arbitrage.
Solution:
Given identical firms with same EPS etc, price should reflect PV of payoffs. If X pays higher dividend and trades at ₹120, and Y pays lower dividend, their prices must adjust so that total return (dividend + expected capital gain) is equal.
Simple approach: Suppose fair price should be ₹120 for both. But market shows $P_Y =$ 130(higher). Arbitrage:

- Short sell 1 share of Y at ₹130 (receive ₹130).
- Use proceeds to buy 1 share of X at ₹120 (cost ₹120), leftover cash ₹10 invested at risk-free (or held).
- Receive dividend ₹6 from X; owe dividend ₹4.50 on short Y. Net dividend received = ₹6 − ₹4.50 = ₹1.50.
- After dividends and adjustments, if firms identical, eventual capital gains equalise; arbitrage profit stems from initial ₹10 leftover + net dividends → riskless profit. Traders will do this until $P_Y$falls toward fair parity.

This enforces price equality under M–M.

Problem 4 — M–M with taxes (brief contrast)
M–M original result assumes no taxes. Suppose dividends taxed at 30% and capital gains taxed at 15%. All else equal, which payout would investors prefer?
Illustration (qualitative numeric):

- If company pays ₹100 dividend: shareholder after tax receives $100 \times (1 - 0.30) = 70$.
- If company retains and share price rises by ₹100 (capital gain realized later): after tax shareholder pays $100 \times 0.15 = 15$tax, retaining 85.

So capital gains yield 85 > 70 after tax → investors prefer retained earnings (or buybacks) that generate capital gains. Therefore, dividend policy becomes relevant when taxes differ. M–M with taxes modifies conclusions accordingly.

Problem 5 — Numerical illustration: Value unchanged with homemade dividend
Firm Z has EPS ₹12, and investors require 12% return. Consider two payout policies:

- Policy A: pays dividend $D_A = ₹6$per share.
- Policy B: pays dividend $D_B = ₹3$per share and retains the rest.

Assume no taxes, no costs, firm investment policy fixed. Show how an investor who prefers ₹6 cash can recreate that cash with Policy B and why prices must be equal.
Solution:
Let fair price Pbe present value. Under M–M, both policies must yield same price. Suppose $P_B = P$. To get ₹6 cash under Policy B, investor sells fraction $x$such that $xP = 3$(because B pays only ₹3 dividend; to get extra ₹3 she sells shares). If price P adjusts so this replicates outcomes, no advantage exists.
This is qualitative; specific numbers require assumed P. The core is: ability to trade fractionally to recreate any dividend stream implies irrelevance.

Classroom practice problems
A firm has perpetual EPS = ₹8 and required return $k = 8\%$. Compare price if it pays all earnings as dividends vs retains all earnings (M–M world). Compute numeric price(s).
(Answer sketch: Price = $8/0.08 = 100$*in both cases.)*

1. Firm A pays dividend ₹4, price ₹50. Firm B pays dividend ₹2. If the firms are identical otherwise, what is fair price of B? Explain arbitrage if market price differs. *(Hint: replicate cash flows.)*
2. Suppose dividends taxed at 25% and capital gains taxed at 10%. Show numerically why investors may prefer retained earnings. Use a ₹100 payout example.
3. Explain how transaction costs or inability to sell fractional shares would weaken M–M's homemade dividend argument

Practical implications for managers

- M–M shows dividend policy should not be chosen in isolation: investment policy (projects, ROI) matters most.
- In real markets, managers consider taxes, signaling, investor clientele, and transaction frictions — so dividend policy often does affect stock price.
- Use M–M as a benchmark: ask "Which market imperfections apply to our firm?" to guide payout decisions.

Points to remember :

- M–M Dividend Irrelevance: In perfect markets, dividend policy is irrelevant to firm value. Investors can create homemade dividends and arbitrage enforces price parity.

- Assumptions matter: Taxes, transaction costs, information asymmetry, agency problems, and clienteles make dividend policy important in practice.
- Usefulness: M–M provides a clean baseline for understanding when and why dividend decisions may or may not matter.

15.9 SUMMARY

Comparative Summary

Basis	Walter's Model	Gordon's Model	M–M Hypothesis
Nature of theory	Relevance	Relevance	Irrelevance
Key idea	Dividend policy affects firm value based on r and k	Investors prefer certain dividends ("bird in hand")	Dividend policy has no effect on firm value
Relation between r and k	Determines payout decision	Based on constant growth	Not relevant
Formula	$P = \frac{D + (E - D)\frac{r}{k}}{k}$	$P = \frac{D1}{k - g}$	$P = \frac{D1 + \mathrm{P1}}{1 + k}$
Major assumption	No external financing	Constant growth rate	Perfect market conditions
Implication	Optimal dividend exists	Dividend preference raises firm value	Dividend policy irrelevant in perfect markets.

Table 02:

1. Walter and Gordon Models support the dividend relevance view: dividend policy influences firm value and shareholders' wealth.
2. M–M Hypothesis supports the dividend irrelevance view: in perfect markets, firm value depends only on investment policy.
3. In real-world conditions, market imperfections (taxes, signaling, agency issues) make dividend policy partially relevant.

15.8KEY TERMS

1. Dividend Policy

The decision made by a company's management regarding how much of the earnings should be distributed to shareholders as dividends and how much should be retained for reinvestment.

2. Dividend Relevance Theory

A theory that states dividend policy affects the market value of the firm and shareholders' wealth.

Supported by Walter's Model and Gordon's Model.

3. Dividend Irrelevance Theory

Proposed by Modigliani and Miller (M–M), it states that dividend policy has no effect on the value of the firm under perfect market conditions.

4. Earnings Per Share (EPS)

The portion of a company's profit allocated to each outstanding share of common stock.

$$EPS = \frac{\text{Net Income}}{\text{Number of Outstanding Shares}}$$

5. Dividend Per Share (DPS)

The amount of dividend declared by a company for each share held by shareholders.

$$DPS = \frac{\text{Total Dividend}}{\text{Number of Shares}}$$

6. Internal Rate of Return (r)
The return earned by the company on its retained earnings or reinvested funds.
Used in Walter's Model and Gordon's Model to determine whether retention or distribution is beneficial.
7. Cost of Equity (k)
The rate of return required by shareholders for investing in the company's equity.
It represents the opportunity cost of investing capital elsewhere at comparable risk.
8. Retention Ratio (b)
The portion of earnings retained by the firm for reinvestment instead of being distributed as dividends.

$$b = 1 - \text{Dividend Payout Ratio}$$

9. Growth Rate (g)
The rate at which a company's dividends or earnings are expected to grow, calculated as:

$$g = b \times r$$

Used in Gordon's Model to estimate future dividend growth.
10. Market Price per Share (P or P_0)
The current value of a firm's share in the stock market.
It is influenced by dividends, growth prospects, and investor expectations.
11. Bird-in-Hand Theory
Proposed by Gordon, it suggests that investors prefer certain dividends today ("bird in hand") over uncertain capital gains in the future.
12. Homemade Dividend
A concept from the M–M Hypothesis — investors can create their own dividends by selling part of their shareholdings if a company pays low or no dividends.

15.9SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

15.11.1 Short questions

1. Define dividend policy. Why is it important for a firm?
2. What is meant by dividend relevance theory?
3. State the main idea behind Walter's Model of dividend policy.
4. What are the assumptions of Walter's Model?
5. Explain the relationship between r (rate of return) and k (cost of capital) in Walter's Model.
6. Write the formula for determining the market price per share under Walter's Model.
7. What is the bird-in-hand theory? Which model supports it?
8. Mention any three assumptions of Gordon's Model.
9. What is the formula for calculating the value of a share under Gordon's Model?
10. Define the growth rate (g) and explain how it is derived in Gordon's Model.
11. What is the core message of the M–M Hypothesis regarding dividend policy?
12. What are the main assumptions of the M–M Hypothesis?

15.11.2 ESSAY QUESTIONS

1. Compare and contrast Walter's Model, Gordon's Model, and M–M Hypothesis.
2. Explain why Walter's and Gordon's Models are considered Relevance Theories.
3. Discuss the practical implications of the M–M Hypothesis for financial managers.
4. How do the assumptions of the M–M model differ from real-world financial markets?
5. Discuss how dividend policy can act as a signal to investors about a firm's prospects.
6. Explain with reasons which of the three models is more applicable in the Indian corporate environment.

15.11.3 MCQs

1. Walter's Model
    1. According to Walter's Model, the value of a share depends on:
        a) Dividend policy only
        b) Relationship between internal rate of return (r) and cost of capital (k)
        c) Earnings per share only
        d) Dividend payout ratio only
        ☑ Answer: b) Relationship between r and k
    2. If a company's internal rate of return (r) is greater than its cost of capital (k), according to Walter's Model, the company should:
        a) Pay all earnings as dividends
        b) Retain all earnings
        c) Reduce its earnings
        d) Borrow funds to pay dividends
        ☑ Answer: b) Retain all earnings
    3. Walter's Model assumes that:
        a) The firm uses external financing
        b) The firm's r and k are constant
        c) Dividends and retained earnings are unrelated
        d) Shareholders are irrational
        ☑ Answer: b) The firm's r and k are constant
    4. In Walter's formula $P = \frac{D+(r/k)(E-D)}{k}$, if $r = k$, the market price of the share will:
        a) Increase
        b) Decrease
        c) Remain unchanged
        d) Become zero
        ☑ Answer: c) Remain unchanged
    5. Walter's Model supports the concept of:
        a) Dividend irrelevance
        b) Dividend relevance
        c) Residual dividend policy

d) Arbitrage

☑ Answer: b) Dividend relevance

2. Gordon's Model (Bird-in-Hand Theory)

6. Gordon's Model is also known as the:

a) Residual Theory of Dividends

b) Irrelevance Theory

c) Bird-in-Hand Theory

d) Liquidity Preference Theory

☑ Answer: c) Bird-in-Hand Theory

7. According to Gordon's Model, investors prefer:

a) Future capital gains

b) Retained earnings

c) Certain dividends now rather than uncertain future gains

d) Share repurchases

☑ Answer: c) Certain dividends now rather than uncertain future gains

8. The basic formula for Gordon's Model is:

a) $P = \frac{E}{k}$

b) $P = \frac{D_1}{k-g}$

c) $P = \frac{D+(r/k)(E-D)}{k}$

d) $P = D_1 + P_1$

☑ Answer: b) $P = \frac{D_1}{k-g}$

9. In Gordon's Model, the growth rate (g) is given by:

a) $g = D \times k$

b) $g = r + b$

c) $g = b \times r$

d) $g = E - D$

☑ Answer: c) $g = b \times r$

10. If the retention ratio (b) increases and the rate of return (r) is higher than cost of capital (k), according to Gordon, the value of the firm will:

a) Increase

b) Decrease

c) Remain constant

d) Become zero

☑ Answer: a) Increase

3. Modigliani–Miller (M–M) Hypothesis

11. The M–M Hypothesis is based on the assumption of:

a) Imperfect capital market

b) Perfect capital market

c) Asymmetric information

d) Tax differential

☑ Answer: b) Perfect capital market

12. According to M–M, dividend policy is:
    a) Very important for firm value
    b) Irrelevant to firm value
    c) Important only when taxes exist
    d) A source of financing
    ☑ Answer: b) Irrelevant to firm value
13. The M–M approach assumes that investors can create their own dividends by:
    a) Borrowing from the firm
    b) Selling part of their holdings
    c) Buying more shares
    d) Changing the payout ratio
    ☑ Answer: b) Selling part of their holdings
14. Which of the following factors makes M–M's assumption unrealistic?
    a) Taxes and transaction costs
    b) Perfect information
    c) Equal access to markets
    d) Rational investors
    ☑ Answer: a) Taxes and transaction costs
15. The concept of arbitrage in M–M theory ensures that:
    a) Firms with higher dividends have higher values
    b) Firm value remains unaffected by dividend changes
    c) Taxes increase investor returns
    d) Dividends increase retained earnings
    ☑ Answer: b) Firm value remains unaffected by dividend changesCase Study

Case Study: Dividend Decision at Zenith Technologies Ltd.

Background

Zenith Technologies Ltd. (ZTL) is a fast-growing Indian technology firm specializing in artificial intelligence and robotics. The company has maintained strong profitability over the past few years, with consistent increases in revenue and earnings.

The company's current Earnings Per Share (EPS) is ₹10, and its cost of equity (k) is estimated at 12%. The firm's management is debating whether to distribute dividends or to retain earnings for further expansion in R&D and new product development.

The company's expected rate of return on reinvested earnings (r) is 15%, and the payout ratio (D/E) is currently being reviewed at three possible levels — 0%, 40%, and 80%.

Data Summary

Particulars	Symbol	Value
Earnings per Share	E	₹10
Cost of Equity	k	12%
Return on Investment	r	15%

Particulars	Symbol	Value
Dividend Payout Ratios —		0%, 40%, 80%

Tasks / Questions

1. Application of Walter's Model

Using Walter's formula, calculate the market price per share (P) for each payout ratio:

$$P = \frac{D + (r/k)(E - D)}{k}$$

where:

- P= Market Price per Share
- D= Dividend per Share
- E= Earnings per Share
- r= Internal Rate of Return
- k= Cost of Equity

Compute and interpret:

a) The value of the share for each payout ratio.

b) Identify which payout policy maximizes the market value according to Walter's Model.

2. Application of Gordon's Model

Using Gordon's Growth Model, estimate the value of the firm's shares for a retention ratio (b) of 0.2, 0.4, and 0.6:

$$P = \frac{E(1 - b)}{k - br}$$

where $g = br$.

Tasks:

a) Calculate the market price per share under each retention ratio.

b) Interpret whether higher retention benefits shareholders.

3. M–M Hypothesis: Dividend Irrelevance

Assume that the company pays a dividend of ₹4 per share this year.

The market price before the dividend announcement is ₹120, and the firm's cost of equity (k) is 12%.

If the company announces that it will not pay dividends next year and instead reinvest the profits, calculate:

a) The expected price next year according to the M–M formula:

$$P_0 = \frac{D_1 + P_1}{1 + k}$$

b) Interpret whether the market value changes with the dividend decision.

Discussion Questions

1. Based on Walter's and Gordon's Models, should Zenith Technologies pay dividends or retain earnings?
2. How would the conclusion change if the firm's rate of return (r) falls below the cost of equity (k)?

3. According to the M–M Hypothesis, does dividend payout affect shareholder wealth? Why or why not?
4. Which of the three models do you think better represents real-world corporate behavior? Explain with reasoning.
5. How do taxes, investor preferences, and signaling effects challenge the M–M assumption of dividend irrelevance?

15.16 Reference Books

1. James C. Van Horne & John M. Wachowicz Jr. (2018), Financial Management and Policy, Pearson Education
2. Jonathan Berk & Peter DeMarzo (2022), Corporate Finance, Pearson Education
3. I.M. Pandey (2021), Financial Management, Vikas Publishing House
4. Gomase, H., Akula, S., Thakare, S. V., Shukla, H., & Chowdary, V. G. R. (2024). *Corporate finance unveiled: Insights and applications*. Zenodo. https://zenodo.org/records/13998399.
5. M.Y. Khan & P.K. Jain (2018), Financial Management: Text, Problems and Cases, McGraw Hill Education

Dr. Venu Gopalarao Chowdary

LESSON – 16

DIVIDEND POLICY IN PRACTICE

By the end of this lesson, students will be able to:

1. Understand the concept and significance of dividend policy.
2. Identify different forms of dividend policies used by companies.
3. Explain the importance of dividend stability in the market.
4. Compute and interpret Dividend Payout and Retention Ratios.
5. Analyze the impact of dividend decisions on shareholder wealth.
6. Discuss practical factors influencing dividend decisions.
7. Evaluate bonus shares, stock splits, and buybacks as dividend tools.
8. Examine signaling effects and clientele preferences in dividend policy.
9. Compare dividend policies across companies.
10. Suggest effective and balanced dividend policy strategies for corporations.

16. STRUCTURE:

16.1 INTRODUCTION

Dividend policy in practice refers to how companies determine and implement their dividend decisions in the real world, beyond theoretical models and assumptions. While financial theories such as those proposed by Walter, Gordon, and Modigliani–Miller (M–M) provide conceptual frameworks for understanding the relationship between dividends and firm value, in reality, corporate dividend behaviour is shaped by market conditions, taxation policies, investor preferences, cash flow stability, and managerial discretion.

In practice, dividend policy represents a balance between rewarding shareholders through regular income and retaining profits to finance future growth opportunities. Firms differ in their approach — some follow a stable dividend policy, paying consistent dividends over time, while others adopt a residual dividend policy, distributing dividends only after meeting investment needs. Large, mature firms with steady earnings tend to pay regular dividends, whereas fast-growing companies often prefer to reinvest profits.

16.2 FACTORS INFLUENCING DIVIDEND DECISIONS :

Practical dividend decisions are influenced by a variety of real-world factors such as:

- Legal and contractual constraints,
- Liquidity position and cash flow requirements,
- Access to capital markets,
- Tax considerations, and
- Investor expectations and signaling effects.

Corporate managers also consider the market perception of dividend changes. An increase in dividends is often interpreted by investors as a positive signal of financial strength and future prospects, while a dividend cut may be viewed negatively, even if it is strategically sound. Therefore, many firms prefer to maintain dividend stability rather than fluctuate payouts with every change in earnings.

16.3 IMPORTANCE OF DIVIDEND POLICY IN PRACTICE

Dividend policy plays a crucial role in a company's financial management strategy, as it determines how profits are distributed between shareholders and retained earnings. In practice, dividend policy is not merely an accounting or routine decision—it is a strategic financial tool that influences investor confidence, market valuation, and the firm's long-term growth prospects.

The importance of dividend policy in real-world corporate settings can be understood under the following dimensions:

1. Shareholder Wealth Maximization

A well-formulated dividend policy contributes directly to the maximization of shareholder wealth, which is the goal of financial management. Stable and predictable dividends often enhance the company's reputation in the market, leading to higher share prices and greater investor satisfaction.

2. Investor Attraction and Retention

Investors differ in their preferences for dividends versus capital gains. Some investors (such as retirees) prefer regular dividends for income, while others seek long-term growth. A clear and consistent dividend policy helps attract and retain investors whose expectations align with the company's strategy, thereby stabilizing the shareholder base.

3. Signaling Effect to the Market

In practice, changes in dividend policy convey important information about a company's financial health and outlook.

- An increase in dividends signals strong performance and confidence in future earnings.
- A decrease or omission may indicate financial constraints or uncertainty.

  Thus, dividend policy acts as a communication mechanism between management and the market.

4. Maintaining Financial Flexibility

A balanced dividend policy ensures that the company retains adequate profits for reinvestment in growth opportunities, while still meeting shareholders' expectations for returns. This helps maintain financial flexibility, ensuring that both short-term liquidity and long-term expansion goals are met.

5. Impact on Capital Structure

Dividend policy affects the financing decisions of a firm. Companies with high dividend payouts may rely more on external financing (debt or equity issues), while those retaining profits internally may strengthen their equity base. Therefore, the dividend decision is closely tied to the firm's capital structure and cost of capital.

6. Market Stability and Investor Confidence

A stable dividend policy can reduce uncertainty and speculative activity in the stock market. Regular dividends signal management's confidence and promote investor trust, which helps to stabilize the company's share price and market image over time.

7. Legal, Contractual, and Institutional Considerations

In practice, dividend decisions must comply with legal restrictions, loan covenants, and institutional guidelines. Sound dividend policy ensures compliance while optimizing profit distribution in a way that supports sustainable corporate governance.

16.4 FORMS OF DIVIDEND POLICY IN PRACTICE

In the real world, companies follow different dividend policies based on their profitability, cash flow needs, investment opportunities, and shareholder expectations. These practical approaches determine how and when dividends are distributed to shareholders.

The main forms of dividend policy in practice are explained below:

1. Stable Dividend Policy

Under a stable dividend policy, the company pays a fixed amount of dividend every year, regardless of short-term fluctuations in earnings. This approach gives investors certainty and confidence in the company's financial strength.

Types of stability:

- Constant dividend per share – A fixed amount (e.g., ₹5 per share every year).
- Constant dividend payout ratio – A fixed percentage of earnings distributed as dividends (e.g., 40% of EPS).
- Stable rupee dividend with extra dividends – A regular fixed dividend plus an additional dividend in profitable years.

Example:

Infosys Ltd. and ITC Ltd. in India maintain a stable and gradually increasing dividend payout pattern.

Advantages:

- Builds investor confidence
- Attracts income-oriented investors
- Stabilizes market price of shares

2. Constant Payout Ratio Policy

In this policy, the company maintains a fixed percentage of earnings to be paid out as dividends every year. Dividends fluctuate in absolute amount depending on profits, but the payout ratio remains the same.

Example:

If the payout ratio is 40% and the EPS is ₹10, the dividend per share (DPS) is ₹4. If EPS rises to ₹15, DPS becomes ₹6.

Advantages:

- Aligns dividends with profitability
- Ensures financial prudence in low-earning years

Disadvantages:

- Creates uncertainty in income for investors
- Not preferred by risk-averse shareholders

3. Residual Dividend Policy

A residual dividend policy follows the principle that dividends should be paid only after meeting all acceptable investment needs from retained earnings.

Steps followed:

1. Determine optimal capital budget.
2. Use retained earnings to finance projects.
3. Pay dividends from any remaining (residual) earnings.

Example:

Fast-growing tech firms like Tesla or Google (Alphabet) often follow a residual policy by reinvesting most earnings for growth.

Advantages:

- Supports reinvestment and growth
- Minimizes external financing needs

Disadvantages:

- Dividend payments become irregular
- May lead to uncertainty and dissatisfaction among shareholders

4. Irregular or No Dividend Policy

Some firms declare dividends only when sufficient profits or cash surpluses exist and may skip dividends entirely in poor years. Start-ups, capital-intensive, or rapidly growing companies often adopt this approach.

Example:

New-age technology and biotech firms frequently retain all profits for expansion and R&D.

Advantages:

- Preserves liquidity
- Suitable for volatile or growth-oriented firms

Disadvantages:

- May reduce investor confidence
- Creates uncertainty about returns

5. Hybrid or Compromise Dividend Policy

This is a blend of stable and residual policies. The company declares a minimum regular dividend (to ensure investor confidence) and an extra dividend when profits are exceptionally high.

Example:

A company may pay ₹3 per share every year and add ₹2 per share as a bonus dividend in high-profit years.

Advantages:

- Balances investor satisfaction and financial flexibility
- Maintains a steady dividend track record

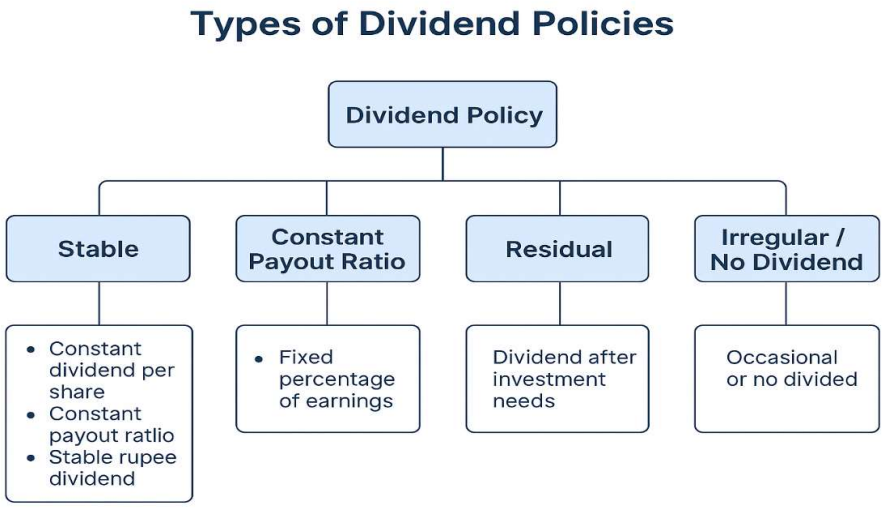


Diagram -01:

16.5 DIVIDEND STABILITY AND PAYOUT RATIOS

Dividend stability and payout ratios are key aspects of a company's dividend policy, reflecting how consistently and predictably dividends are paid to shareholders and what proportion of earnings is distributed versus retained.

Dividend Stability

Dividend stability refers to a company's policy of maintaining a consistent or gradually increasing dividend over time, regardless of fluctuations in annual earnings.

It reflects the management's commitment to providing reliable returns to shareholders.

Features of Dividend Stability:

- Dividends remain stable even when profits vary.
- Ensures investor confidence and positive market perception.
- Often preferred by institutional and conservative investors.

Types of Stable Dividend Policies:

1. Constant Dividend per Share:
   A fixed dividend (e.g., ₹5 per share) is paid annually.
2. Constant Payout Ratio:
   A fixed percentage of profits (e.g., 40%) is distributed as dividends.
3. Stable Rupee Dividend with Extra Dividend:
   A regular minimum dividend plus an additional dividend in highly profitable years.

Advantages:

- Enhances investor trust and market image.
- Reduces speculative trading in the company's stock.
- Attracts long-term investors seeking regular income.

Disadvantages:

- Puts pressure on management during low-profit years.
- May reduce funds available for reinvestment.

Dividend Payout Ratio

The dividend payout ratio (DPR) indicates what percentage of the company's net earnings is distributed to shareholders as dividends. It's a key measure of a firm's dividend policy and retention strategy.

Formula:

$$\text{Dividend Payout Ratio (DPR)} = \frac{\text{Dividend per Share (DPS)}}{\text{Earnings per Share (EPS)}} \times 100$$

Example:

If EPS = ₹10 and DPS = ₹4,
then,

$$\text{DPR} = \frac{4}{10} \times 100 = 40\%$$

This means 40% of earnings are distributed as dividends, while 60% are retained.

Payout Ratio	Interpretation	Example Firms
High (70–100%)	Mature, stable firms with limited growth opportunities; prioritize shareholder returns.	Utilities, FMCG firms (e.g., ITC, Hindustan Unilever)
Moderate (40–60%)	Balanced firms maintaining growth and dividends.	Infosys, TCS
Low (0–30%)	Growth-oriented firms reinvesting earnings for expansion.	Startups, tech firms (e.g., Tesla, Alphabet)

Table:01

Relationship Between Stability and Payout

A stable dividend policy aims to maintain consistent dividend payments, even if the payout ratio fluctuates slightly with earnings.
Conversely, a constant payout policy keeps the ratio fixed, causing dividends to fluctuate with profits.

Example:

Year	EPS (₹)	Stable DPS (₹5)	Payout Ratio (%)	Constant Payout (40%)	DPS (₹)
2022	10	5	50%	40%	4
2023	15	5	33%	40%	6
2024	8	5	62%	40%	3.2

Table 02:

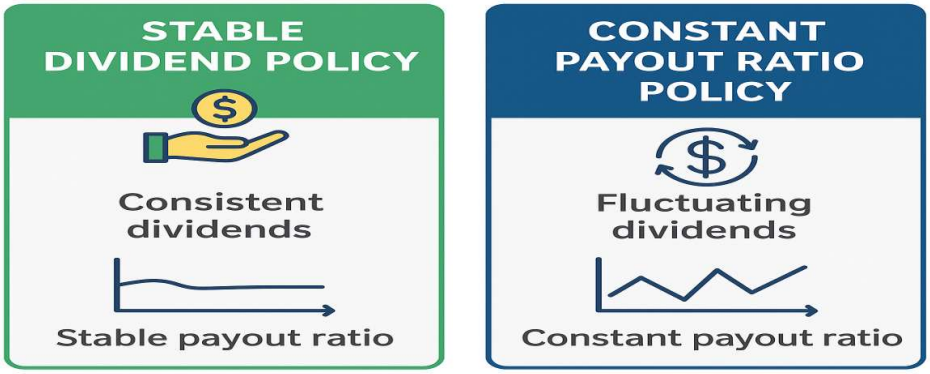


Figure 01:

16.6 BONUS ISSUES

A Bonus Issue (or Stock Dividend) refers to the issue of additional shares by a company to its existing shareholders free of cost, in proportion to their existing shareholding. Instead of paying cash dividends, the company capitalizes a part of its reserves or retained earnings to issue new shares.

Example:

If a company announces a 1:2 bonus issue, it means every shareholder will receive 1 bonus share for every 2 shares held.

16.6.1 Objectives of Issuing Bonus Shares

1. To reward shareholders without reducing cash balances.
2. To signal confidence in the company's future earnings potential.
3. To bring the share price to a more affordable range and improve liquidity.
4. To utilize accumulated reserves that are not required immediately for reinvestment.
5. To maintain a stable dividend policy while avoiding large cash payouts.

16.6.2 Sources for Issue of Bonus Shares

According to SEBI and Companies Act (India), bonus shares can be issued from:

- Free reserves built from genuine profits,
- Securities premium account, or
- Capital redemption reserve account.

16.6.3 Conditions for Issuing Bonus Shares (as per SEBI Guidelines)

1. Bonus shares can be issued only if authorized by the Articles of Association.
2. The company must not have defaulted in payment of interest or principal on debt.
3. Bonus shares must be fully paid-up shares.
4. No bonus issue shall be made in lieu of dividends.
5. Post-issue, the reserves should be adequate to support the expanded capital base.

16.6.4 Effects of Bonus Issues

Aspect	Effect
On Shareholders	Increase in the number of shares held, but the total investment value remains the same (share price adjusts downward).
On Company	No outflow of cash; capital base increases; reserves decrease.
On Market Price	The share price typically falls proportionately to maintain total market capitalization, increasing liquidity.
On Earnings per Share (EPS)	EPS decreases because total earnings are now spread over a larger number of shares.

Table 03:

Example

Suppose a company has:

- Paid-up capital: ₹10,00,000 (1,00,000 shares of ₹10 each)
- Reserves: ₹5,00,000

It declares a 1:2 bonus issue (one share for every two held).

Number of new shares issued:

= 1/2 × 1,00,000 = 50,000 shares

New paid-up capital:

= ₹10,00,000 + ₹5,00,000 = ₹15,00,000

16.6.5 Advantages and Disadvantages of Bonus Issues

Advantages:

For Shareholders:

- Increases number of shares owned
- Signals company confidence
- Improves liquidity in the market
- No tax liability (unlike cash dividends)

For the Company:

- Conserves cash resources
- Builds positive market perception
- Reduces share price, making it more affordable for new investors
- Strengthens capital base

Disadvantages

For Shareholders:

- No immediate cash benefit
- EPS and market price per share decline

For the Company:

- Future cash dividends may rise due to increased number of shares
- Reduces flexibility in using reserves

16.7 Stock Splits

A Stock Split is a corporate action in which a company divides its existing shares into multiple smaller shares to make its stock more affordable and increase its liquidity in the

market.
While the number of shares increases, the total market capitalization and shareholder wealth remain the same.
Example:
If a company announces a 2-for-1 stock split, each shareholder will receive two shares for every one share held.
So, a shareholder owning 100 shares priced at ₹1,000 each will now hold 200 shares priced at ₹500 each.

16.7.1 Objectives of Stock Splits

1. To make shares more affordable:
   When the share price becomes too high, a split reduces the price, attracting small and retail investors.
2. To improve liquidity:
   More shares in circulation lead to higher trading activity in the market.
3. To enhance market perception:
   A stock split signals the company's confidence in future performance and the desire to increase market participation.
4. To align with market norms:
   Maintains share prices within an "optimal trading range" similar to peer companies.
5. To broaden ownership base:
   Lower share prices encourage new investors to enter.

16.7.2 Types of Stock Splits

Type	Description	Example
Forward Stock Split	Increases number of shares, reduces face value. Most common.	2-for-1, 3-for-1 splits
Reverse Stock Split (Consolidation)	Reduces number of shares, increases face value; usually done to increase share price.	1-for-5 or 1-for-10 split

Table 04:

16.7.3 Advantages and Disadvantages of Stock Splits

Advantages
For Shareholders:

- Shares become more affordable.
- Easier portfolio diversification.
- No tax liability (no income involved).

☑ For Companies:

- Increases liquidity and trading volume.
- Enhances visibility and market participation.
- Creates positive sentiment if associated with growth.

Disadvantages

- May attract short-term traders rather than long-term investors.

- EPS and dividend per share decline.
- No change in intrinsic value — purely psychological effect.
- Frequent splits may be seen as manipulative or cosmetic by analysts.

16.7.4 Real-World Examples

Company	Split Ratio	Year
Apple Inc.	4-for-1	2020
Tesla Inc.	3-for-1	2022
Infosys Ltd. (India)	1:1 Bonus & 2-for-1 Split	2018

Table 05:

16.8 CORPORATE BEHAVIOUR

Corporate Behaviour refers to the set of values, beliefs, attitudes, and actions that define how a company and its employees conduct business, interact with stakeholders, and uphold organizational culture. It represents the personality of the organization — how it behaves internally (toward employees) and externally (toward customers, investors, regulators, and society).

Corporate behaviour is the collective conduct of all individuals within an organization.

It determines how the company is perceived by the public and how effectively it can achieve its objectives.

It includes:

- Decision-making processes
- Communication style
- Leadership approach
- Ethical standards
- Social responsibility
- In essence, corporate behavior = corporate culture + management practices + ethical conduct.

16.8.1 Importance of Corporate Behaviour

1. Enhances Organizational Image:
   Positive corporate behaviour strengthens the company's reputation, helping attract customers, investors, and talent.
2. Encourages Employee Commitment:
   A respectful and ethical corporate culture promotes motivation, loyalty, and teamwork.
3. Improves Stakeholder Relations:
   Transparent and fair behavior builds trust among shareholders, regulators, suppliers, and the public.
4. Drives Long-Term Profitability:
   Ethical behavior and strong governance reduce legal risks and increase business sustainability.
5. Promotes Corporate Governance and Accountability:
   Ensures that management decisions align with stakeholder interests and regulatory frameworks.

16.8.2 Dimensions of Corporate Behaviour

Corporate behaviour operates on three key levels:

Level	Focus Area	Description
1. Internal Behaviour	Employee relations	How employees interact, leadership style, communication, teamwork, conflict resolution
2. External Behaviour	Market and customers	How the firm treats customers, competitors, and suppliers
3. Social Behaviour	Society and environment	CSR activities, sustainability, compliance with laws, ethical standards

Table 06:

16.8.3 Types of Corporate Behaviour

Type	Description	Example
Ethical Behaviour	Adherence to moral principles and integrity	Honest accounting, fair pricing
Innovative Behaviour	Focus on creativity and continuous improvement	Google's innovation culture
Authoritative Behaviour	Centralized decision-making and control	Traditional manufacturing firms
Customer-Centric Behaviour	Prioritizing customer satisfaction	Amazon, Apple
Socially Responsible Behaviour	Commitment to environment and community	TATA Group's CSR initiatives

Table 07:

16.8.4 Determinants of Corporate Behaviour

Corporate behaviour is influenced by a mix of internal and external factors:

A. Internal Determinants

1. Leadership Style – Autocratic, democratic, or transformational leaders shape workplace ethics and motivation.
2. Corporate Culture – Shared values, beliefs, and traditions define expected conduct.
3. Organizational Structure – Degree of hierarchy and communication openness affects behavior.
4. Policies and Procedures – Clear HR and ethical policies guide appropriate actions.

B. External Determinants

1. Regulatory Environment – Compliance requirements ensure responsible conduct.
2. Market Conditions – Competitive pressures may influence ethical or aggressive behavior.
3. Social Expectations – Public opinion and social norms demand accountability.
4. Globalization – Exposure to international markets introduces new cultural and ethical standards.

16.8.5 Corporate Behavior and Ethics

Corporate behavior is closely linked to business ethics.
A company's ethical conduct determines:

- How it handles profits and competition
- How it treats employees and consumers
- How it fulfils its Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR)

Unethical corporate behavior (e.g., fraud, insider trading, false advertising) can severely damage a company's reputation and sustainability.
Examples of Corporate Behavior
Positive Corporate Behavior:

- Tata Group (India): Known for ethics, employee welfare, and social responsibility.
- Google: Encourages innovation and open communication culture.

Negative Corporate Behavior:

- Enron Scandal (USA): Manipulated financial statements leading to corporate collapse.
- Volkswagen Emissions Scandal: Falsified emission data, damaging credibility.

16.8.6 Corporate Behavior and Organizational Performance

Studies show that companies with strong corporate behavior enjoy:

- Higher employee engagement
- Stronger customer loyalty
- Better financial performance
- Reduced turnover and risk
- Sustainable competitive advantage

Thus, good corporate behavior is not only ethical but strategically profitable.

16.9 SUMMARY

Dividend policy in practice refers to how companies apply theoretical principles of dividend decisions in real-world situations to balance shareholder returns and business growth. It involves determining how much profit should be distributed as dividends and how much should be retained for reinvestment.
In practice, dividend decisions are strategic and influenced by multiple internal and external factors such as profitability, liquidity, taxation, shareholder expectations, and market conditions. Companies use dividend policy as a tool for signaling financial strength, ensuring investor confidence, and maintaining long-term stability.

16.10 KEY TERMS

1. Dividend Policy: The strategy a company follows to decide how much profit should be distributed as dividends and how much should be retained for reinvestment.
2. Stable Dividend Policy: A policy of paying a fixed or gradually increasing dividend over time, regardless of earnings fluctuations.
3. Constant Payout Ratio Policy: A policy where a fixed percentage of profits is distributed as dividends each year.
4. Residual Dividend Policy: Dividends are paid only after meeting all investment and reserve requirements; residual profits are distributed.

5. Dividend Payout Ratio (DPR): The percentage of earnings paid out as dividends. Formula: DPR = (Dividend per Share / Earnings per Share) × 100.
6. Bonus Shares: Additional shares issued to existing shareholders free of cost by converting reserves into share capital.
7. Stock Split: Division of existing shares into smaller units to make shares more affordable and increase market liquidity.

16.11 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

16.12 Short questions

1. What is meant by "Dividend Policy in Practice"?
2. How does a company's practical dividend policy differ from theoretical models?
3. Define *dividend stability*. Why is it important for investors?
4. What are the major forms of dividend policies followed by companies in practice?
5. Explain the term *dividend payout ratio*. How is it calculated?
6. What is a *retention ratio*? Why do firms retain a portion of their earnings?
7. Differentiate between *interim* and *final* dividends.

16.13 Essay questions

1. A company earns ₹10,00,000 after tax and decides to pay 40% of its earnings as dividends. Compute the dividend payout ratio and the retention ratio.
2. Company A follows a stable dividend policy and pays ₹4 per share each year. Company B pays 50% of earnings as dividends. Which company's dividend policy would attract risk-averse investors? Why?
3. Assume a company's EPS increased from ₹12 to ₹15, but its dividend per share remained ₹6. Discuss the implications for investors.
4. Explain how the *clientele effect* influences practical dividend decisions.
5. Describe the *signaling effect* of a change in dividend payout. Provide one example.

16.14 MCQs

1. Dividend policy primarily deals with:
   a) Capital budgeting decisions
   b) Financing decisions
   c) Distribution of profits between dividends and retained earnings
   d) Capital structure decisions
   Answer: ☑ c) Distribution of profits between dividends and retained earnings
2. A stable dividend policy means:
   a) Paying the same dividend every year irrespective of earnings
   b) Paying no dividends during losses
   c) Paying dividends that fluctuate with profits
   d) Declaring bonus shares every year
   Answer: ☑ a) Paying the same dividend every year irrespective of earnings
3. The portion of earnings retained in the business is called:
   a) Dividend payout ratio
   b) Retention ratio
   c) Earnings per share

d) Dividend yield

Answer: ☑ b) Retention ratio

4. The dividend payout ratio is calculated as:
   a) (Earnings / Dividends) × 100
   b) (Dividends / Earnings) × 100
   c) (Dividends / Share Capital) × 100
   d) (Earnings / Retained Earnings) × 100
   Answer: ☑ b) (Dividends / Earnings) × 100
5. A company paying a fixed percentage of earnings as dividend each year follows:
   a) Stable dividend policy
   b) Constant payout ratio policy
   c) Residual dividend policy
   d) Hybrid dividend policy
   Answer: ☑ b) Constant payout ratio policy
6. In a residual dividend policy, dividends are paid:
   a) From the capital base
   b) Only after meeting investment requirements
   c) Every quarter
   d) Before interest payments
   Answer: ☑ b) Only after meeting investment requirements
7. Bonus shares are issued:
   a) Out of capital reserves
   b) Out of accumulated profits
   c) To increase share price
   d) By selling treasury shares
   Answer: ☑ b) Out of accumulated profits
8. The Clientele Effect suggests that:
   a) Companies target specific customers for dividends
   b) Investors prefer dividend policies that suit their income needs
   c) Dividends have no effect on investors
   d) Dividend policy is irrelevant to investor decisions
   Answer: ☑ b) Investors prefer dividend policies that suit their income needs
9. Financial flexibility affects dividend policy because:
   a) Companies with higher flexibility can adjust dividends easily
   b) Companies cannot change dividends once declared
   c) Flexible firms avoid paying any dividends
   d) It has no connection with dividend decisions
   Answer: ☑ a) Companies with higher flexibility can adjust dividends easily
10. Companies like Infosys and TCS are known for which type of dividend policy?
    a) Residual
    b) Unstable
    c) Stable and regular dividends
    d) No-dividend policy
    Answer: ☑ c) Stable and regular dividends

11. A reduction in dividend payout generally results in:
    a) Increase in market price
    b) Negative signal to investors
    c) Improvement in investor confidence
12. Which of the following best summarizes the ultimate goal of dividend policy?
    a) To maximize shareholder wealth
    b) To maintain liquidity
    c) To reduce taxes
    d) To increase retained earnings
    Answer: ☑ a) To maximize shareholder wealth

16.15 Case Study

Dividend Policy in Practice — Infosys Ltd.

Background

Infosys Ltd., one of India's leading IT companies, has consistently demonstrated a strong financial performance and a shareholder-friendly approach. Over the years, Infosys has maintained a reputation for stable dividend payments, stock bonuses, and share buybacks — aligning with its philosophy of *maximizing shareholder value*.

The company follows a progressive dividend policy, which aims to:

- Distribute a steady stream of dividends,
- Reward shareholders for their long-term commitment, and
- Maintain sufficient reserves for future growth and expansion.

Key Financial Highlights (Hypothetical Data for Analysis)

Particulars	FY 2022-23	FY 2023-24
Net Profit (₹ crore)	24,200	29,800
Dividend per Share (₹)	34	36
Earnings per Share (₹)	55	60
Dividend Payout Ratio (%)	61.8%	60%
Retained Earnings (₹ crore)	9,250	11,920

Infosys has also issued bonus shares and conducted share buybacks in previous years, signaling management's confidence in future growth.

The Scenario

In FY 2024–25, the company is evaluating its future dividend strategy due to the following challenges:

1. Volatility in global IT spending and exchange rate fluctuations.
2. Increased capital expenditure requirements for cloud infrastructure and AI integration.
3. Rising shareholder expectations for consistent or higher dividends.
4. Regulatory considerations regarding profit repatriation from overseas subsidiaries.

The Board of Directors is now faced with a decision:

Should Infosys continue its *high payout policy* to maintain investor confidence, or should it *retain more earnings* to fund long-term strategic initiatives?

Discussion Questions

1. Explain Infosys's dividend policy in light of the data presented. What kind of policy does the company follow — stable, constant payout, residual, or hybrid?
2. Based on the financial data, compute the dividend payout ratio and retention ratio for both years. What trend do you observe?
3. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of maintaining a high dividend payout ratio.
4. How might the company's investment opportunities and liquidity position influence its future dividend decisions?
5. What role does dividend signaling play in the context of Infosys's market perception?
6. If Infosys reduces its dividend next year, how might investors interpret this move?
7. In what ways could bonus issues or share buybacks act as alternatives to cash dividends for Infosys?
8. Evaluate how Infosys's dividend policy contributes to shareholder wealth maximization.

16.16 REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Harold Bierman (2001), Increasing Shareholder Value: Distribution Policy, A Corporate Finance Challenge, Springer

2. Richard A. Brealey, Stewart C. Myers & Franklin Allen (2022), Principles of Corporate Finance, McGraw Hill Education.

3. M.Y. Khan & P.K. Jain (2018), Financial Management: Text, Problems and Cases, McGraw Hill Education

4. Gomase, H., Akula, S., Thakare, S. V., Shukla, H., & Chowdary, V. G. R. (2024). *Corporate finance unveiled: Insights and applications*. Zenodo. https://zenodo.org/records/13998399.

Dr. Venu Gopalarao Chowdary

LESSON – 17

WORKING CAPITAL MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, the learner will be able to:

- Understand the meaning, nature, and significance of working capital in business operations.
- Explain the determinants of working capital requirements for different firms.
- Analyse the liquidity–profitability trade-off and determine optimum working capital levels.
- Estimate working capital needs using practical approaches.
- Identify the major sources of short-term finance, including trade credit, bank finance, and spontaneous financing.
- Understand working capital control systems such as ABC analysis, ageing schedules, cash budgeting, and inventory control.
- Apply concepts to real-world business situations using examples and numerical illustrations.

17.0 . STRUCTURE OF THE LESSON (HEADINGS ONLY)

17.1 Introduction to Working Capital

In every business organisation, the continuity of operations depends not only on long-term investments made in fixed assets but equally on the funds required for daily functioning. These everyday activities—purchasing raw materials, paying wages, maintaining stock levels, extending credit to customers, managing utilities, transportation, packaging, marketing, and undertaking numerous operational tasks—require a steady pool of short-term funds known as working capital. Without adequate working capital, even the most profitable or technologically advanced businesses can find themselves paralysed.

Working capital functions as the life-blood of a business. It circulates through the operating cycle: cash is used to purchase raw materials, raw materials are converted into work-in-progress, WIP becomes finished goods, finished goods are sold and converted to receivables, and finally receivables are collected and converted back into cash. This cycle repeats continuously. Any disruption in this delicate chain may interrupt operations and lead to financial distress.

Thus, the management of working capital involves maintaining the right amount of funds at the right time, ensuring that the business neither suffers from shortages of liquidity nor locks up excess funds in unproductive assets. The challenge is to strike a balance between liquidity and profitability—a theme explored throughout this lesson.

17.2 MEANING AND NATURE OF WORKING CAPITAL

Working capital is generally understood as the capital required for meeting short-term obligations and sustaining daily operations. Depending on how it is interpreted, it can be examined under two perspectives: gross working capital and net working capital.

Gross working capital represents the total current assets of the firm. These assets include cash balances, bank deposits, receivables, inventory, marketable securities, advances, and prepaid expenses. This concept emphasises the investment made in current assets without regard to the financing sources. Focus on gross working capital draws attention to the scale of operations and the need to invest continuously in circulating assets.

Net working capital, on the other hand, denotes the difference between current assets and current liabilities. It represents the liquidity buffer available to meet short-term obligations. A positive net working capital indicates that the firm has more current assets than current liabilities, implying solvency and the ability to meet obligations on time. Conversely, negative working capital suggests that liabilities exceed current assets, which may signal weak liquidity or an overly aggressive working capital policy.

The nature of working capital is dynamic. It fluctuates with changes in production levels, seasonal demand, supplier terms, inventory cycles, and business growth. Unlike fixed capital, which is invested for long-term benefits, working capital moves rapidly through the operating cycle, making it highly sensitive to internal management practices and external economic conditions.

17.3 SIGNIFICANCE OF WORKING CAPITAL

Working capital possesses immense significance because it ensures the continuity and stability of business operations. Without adequate working capital, firms may be unable to procure essential inputs, meet payroll demands, honour trade credit obligations, or manage routine expenses. Even organisations with high profitability or strong fixed asset bases can collapse if they lack sufficient liquidity.

The significance of working capital extends beyond liquidity. It plays a decisive role in maintaining operational efficiency. For instance, firms with healthy working capital can avail cash discounts from suppliers, negotiate better credit terms, maintain optimal inventory levels, and respond quickly to market opportunities. In contrast, firms with inadequate working capital often face higher financing costs, strained supplier relationships, production delays, and an inability to capitalize on growth prospects.

From the perspective of financial health, working capital also influences credit ratings. Banks and financial institutions assess a firm's working capital position before extending credit facilities. A strong working capital base reflects prudent management and financial discipline, enhancing the organisation's credibility and bargaining power in financial markets.

Real-world business failures frequently trace back to poor working capital management rather than lack of profitability. Many small and medium enterprises fail despite growing sales because their receivables collection is inefficient or inventory remains tied up for excessively long periods. The high-growth Indian e-commerce ventures of the early 2010s provide

excellent illustrations; despite rising demand, several start-ups collapsed due to relentless working capital pressure rather than lack of market acceptance.

Thus, working capital is not just an accounting measure; it is a strategic tool that underpins operational continuity, financial health, and long-term value creation.

17.4 DETERMINANTS OF WORKING CAPITAL

The working capital needs of a business are influenced by a combination of internal and external factors, and these determinants vary widely across industries, firm sizes, business cycles, and managerial strategies.

One of the most important determinants is the nature of business. Manufacturing firms typically need large investments in raw materials, work-in-progress, and finished goods, requiring substantial working capital. Trading firms require high inventory of finished goods, often increasing working capital. Conversely, service firms like consultancies or software companies require significantly less working capital, as they do not hold substantial inventories.

The size and scale of operations also affect working capital. Larger firms often enjoy economies of scale, better supplier credit, efficient bargaining power, and established receivables and payables cycles, enabling them to operate with relatively lower working capital ratios. Smaller businesses face tighter credit terms, higher inventory holding costs, and weaker bargaining power, often requiring higher working capital relative to sales.

Production policies, such as the length of the operating cycle, significantly determine working capital needs. A longer operating cycle—perhaps due to slower production processes, longer receivables periods, or high inventory—results in higher working capital requirements. Industries such as pharmaceuticals, shipbuilding, and heavy engineering illustrate long operating cycles, whereas FMCG companies like ITC or HUL have short operating cycles and fast inventory turnover.

Credit policies, both on the side of receivables and payables, play a crucial role. Firms offering liberal credit to customers need more working capital to support receivables. In contrast, firms enjoying extended supplier credit can reduce the dependence on additional working capital financing. For example, a retailer like DMart maintains negative working capital due to strong supplier credit and fast inventory turnover.Economic conditions such as inflation also influence working capital needs. During inflationary periods, firms need more funds to carry the same level of inventory and receivables. Additionally, competitive pressures, seasonal demand fluctuations, business expansion, government regulations, and taxation policies impact working capital requirements in practice.

Thus, working capital determination is not a standardised process. It requires a contextual understanding of business operations, industry characteristics, financial policies, and environmental conditions.

17.5 OPTIMUM LEVEL OF WORKING CAPITAL

Determining the optimum level of working capital involves balancing liquidity and profitability. This trade-off is fundamental to financial management. Excessive working capital leads to idle funds, lower returns, and inefficient operations. A surplus of inventory increases carrying costs and the risk of obsolescence. Large cash balances earn negligible returns. On the other hand, insufficient working capital increases the risk of liquidity crises, forcing the firm to rely on costly short-term borrowing or miss out on profitable opportunities.

17.6 LIQUIDITY–PROFITABILITY TRADE-OFF

The liquidity–profitability trade-off reflects the dual objective of ensuring solvency while maximizing profits. Firms adopting a conservative working capital policy maintain high levels of current assets, reducing risk but lowering profitability. At the opposite end, an aggressive policy minimizes investment in current assets, increasing profitability but raising liquidity risk. A moderate policy balances the two extremes.

In real-world practice, companies choose policies based on business risk profiles. Banks and insurers adopt conservative policies due to high systemic risk. High-growth manufacturing firms may follow aggressive policies to maximise returns. Firms like Infosys maintain significant cash reserves for strategic flexibility, while retailers like DMart optimize cash flows with minimal working capital investment. Each strategy reflects conscious choices about liquidity, solvency, risk tolerance, and profitability.

17.7 ESTIMATION OF WORKING CAPITAL NEEDS

Estimating working capital requirements is a practical task that involves understanding the business's operating cycle. The commonly used method is the operating cycle approach, which measures the time between paying for raw materials and collecting cash from customers.

A longer operating cycle requires more working capital, as funds remain tied up for a greater duration. Estimating working capital through the operating cycle involves assessing raw material storage time, production time, finished goods holding period, and receivables collection period, and offsetting these by supplier credit.

Another frequently used method is estimating working capital as a percentage of projected sales. This method is particularly useful for fast-moving industries where sales and working capital maintain a stable relationship.

Large firms use advanced forecasting techniques, including cash budgeting, regression models, and machine-learning tools to estimate working capital with greater precision. These methods incorporate seasonality, consumer demand variations, credit behaviour, and macroeconomic conditions.

Modern companies increasingly adopt data-driven approaches. For example, Amazon uses predictive analytics to estimate optimal inventory levels by examining past sales trends, consumer behaviour, and logistics efficiency.

Numerical Example 1: Estimation Using Operating Cycle

A manufacturing firm provides:

- Raw material holding = 30 days
- WIP = 10 days
- Finished goods = 20 days
- Debtors = 40 days
- Payables = 25 days

Operating Cycle:

$$30 + 10 + 20 + 40 - 25 = 75 \text{ days}$$

If annual operating cost = ₹36 crore:

Daily cost = 36 crore / 360 = ₹0.10 crore

Working capital needed:

$$WC = 75 \times 0.10 = ₹7.5 \text{ crore}$$

Numerical Example 2: Percentage of Sales Method

Given:
Projected sales = ₹10 crore
Historical working capital ratio = 25%
Working capital required:

$$WC = 10 \times 0.25 = ₹2.5 \text{ crore}$$

17.8 SOURCES OF SHORT-TERM FINANCE

Working capital financing comes from a variety of internal and external sources. One of the most common sources is trade credit. Trade credit arises from suppliers providing goods on credit terms, creating accounts payable. It is often considered a spontaneous and cost-effective source of finance. Suppliers offer credit to promote sales, retain customers, and gain competitive advantage. The content provided highlights how trade credit is flexible, inexpensive, and widely available, but its misuse or delayed payment may harm credit reputation.

Bank finance remains the backbone of working capital financing for many firms. Banks offer cash credit, overdrafts, short-term loans, bill discounting, and letters of credit to firms based on their working capital cycle and collateral. The availability and cost of bank finance depend on credit rating, financial strength, business prospects, and banking regulations.

Large companies also raise funds through commercial papers, a money-market instrument offering short-term funds at competitive rates. Factoring and invoice discounting allow firms to convert receivables into immediate cash. Firms additionally rely on internally generated funds like accruals (wages payable, taxes payable), which act as temporary free sources of finance.

Thus, the choice of financing depends on cost, flexibility, convenience, risk, and availability. Modern financial systems encourage diversified funding to enhance liquidity resilience.

17.9WORKING CAPITAL CONTROL SYSTEMS

Efficient control of working capital ensures that funds are used productively and risks are minimized. Firms employ scientific control techniques such as inventory management using ABC analysis, which classifies inventory based on value significance. EOQ (Economic Order Quantity) helps determine optimal order size by balancing ordering and holding costs. Just-In-Time systems reduce inventory levels dramatically, increasing cash flow efficiency.

Receivables are monitored through ageing schedules, credit scoring, and collection policies. Cash budgets provide detailed forecasts of inflows and outflows, enabling firms to anticipate shortfalls and plan financing. Technology now plays a vital role—ERP systems, artificial intelligence, and data analytics give firms real-time visibility into working capital positions across global operations.

Companies like Toyota, Dell, DMart, and Amazon are known for world-class working capital control systems that enable fast cash cycles, lower financing costs, and superior profitability.

17.10 . SUMMARY

Working capital is vital for maintaining liquidity, profitability, and operational continuity. Its determinants range from business nature to supplier terms. Proper estimation and financing of working capital ensure financial stability. Tools such as inventory control, cash budgeting, trade credit management, and bank finance support working capital efficiency.

17.11. KEYWORDS

Working Capital, Operating Cycle, Trade Credit, Liquidity, Profitability, Short-term Finance, ABC Analysis, Factoring, Payables, Inventory Management.

17.12 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

Short Answer Questions

1. Define working capital and distinguish between gross and net working capital.
2. What is the operating cycle and why is it important?
3. List any four determinants of working capital.
4. Explain liquidity–profitability trade-off.
5. What is trade credit? Why is it called spontaneous financing?
6. How does inflation affect working capital needs?
7. Name any three short-term financing sources.
8. What is ABC analysis in inventory control?

Long Answer Questions

1. Discuss the significance of working capital in ensuring business continuity. Provide real-world examples.
2. Explain the determinants of working capital requirement for a manufacturing firm.
3. Elaborate on the liquidity–profitability trade-off with detailed illustrations.
4. Explain methods of estimating working capital and solve one numerical example.
5. Describe the major sources of short-term finance and evaluate their suitability for different firms.
6. Discuss working capital control systems and justify their importance in modern organisations.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQs)

1. Working capital refers to:
   A. Fixed assets
   B. Long-term liabilities
   C. Current assets minus current liabilities
   D. Total assets
   Answer: C
2. A longer operating cycle requires:
   A. Lower working capital
   B. Higher working capital
   C. No working capital
   D. Negative working capital
   Answer: B
3. Trade credit is considered:
   A. Long-term finance
   B. Spontaneous short-term finance
   C. Equity finance
   D. Factoring
   Answer: B
4. Liquidity refers to:
   A. Profitability
   B. Ability to meet short-term obligations
   C. Shareholder returns

D. Market expansion
Answer: B

CASE STUDY

"Star Foods Ltd – The Working Capital Challenge"
Star Foods Ltd is a rapidly growing FMCG company manufacturing packaged snacks. Sales have increased by 30% in the last year, but the company faces severe cash flow shortages.
Information:

- Inventory days increased from 40 to 60
- Debtor collection period increased from 25 to 40 days
- Payable days reduced from 35 to 25 due to loss of supplier confidence
- Company offers liberal credit to push sales
- Bank rejected additional credit request citing poor working capital planning

Discussion Questions

1. Calculate Star Foods' operating cycle (old and new).
2. Explain how sales can increase but cash flow worsen.
3. Suggest working capital control measures.
4. Identify financing sources Star Foods can use immediately.

A. PROBLEMS ON ESTIMATING WORKING CAPITAL REQUIREMENTS

Problem 1 (Simple Operating Cycle Estimate)
A company has the following operating data:

- Raw material storage: 20 days
- WIP period: 10 days
- Finished goods storage: 15 days
- Debtors collection period: 30 days
- Creditors payment period: 25 days
- Annual operating cost: ₹18,00,000

Required:
Compute working capital requirement using the Operating Cycle Method.
Problem 2 (Simple % of Sales Approach)
A firm's annual sales are ₹80 lakh.
Based on past experience, its working capital requirement is 20% of sales.
Required:
Estimate the working capital requirement.
Problem 3 (Cash Cost & WC Requirement)
A business has annual cash operating expenses of ₹54,00,000.
Operating cycle is 45 days.
Required:
Estimate working capital requirement.
Problem 4 (Detailed Operating Cycle with Cost Breakdown)
A manufacturing company provides the following information:

- Raw material consumption: ₹30,00,000 per annum
- Raw material holding period: 30 days
- WIP holding period: 10 days, with 60% completion
- Finished goods storage: 20 days
- Debtor collection period: 25 days
- Credit period allowed by suppliers: 30 days

- Annual overheads (cash expenses): ₹12,00,000

Required:
Compute working capital requirement.

Problem 5 (Production-Based WC Estimate)
A company produces 24,000 units per year.
Cost structure per unit:

- Raw material: ₹50
- Direct wages: ₹20
- Production overheads (50% cash): ₹30

Holding periods:

- Raw material: 1 month
- WIP: ½ month
- Finished goods: 1 month
- Debtors: 2 months
- Creditors: 1 month

Required:
Calculate working capital requirement.

Problem 6 (Working Capital with Cash Balance Requirement)
A firm desires to maintain a minimum cash balance of ₹50,000.
Other information:

- Operating cycle = 60 days
- Annual operating cost = ₹36,00,000

Required:
Compute total working capital needed including cash buffer.

Problem 7 (Inflation Impact on Working Capital)
A company currently needs ₹12,00,000 in working capital based on the following operating cycle:

- Raw material holding: 30 days
- Finished goods: 15 days
- Debtors: 20 days
- Creditors: 25 days

Next year, prices of raw materials, labour, and overheads are expected to increase by 15%.
Sales volume and operating cycle days remain the same.
Required:
Estimate the revised working capital requirement for next year.

Problem 8 (Comparative WC Requirement Between Policies)
A company is considering two credit policies:
Policy A:

- Credit sales: ₹50,00,000
- Average collection period: 30 days

Policy B:

- Credit sales: ₹60,00,000
- Average collection period: 45 days

Cost of capital = 12%
Variable cost ratio = 70%
Required:

1. Calculate additional investment in receivables under Policy B.
2. Compute the opportunity cost of switching to Policy B.
3. Decide which policy is preferable financially.

Problem 9 (Comprehensive WC Requirement With Variable Terms)
A firm manufactures a product with the following cost structure per unit:

- Raw materials: ₹30
- Labour: ₹20
- Variable overheads: ₹10
- Fixed overheads: ₹20 (40% cash only)

Production: 1,80,000 units per year
Selling price: ₹120 per unit
Holding periods:

- Raw materials: 2 months
- WIP: 1 month (50% completion)
- Finished goods: 1 month
- Debtors: 1.5 months
- Creditors for raw materials: 1 month

Firm wants to maintain 10% of total working capital as safety margin.
Required:
Compute working capital requirement.

Problem 1 Solution – Simple Operating Cycle Method
Given:

- RM storage = 20 days
- WIP = 10 days
- FG storage = 15 days
- Debtors = 30 days
- Creditors = 25 days
- Annual operating cost = ₹18,00,000

Step 1: Compute Operating Cycle

$$OC = RM + WIP + FG + Debtors - Creditors$$
$$OC = 20 + 10 + 15 + 30 - 25 = 50 \text{ days}$$

Step 2: Compute Daily Operating Cost

$$\text{Daily cost} = \frac{18,00,000}{360} = ₹5,000$$

Step 3: Working Capital Requirement

$$WC = 50 \times 5,000 = ₹2,50,000$$

Working Capital Required = ₹2,50,000

Problem 2 Solution – % of Sales Method
Given:
Sales = ₹80,00,000
WC requirement = 20%

$$WC = 80,00,000 \times 0.20 = ₹16,00,000$$

Working Capital Required = ₹16,00,000

Problem 3 Solution – Cash Cost Method
Operating expenses = ₹54,00,000
Operating cycle = 45 days
Step 1: Daily cost

$$\frac{54,00,000}{360} = ₹15,000$$

Step 2: Working capital

$$WC = 45 \times 15,000 = ₹6,75,000$$

Working Capital Required = ₹6,75,000

Problem 4 Solution – Detailed WC Estimation

Given:

Raw material consumption = ₹30,00,000
Raw material holding = 30 days
WIP = 10 days (60% complete)
FG = 20 days
Debtors = 25 days
Creditors = 30 days
Overheads = ₹12,00,000

Step 1: Compute Daily Costs

Total annual cost = Raw material + Overheads

$$30,00,000 + 12,00,000 = 42,00,000$$

$$\text{Daily cost} = \frac{42,00,000}{360} = ₹11,666.67$$

Step 2: Compute Components

Raw Material Investment

$$RM = 30 \times 11,666.67 = ₹3,50,000$$

WIP Investment

60% completion → multiply by 0.60

$$WIP = 10 \times 11,666.67 \times 0.60 = ₹70,000$$

Finished Goods

$$FG = 20 \times 11,666.67 = ₹2,33,333$$

Debtors

$$Debtors = 25 \times 11,666.67 = ₹2,91,667$$

Creditors

Only raw materials involved:

$$\text{Daily RM} = \frac{30,00,000}{360} = 8,333.33$$

$$Creditors = 30 \times 8,333.33 = ₹2,50,000$$

Step 3: Total WC Requirement

$$WC = RM + WIP + FG + Debtors - Creditors$$
$$WC = 3,50,000 + 70,000 + 2,33,333 + 2,91,667 - 2,50,000$$
$$WC = ₹7,95,000$$

Working Capital Required = ₹7,95,000

Problem 5 Solution – Production-Based WC Estimate

Step 1: Compute Annual Costs

Cost Component	Amount (₹)
RM	24,000 × 50 = ₹12,00,000
Wages	24,000 × 20 = ₹4,80,000
Overheads (50% cash)	24,000 × 30 × 0.5 = ₹3,60,000

Total cash cost = 12,00,000 + 4,80,000 + 3,60,000 = ₹20,40,000

Daily cost

$$\frac{20,40,000}{360} = ₹5,666.67$$

Step 2: Compute Components

Raw materials (1 month)

$$RM = 30 \times 5,666.67 = ₹1,70,000$$

WIP (1/2 month, 50% completion)

$$WIP = 15 \times 5,666.67 \times 0.5 = ₹42,500$$

Finished Goods (1 month)

$$FG = 30 \times 5,666.67 = ₹1,70,000$$

Debtors (2 months)

$$Debtors = 60 \times 5,666.67 = ₹3,40,000$$

Creditors (1 month for RM)

$$RM\ daily = \frac{12,00,000}{360} = ₹3,333.33$$

$$Creditors = 30 \times 3,333.33 = ₹1,00,000$$

Step 3: Total WC

$$WC = 1,70,000 + 42,500 + 1,70,000 + 3,40,000 - 1,00,000$$

$$WC = ₹5,22,500$$

Working Capital Required = ₹5,22,500

Problem 6 Solution – Including Cash Balance

Operating cycle = 60 days

Annual cost = ₹36,00,000

Cash balance = ₹50,000

Daily cost:

$$\frac{36,00,000}{360} = 10,000$$

$$WC = 60 \times 10,000 = 6,00,000$$

Add cash buffer:

$$6,00,000 + 50,000 = ₹6,50,000$$

Working Capital Required = ₹6,50,000

Problem 7 Solution – Inflation Impact

Current WC = ₹12,00,000

Inflation = 15%

$$WC_{new} = 12,00,000 \times 1.15 = ₹13,80,000$$

Revised Working Capital = ₹13,80,000

Problem 8 Solution – Credit Policy Analysis

Step 1: Additional investment in receivables

Debtors under A:

$$\frac{50,00,000}{360} \times 30 = 4,16,667$$

Debtors under B:

$$\frac{60,00,000}{360} \times 45 = 7,50,000$$

Incremental:

$$7,50,000 - 4,16,667 = 3,33,333$$

Step 2: Opportunity cost

Contribution margin = 30%
Profit from expansion:
*Contribution under B

$$60{,}00{,}000 \times 0.30 = 18{,}00{,}000$$

Contribution under A:

$$50{,}00{,}000 \times 0.30 = 15{,}00{,}000$$

Incremental profit:

$$18{,}00{,}000 - 15{,}00{,}000 = 3{,}00{,}000$$

Opportunity cost:

$$3{,}33{,}333 \times 12\% = 40{,}000$$

Net benefit:

$$3{,}00{,}000 - 40{,}000 = 2{,}60{,}000$$

Policy B is financially better (higher net gain).

Problem 9 (Restated)

A firm manufactures a product with the following cost structure per unit:

- Raw materials = ₹30
- Labour = ₹20
- Variable overheads = ₹10
- Fixed overheads = ₹20 (only 40% of this is cash cost)

Additional information:

- Annual production = 1,80,000 units
- Selling price per unit = ₹120

Holding periods:

- Raw materials: 2 months
- Work-in-progress (WIP): 1 month, 50% completion
- Finished goods: 1 month
- Debtors (credit period to customers): 1.5 months
- Creditors for raw materials: 1 month

The firm wants to maintain 10% of total working capital as a safety margin.
Required: Compute the working capital requirement.

Step 1: Identify the *cash cost* per unit

We are estimating working capital, so we focus on cash costs, not total cost including non-cash items (like depreciation).
Given per-unit cost:

- Raw materials: ₹30
- Labour: ₹20
- Variable overheads: ₹10
- Fixed overheads: ₹20 (only 40% is cash)

First calculate the cash portion of fixed overheads:

$$\text{Cash fixed OH per unit} = 20 \times 40\% = ₹8$$

Now, the total cash cost per unit is:

$$\text{Cash cost per unit} = 30 + 20 + 10 + 8 = ₹68$$

So, for working capital, we'll use ₹68 per unit as the relevant cash cost.

Step 2: Compute annual cash costs

Annual production = 1,80,000 units.
Now compute each cash cost for the whole year:

1. Raw materials per year

$$1{,}80{,}000 \times 30 = ₹54{,}00{,}000$$

2. Labour per year

$$1{,}80{,}000 \times 20 = ₹36{,}00{,}000$$

Variable OH per year

$$1{,}80{,}000 \times 10 = ₹18{,}00{,}000$$

Cash fixed OH per year

$$1{,}80{,}000 \times 8 = ₹14{,}40{,}000$$

Now add them to get total annual cash cost:

$$54{,}00{,}000 + 36{,}00{,}000 + 18{,}00{,}000 + 14{,}40{,}000 = 1{,}22{,}40{,}000$$

So:

Total annual cash cost = ₹1,22,40,000

Step 3: Convert annual figures to monthly figures

We assume 12 months in a year.

Total annual cash cost = ₹1,22,40,000

$$\text{Monthly cash cost} = \frac{1{,}22{,}40{,}000}{12} = ₹10{,}20{,}000$$

We also break down monthly costs by element (this helps in RM and WIP/creditors calculations):

- Raw materials per month:

$$\frac{54{,}00{,}000}{12} = ₹4{,}50{,}000$$

Labour per month:

$$\frac{36{,}00{,}000}{12} = ₹3{,}00{,}000$$

Variable OH per month:

$$\frac{18{,}00{,}000}{12} = ₹1{,}50{,}000$$

Cash fixed OH per month:

$$\frac{14{,}40{,}000}{12} = ₹1{,}20{,}000$$

Check total:

$$4{,}50{,}000 + 3{,}00{,}000 + 1{,}50{,}000 + 1{,}20{,}000 = 10{,}20{,}000 \text{(matches)}$$

Step 4: Compute Investment in Each Working Capital Component

We will calculate:

1. Raw material stock
2. WIP
3. Finished goods
4. Debtors
5. Less: Creditors for raw materials

Then add a 10% safety margin.

4.1 Investment in Raw Materials Stock

Raw materials are held for 2 months.

We use monthly raw material cost (cash):

$$\text{RM per month} = ₹4{,}50{,}000$$

So, raw material stock value:

$$\text{RM Stock} = 2 \times 4{,}50{,}000 = ₹9{,}00{,}000$$

4.2 Investment in Work-in-Progress (WIP)

WIP holding period = 1 month

WIP completion level = 50%

For the 1 month's production, we calculate cash cost, then adjust for percentage of completion.
First, compute 1 month's full cash production cost (if fully complete):
That's simply the total monthly cash cost we found:

$$\text{Monthly cash production cost} = ₹10,20,000$$

ut WIP is only 50% complete. We must also consider the usual assumption:

- Raw materials are introduced at the start of production → 100% of RM is considered in WIP.
- Conversion costs (Labour + Var OH + Cash Fixed OH) are assumed to be 50% complete.

So:

- Raw materials: 100% of monthly RM cost
- Labour + Var OH + Cash fixed OH: 50% of their monthly cost

Compute:
Raw materials in WIP:

$$RM_{WIP} = 100\% \times 4,50,000 = ₹4,50,000$$

Conversion costs in WIP:
Labour + Var OH + Cash Fixed OH per month:

$$3,00,000 + 1,50,000 + 1,20,000 = ₹5,70,000$$

At 50% completion:

$$\text{Conversion in WIP} = 5,70,000 \times 0.5 = ₹2,85,000$$

Now, total WIP value:

$$WIP = 4,50,000 + 2,85,000 = ₹7,35,000$$

4.3 Investment in Finished Goods
Finished goods are held for 1 month, fully completed.
So finished goods value will be 1 month's full cash cost of production:

$$\text{FG} = \text{Monthly cash cost} = ₹10,20,000$$

4.4 Investment in Debtors (Receivables)
Debtors are outstanding for 1.5 months.
We assume that receivables are valued at cost of sales (cash cost), not selling price (this is common in working capital estimation problems unless otherwise stated).
So:

$$\text{Debtors} = 1.5 \times \text{Monthly cash cost}$$
$$= 1.5 \times 10,20,000 = ₹15,30,000$$

4.5 Less: Creditors for Raw Materials
The firm gets 1 month's credit from suppliers of raw materials.
So, the liability towards creditors is 1 month of raw material purchases:

$$\text{Creditors} = 1 \times \text{Monthly RM cost} = 1 \times 4,50,000 = ₹4,50,000$$

This amount reduces the net working capital requirement because it provides spontaneous financing.
Step 5: Total Working Capital Before Safety Margin
Now sum up all current asset investments and deduct creditors:

$$\text{Total WC (before safety)} = RM + WIP + FG + Debtors - Creditors$$

Substitute the values:

- RM = ₹9,00,000
- WIP = ₹7,35,000
- FG = ₹10,20,000
- Debtors = ₹15,30,000
- Creditors = ₹4,50,000

Compute step-by-step:

1. RM + WIP

$$9{,}00{,}000 + 7{,}35{,}000 = 16{,}35{,}000$$

2. Add FG

$$16{,}35{,}000 + 10{,}20{,}000 = 26{,}55{,}000$$

3. Add Debtors

$$26{,}55{,}000 + 15{,}30{,}000 = 41{,}85{,}000$$

4. Subtract Creditors

$$41{,}85{,}000 - 4{,}50{,}000 = 37{,}35{,}000$$

So:Working capital before safety margin = ₹37,35,000

Step 6: Add Safety Margin (10% of Total Working Capital)

The firm wants to maintain 10% of total working capital as a safety margin.

We interpret this in standard textbook manner as:

$$\text{Safety margin} = 10\% \text{ of base working capital}$$

So:

$$\text{Safety margin} = 0.10 \times 37{,}35{,}000 = ₹3{,}73{,}500$$

Now add this to the base working capital requirement:

$$\text{Total Working Capital} = 37{,}35{,}000 + 3{,}73{,}500 = ₹41{,}08{,}500$$

We can round suitably:

Required Working Capital ≈ ₹41,08,500 (≈ ₹41.1 lakh)

Final Answer : Estimated working capital requirement (including 10% safety margin): ₹41,08,500 (approximately ₹41.1 lakh)

17.13 STANDARD TEXTBOOK REFERENCES

1. Brigham, Eugene F. & Ehrhardt, Michael C. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*. Cengage Learning, 2021.
2. Titman, Sheridan; Keown, Arthur J.; Martin, John D. *Financial Management: Principles and Applications*. Pearson, 2020.
3. Sagner, James. *Essentials of Working Capital Management*. Wiley, 2014.
4. Bhalla, V.K. *Working Capital Management*. Himalaya Publishing House, 2018.
5. Chandra, Prasanna. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*. McGraw-Hill Education, 2020.
6. Pandey, I.M. *Financial Management*. Vikas Publishing House, 2019.
7. Van Horne, James C. & Wachowicz Jr., John M. *Fundamentals of Financial Management*. Pearson, 2016.
8. Bragg, Steven M. *Treasury Management: The Practitioner's Guide*. Wiley, 2019.
9. Bhattacharya, Hrishikes. *Working Capital Management: Strategies and Techniques*. PHI Learning, 2008.

LESSON – 18

CASH MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, learners will be able to:

- Understand the meaning, goals, and motives of holding cash.
- Appreciate the strategic significance of cash management in financial decision-making.
- Prepare cash budgets and perform short-term cash forecasting.
- Apply quantitative models such as Baumol's EOQ Model and Miller–Orr Stochastic Model of cash management.
- Identify and explain practical techniques of cash control and cash synchronization.
- Solve numerical exercises on cash budgets and cash management models.

18.0 STRUCTURE OF THE LESSON

18.1 INTRODUCTION

Cash is the most liquid of all current assets. It is the lifeblood that sustains the operating cycle and enables a firm to purchase materials, pay wages, settle bills, maintain goodwill, and exploit strategic opportunities. Although cash itself earns no return, the absence of cash can be fatal. A firm may be highly profitable on paper but can still collapse due to inadequate liquidity. This paradox makes cash management one of the most sensitive areas of financial management.

Modern firms operate in an environment of fluctuating sales, uncertain collections, credit arrangements, and volatile market conditions. Hence, maintaining cash at an optimal level—neither too high nor too low—is a critical managerial responsibility. Cash management seeks to balance liquidity and profitability, just as working capital management balances current assets and current liabilities.

The rise of digital payment systems, real-time settlement networks, ERP-integrated liquidity dashboards, and AI-based cash forecasting tools has made cash management both more scientific and more complex. Companies such as Amazon, Walmart, Reliance Retail, and Toyota operate with breathtaking precision in their cash cycles, demonstrating how efficient cash management becomes a competitive advantage.

18.2 MEANING AND IMPORTANCE OF CASH MANAGEMENT

Cash management involves the planning, organizing, and controlling of cash flows into and out of a business. This includes ensuring adequate liquidity, minimizing idle cash, forecasting future needs, and investing temporary surpluses efficiently. The focus extends beyond simply maintaining cash balances; it includes synchronizing cash inflows with cash outflows to minimize financing costs and optimise working capital usage.

Importance of Cash Management

Cash management is vital for various reasons. First, it ensures that a firm has enough liquidity to meet short-term commitments, such as payment of wages, taxes, interest, suppliers' bills, and other operational expenses. This protects the company from costly disruptions and loss of creditworthiness.

Second, well-planned cash management helps firms avoid excessive dependence on short-term borrowings. Short-term financing can be costly and risky; lack of liquidity may force a firm to borrow at unfavourable terms.

Third, effective cash management enhances profitability. Idle cash lying in bank accounts generates little or no return. By maintaining an optimal cash balance and investing temporarily surplus funds into short-term marketable securities, firms enhance their returns without sacrificing liquidity.

Fourth, cash management supports strategic flexibility. Firms with strong liquidity can take advantage of opportunities such as bulk purchasing, seasonal discounts, or attractive investment options. Apple Inc. and Alphabet, for example, hold large cash reserves that enable them to acquire promising start-ups and invest in cutting-edge technologies without external financing.

Finally, cash management contributes to corporate resilience. Economic downturns, pandemics, supply chain disruptions, and credit squeezes expose firms with weak liquidity. Conversely, cash-rich firms withstand shocks better and preserve long-term value.

18.3 MOTIVES FOR HOLDING CASH

The motivations for holding cash are traditionally explained by Keynes's four motives, which continue to be highly relevant today.

1. Transaction Motive

Firms require cash to meet routine payments that arise from day-to-day transactions—payments for raw materials, salaries, overheads, and utilities. The need is predictable and recurring.

2. Precautionary Motive

Firms hold cash as a buffer against unforeseen events, such as sudden price hikes, unexpected delays in receivables, strikes, breakdowns, or supply chain disruptions. COVID-19 demonstrated the importance of precautionary cash reserves, as many firms faced severe liquidity stress.

3. Speculative Motive
Firms sometimes maintain cash to exploit profit-making opportunities such as purchasing raw materials when prices drop, acquiring companies, or investing in short-term financial instruments when interest rates suddenly rise.
4. Compensating Motive
Banks sometimes require firms to maintain minimum balances as part of loan covenants. Cash balances kept with banks to compensate for banking services represent compensating balances.
These motives illustrate the multiple roles of cash—not merely as a medium of exchange but as a strategic asset.

18,4 CASH PLANNING, BUDGETING, AND FORECASTING

Cash planning is the starting point of effective cash management. It involves anticipating cash needs and ensuring that the firm does not face shortages or surpluses.
Cash Budgeting
A cash budget is a projection of cash inflows and outflows over a specified period—weekly, monthly, or quarterly. It helps the firm:

- Determine surplus or deficit cash positions
- Arrange short-term financing when needed
- Optimize investment of surplus cash
- Identify potential financial bottlenecks
- Coordinate sales, production, and purchasing

Cash budgeting requires careful estimation of sales, credit terms, production costs, collection patterns, payment schedules, and project expenditures.
Methods of Cash Forecasting
Different methods may be used:

1. Receipt and payment method—suitable for short-term budgets
2. Adjusted profit and loss method—for medium-term forecasting
3. Balance sheet method—for long-term forecasts
4. Statistical methods, such as regression analysis or moving averages
5. Real-time ERP-linked forecasting using AI-driven algorithms

Modern corporations increasingly rely on automated liquidity dashboards that forecast daily cash positions.

18.5 BAUMOL MODEL OF CASH MANAGEMENT

The Baumol Model adapts the Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) formula to cash management. It assumes:

- Constant cash outflows
- Predictable cash usage
- Cash raised through periodic sales of marketable securities
- A fixed transaction cost for each conversion

The objective is to minimize the total cost of holding cash and converting securities into cash.
Formula

$$C^* = \sqrt{\frac{2FT}{i}}$$

Where:

- C^*= Optimal cash balance

- F= Fixed cost of converting securities into cash
- T= Total cash requirement for the period
- i= Opportunity cost of holding cash (interest rate)

The model determines the amount of cash a firm should withdraw from marketable securities each time.

18.6 MILLER–ORR MODEL

The Miller–Orr model is designed for uncertain and volatile cash flows, unlike the deterministic Baumol model. It sets:

- An upper cash limit
- A lower cash limit
- A target (return) cash balance

When cash reaches the upper limit, the firm invests the excess in marketable securities.
When cash reaches the lower limit, securities are sold to replenish cash up to the target balance.
Key Inputs

- Variance of daily net cash flows
- Fixed transaction cost
- Interest rate
- Lower cash limit (management policy)

Formula

$$Z = 3\sqrt[3]{\frac{3FT^2}{4i}}$$

Where:
Z= Spread
Upper limit = $L + Z$
Target limit = $L + \frac{Z}{3}$
The model is particularly useful for firms with fluctuating collections and payments.

18.7 TECHNIQUES FOR CASH CONTROL AND SYNCHRONIZATION

Effective cash control focuses on minimizing idle cash, speeding up collections, and slowing down payments (without harming relationships).
Cash Collection Acceleration

- Lock-box system
- Concentration banking
- Electronic Funds Transfer (RTGS/NEFT)
- Automatic debit systems
- Mobile wallets / UPI-based payments

Slowing Disbursements

- Centralized payments
- Use of payable cycles
- Controlled disbursement accounts

Synchronizing Cash Flows
Cash synchronization attempts to align inflows with outflows to minimize the need for idle cash. Techniques include:

- Matching cash cycles of suppliers and customers

- Using ERP to automate receivable collections
- Negotiating credit terms with suppliers
- Implementing just-in-time (JIT) inventory models
- Using cash pooling and treasury centralization

Companies like Tata Motors, Toyota, DHL, UPS, Amazon use highly automated cash synchronization tools to maintain strong liquidity while keeping cash balances lean.

18.8. NUMERICAL PROBLEMS WITH FULL SOLUTIONS

Problem 1 (Simple Cash Budgeting)
A firm expects monthly sales of ₹5,00,000.
50% are on credit, collected next month.
Monthly expenses = ₹3,00,000 (paid same month).
Required: Prepare monthly cash inflow and outflow for one month.
Solution
Cash inflow = cash sales = 50% of ₹5,00,000 = ₹2,50,000
Cash outflow = ₹3,00,000
Net cash flow = 2,50,000 – 3,00,000 = –₹50,000 (deficit)
Problem 2 (Baumol Model)
Cash needed for the year (T) = ₹24,00,000
Transaction cost (F) = ₹300
Interest rate (i) = 12%

$$C^* = \sqrt{\frac{2FT}{i}}$$

$$C^* = \sqrt{\frac{2(300)(24,00,000)}{0.12}} = \sqrt{1,20,00,00,000} = ₹1,09,544$$

Optimal cash withdrawal = ₹1,09,544
Problem 3 (Miller–Orr Model)
Variance of daily cash flows = 2,500
Transaction cost = ₹50
Interest rate = 9%
Lower limit = ₹20,000

$$Z = 3\sqrt[3]{\frac{3FT^2}{4i}}$$

$$Z = 3\sqrt[3]{\frac{3 \times 50 \times 2500^2}{4 \times 0.09}}$$

$$Z = 3 \times 385 = ₹1,155$$

Upper limit = 20,000 + 1,155 = ₹21,155
Return point = 20,000 + 1,155/3 = ₹20,385

- Advanced problems :

- Problem 4 is a moderate two-month cash budget (direct receipts & payments method) — shows how to prepare a monthly cash budget, identify deficits/surpluses, and plan short-term financing (borrow/repay).
- Problem 5 is an advanced cash-forecasting exercise using simulation-summary results (mean & standard deviation). It shows how to compute a borrowing line required to cover cash shortfalls at a chosen confidence level and compares the cost of hedging versus holding precautionary cash.

Problem 4 — Moderate Cash Budget (Two Months)

Problem statement

Prepare a two-month cash budget (Month 1 and Month 2) using the direct receipts & payments approach and show the financing required (borrowings or investment of surplus). Use the data below.

Data

- Opening cash balance (at start of Month 1): ₹50,000. Minimum required cash balance = ₹25,000.
- Sales:
  - Month 1 sales = ₹4,00,000
  - Month 2 sales = ₹5,00,000
- Collection pattern on credit sales:
  - 40% of sales are cash sales (collected in same month).
  - 60% are credit sales. Collections on credit sales follow: 30% in same month (i.e., current month), 50% in next month, 20% in second month after sale.
    - (For our two-month horizon we use collections from Month 1 and Month 2; assume no prior period receivables.)
- Cost of goods sold (COGS) = 60% of sales. Purchases are paid one month after purchase (i.e., purchases of Month 0 are paid in Month 1 etc.). Assume purchases equal COGS.
- Wages and salaries: ₹80,000 each month (paid same month).
- Overheads (cash): ₹40,000 each month (paid same month).
- Selling & admin (non-cash depreciation excluded): ₹20,000 each month (paid same month).
- Tax payment: ₹60,000 to be paid in Month 2.
- Capital expenditure: ₹1,50,000 in Month 2 (paid in Month 2).
- No other receipts or payments. No dividends planned.
- Bank loan facility exists; interest is ignored for simplicity in the 2-month horizon. The firm must maintain minimum cash ₹25,000 at month-end; if closing cash falls below ₹25,000, the firm must borrow to restore it to ₹25,000. If closing cash is above ₹25,000 the surplus can be invested (but we will simply show surplus).

Solution — step by step

Step A — Prepare receipts (cash inflows) schedule

We need cash receipts for each month from:

1. Cash sales (40% of that month's sales)
2. Collections from credit sales of current and earlier months according to collection pattern.

Let's compute:

Month 1

- Cash sales (40% of ₹4,00,000) = ₹1,60,000.
- Credit sales in Month 1 = 60% of ₹4,00,000 = ₹2,40,000.

  - Of these credit sales, 30% are collected in same month = 30% × 2,40,000 = ₹72,000.
  - Collections from prior credit sales: None (assume no receivables from earlier months).
- Total receipts Month 1 = 1,60,000 + 72,000 = ₹2,32,000.

Month 2

- Cash sales (40% of ₹5,00,000) = ₹2,00,000.
- Credit sales in Month 2 = 60% of ₹5,00,000 = ₹3,00,000.
  - Collections from Month 2 credit in Month 2 (30% of 3,00,000) = ₹90,000.
  - Collections from Month 1 credit sales (50% of Month 1 credit sales) = 50% × 2,40,000 = ₹1,20,000.
  - Collections from Month 0 (20% of Month 0 credit sales) — we have none (no prior).
- Total receipts Month 2 = 2,00,000 + 90,000 + 1,20,000 = ₹4,10,000.

Step B — Prepare payments (cash outflows) schedule

Payments include: purchases (paid one month after the purchase), wages, overheads, S&A, tax (Month 2), capex (Month 2).

We need purchases paid in Month 1 and Month 2 — purchases in a month equal COGS of that same month, but are paid one month later. So:

- Purchases that are paid in Month 1 = purchases made in Month 0 (which we must assume). If no prior purchases given, assume purchases of Month 0 equal Month 1 COGS for continuity? Typically we need payments for purchases made in Month 0; but problem didn't give prior month purchases. We'll assume the firm had no outstanding prior purchases to pay in Month 1. (Alternative: assume steady state and that Month 1 will pay purchases for Month 0 equal to Month 1 COGS; but that complicates. We'll assume no payables at start.)

  To make the problem instructive, we'll include a reasonable assumption: assume the firm had purchases in Month 0 equal to 60% of Month 0 sales = 60% of Month 4,00,000 = ₹2,40,000, and that those are payable in Month 1. This is common in practice to avoid missing purchase payments in Month 1. So we'll assume opening trade creditors = ₹2,40,000 to be paid in Month 1. (I'll state that assumption.)

Assumption (explicit): There is a payable from prior month equal to COGS of Month 0 = ₹2,40,000, payable in Month 1. (If you prefer a problem without prior payables, set that figure to zero and recompute.)

Now:

- COGS (60% of sales):
  - Month 1 COGS = 0.6 × 4,00,000 = ₹2,40,000 (these purchases will be paid in Month 2)
  - Month 2 COGS = 0.6 × 5,00,000 = ₹3,00,000 (paid in Month 3; outside our horizon)
- Payments in Month 1:
  - Payment of prior creditors (assumed opening creditors) = ₹2,40,000
  - Wages = ₹80,000
  - Overheads cash = ₹40,000
  - S&A = ₹20,000
  - Tax = 0
  - Capex = 0
  - Purchases from Month 1 (COGS) are not paid in Month 1 (will be paid in Month 2).

- Total payments Month 1 = 2,40,000 + 80,000 + 40,000 + 20,000 = ₹3,80,000
- Payments in Month 2:
  - Payment of purchases made in Month 1 (COGS Month1) = ₹2,40,000
  - Wages = ₹80,000
  - Overheads = ₹40,000
  - S&A = ₹20,000
  - Tax = ₹60,000
  - Capex = ₹1,50,000
  - Total payments Month 2 = 2,40,000 + 80,000 + 40,000 + 20,000 + 60,000 + 1,50,000 = ₹5,--,000? Let's compute:
    2,40,000 + 80,000 = 3,20,000
    +40,000 = 3,60,000
    +20,000 = 3,80,000
    +60,000 = 4,40,000
    +1,50,000 = ₹5,90,000

Step C — Cash budget table
Now assemble:

Particulars	Month 1 (₹)	Month 2 (₹)
Opening cash balance	50,000	(to be computed)
Receipts	232,000	410,000
Total cash available (Opening cash + Receipts)	282,000	(Opening next month + Receipts)
Payments	380,000	590,000
Net cash flow (Receipts − Payments)	−148,000	(Receipts − Payments)
Closing cash before financing	Opening + Net cash flow	...
Minimum required cash balance	25,000	25,000
Financing required (borrow to meet min) / Surplus invest	...	...
Closing cash after financing	...	...

Compute Month 1:

- Opening cash = 50,000
- Receipts = 232,000
- Total available = 282,000
- Payments = 380,000
- Net cash flow = 232,000 − 380,000 = −148,000
- Closing cash before financing = 50,000 − 148,000 = −98,000
  - This is below the minimum cash ₹25,000. So company must borrow enough to restore closing cash to ₹25,000.
- Required financing in Month1 = amount to bring closing from −98,000 up to 25,000 = 25,000 − (−98,000) = ₹1,23,000.
- After borrowing ₹1,23,000, closing cash = ₹25,000.

Record borrowings of ₹1,23,000 in Month 1.
Compute Month 2:

- Opening cash = closing cash after financing from Month 1 = ₹25,000
- Receipts Month 2 = ₹4,10,000
- Total available = 25,000 + 4,10,000 = ₹4,35,000

- Payments Month 2 = ₹5,90,000
- Net cash flow = 4,10,000 − 5,90,000 = −1,80,000
- Closing cash before financing = Opening 25,000 − 1,80,000 = −1,55,000
- Company must bring closing cash to at least ₹25,000. Required financing = 25,000 − (−1,55,000) = ₹1,80,000
- But note: Company already borrowed ₹1,23,000 in Month 1. It may either borrow an additional amount or increase outstanding borrowing to cover total shortfall. The required total outstanding borrowing at end of Month 2 = ₹1,80,000 (to have closing cash 25,000). Since it already has ₹1,23,000 outstanding, it must borrow an additional ₹57,000 (= 1,80,000 − 1,23,000) in Month 2.

After borrowing additional ₹57,000, closing cash = ₹25,000.

Step D — Summarize cash budget (final table)

Particulars	Month 1 (₹)	Month 2 (₹)
Opening cash	50,000	25,000
Receipts	232,000	410,000
Total available	282,000	435,000
Payments	380,000	590,000
Net cash flow	−148,000	−180,000
Closing cash before financing	−98,000	−155,000
Required to reach minimum (₹25,000)	1,23,000 (borrow)	1,80,000 (total)
Borrowing (flow in month)	1,23,000	57,000 (additional)
Closing cash after financing	25,000	25,000

Answer / Interpretation

- The firm requires a bank borrowing of ₹1,23,000 in Month 1, and an additional ₹57,000 in Month 2 (total outstanding at Month 2 end = ₹1,80,000) to maintain the minimum cash balance ₹25,000.
- If the firm can negotiate delayed payment on capex or tax, or accelerate collections (e.g., encourage early payments), borrowings can be reduced.
- If prior payables were zero (no opening creditors), the Month 1 payment would be ₹1,40,000 less (= 380,000 − 240,000 = 140,000 reduction), reducing the borrowing needed. *(You may re-run the budget with that alternative assumption.)*

Problem 5 — Advanced Cash Forecasting & Line of Credit Sizing (Using Simulation Summary)

Problem statement

A firm has run Monte Carlo simulations of its monthly cash flows. The simulation produced the following summary statistics for month-end cash balances (in ₹ thousands):

Month	Mean (average) cash balance	Std. deviation (σ)
April	3,104	334
May	1,258	375
June	−1,221	353
July	−1,104	402
August	−363	403
September	591	421

Management wants to ensure that there is at most a 5% probability of having insufficient cash in any month (i.e., maintain cash so that there is 95% confidence that cash balance will be non-

negative). The firm wants to arrange a line of credit (borrowable amount) to cover the worst expected deficit during April–September.

Tasks

1. For each month, compute the 95% lower bound for cash balance (i.e., the cash level such that there is 95% probability actual cash ≥ that level), using the normal approximation.
2. Identify the maximum deficit (most negative lower bound) across months — this is the minimum line of credit the firm should secure to limit shortfall risk to 5%.
3. Using the month with the worst expected deficit, compute the line of credit required (numeric).
4. Suppose the bank charges interest at 10% p.a. on drawn amounts and charges an arrangement fee of ₹50,000 for the line (one time). Evaluate whether the firm should (a) arrange the line, or (b) hold precautionary cash equal to the maximum deficit (assuming holding cash implies opportunity cost at 8% p.a.). Compare annualized costs (approximate) and advise.

Solution — step by step

Step 1 — compute 95% lower bound for each month

For a normal distribution, the 95% lower bound (i.e., the value L such that P(X ≥ L) = 0.95) is:

$$L = \text{Mean} - Z_{0.95} \times \sigma$$

Where $Z_{0.95}$for one-sided 95% is 1.645 (if the firm wants only 5% chance of being below).

Compute month by month. (Values are in ₹ thousands; results in ₹ thousands.)

April

- Mean = 3,104; σ = 334
- Lower bound = 3,104 − 1.645 × 334 = 3,104 − 549. (Compute: 1.645×334 = 549.43)
- L = 2,554.57 ≈ ₹2,554,570

May

- Mean = 1,258; σ = 375
- L = 1,258 − 1.645 × 375 = 1,258 − 616.88 = 641.12 ≈ ₹641,120

June

- Mean = −1,221; σ = 353
- L = −1,221 − 1.645 × 353 = −1,221 − 580. (1.645×353 ≈ 580.39)
- L = −1,801.39 ≈ −₹1,801,390

July

- Mean = −1,104; σ = 402
- L = −1,104 − 1.645 × 402 = −1,104 − 661. ≈ −1,765. (1.645×402 = 661.)
- L = −1,765. (approx −₹1,765,000) More precisely: −1,104 − 661. - = −1,765. (≈ −1,765, = −1,765,? compute: 1.645×402=661. 1104+661=1765 so L=−1765)

August

- Mean = −363; σ = 403
- L = −363 − 1.645×403 = −363 − 663. (1.645×403 ≈ 663.235)
- L = −1,026.24 ≈ −₹1,026,240

September

- Mean = 591; σ = 421
- L = 591 − 1.645×421 = 591 − 692. (1.645×421 ≈ 692.345)
- L = −101.35 ≈ −₹101,350

Step 2 — identify worst (most negative) lower bound

From the computed lower bounds (in ₹):

- April: +2,554,570
- May: +641,120

- June: −1,801,390 ← most negative
- July: −1,765,000
- August: −1,026,240
- September: −101,350

The worst expected 95% lower bound is June: −₹1,801,390 (approx −₹18.01 lakh). That means with 95% confidence, the firm's cash will be at least −₹1.801 million (i.e., it could be a deficit of up to ₹1.801m).

Step 3 — required line of credit

To ensure a 95% probability of non-negative cash in every month, the firm must arrange a line of credit at least equal to the absolute value of the worst deficit:

$$\text{Line required} \approx ₹1{,}801{,}390 \text{(approx ₹18.02 lakh)}$$

Round up for safety: ₹18.05 lakh (or ₹18.1 lakh) to provide a small buffer.

Note: This is the maximum single-month shortfall at 95% confidence. If the firm wants simultaneous coverage across months with rolling draws, this single line will suffice (assuming the worst month is the binding constraint).

Step 4 — compare costs: line of credit vs holding precautionary cash

Assumptions:

- Bank interest on drawn amounts = 10% p.a.
- Arrangement fee (one-time) = ₹50,000
- Opportunity cost of holding cash (if the firm keeps cash instead of investing) = 8% p.a.
- We make a simplifying assumption: the worst shortfall occurs once in a year (conservative). We'll annualize costs approximately.

Option A — Arrange line of credit

- Annualized fixed arrangement cost = ₹50,000 (one time). If amortised over 1 year, cost = ₹50,000.
- Expected interest cost depends on actual drawdowns; worst-case if the line is fully drawn for the worst month only. Suppose average drawn amount across the year ≈ worst deficit × (duration in months / 12). If it's drawn for 1 month, interest = 10% × 1,801,390 × (1/12) ≈ ₹15,011.6.
- So approximate annual cost = arrangement fee + interest = 50,000 + 15,012 = ₹65,012.

(If the bank charges commitment fee on undrawn portion that would add cost; or if drawn more months, interest rises.)

Option B — Hold precautionary cash equal to worst deficit

- Holding ₹1,801,390 in cash costs opportunity cost = 8% p.a.
- Annual cost = 0.08 × 1,801,390 = ₹1,44,111.

Comparison

- Line arrangement (A) approximate cost ≈ ₹65,012 per year (assuming draw for one month).
- Holding cash (B) cost ≈ ₹1,44,111 per year.

Conclusion / recommendation

Based on this approximate calculation, arranging the line of credit is cheaper than holding the worst-case cash buffer, principally because the arrangement fee is relatively small compared to the annual opportunity cost of holding a large cash buffer. Therefore, the firm should arrange a line of credit of about ₹18.1 lakh, negotiate a low commitment fee and flexible drawdown, and keep a smaller precautionary cash buffer (say 10–20% of the worst deficit) to avoid frequent small draws.

Practical considerations / caveats

1. If the firm expects frequent or prolonged shortfalls (draws for several months), interest cost increases and might change the recommendation. Recompute cost assuming expected average draw period (e.g., 3 months).
2. Banks sometimes charge a commitment fee on the undrawn portion (e.g., 0.5% p.a.); include that in the line cost if applicable.
3. There are qualitative factors: access to bank lines can be limited in stressed markets; maintaining a small cash cushion plus a line is a prudent blended strategy.
4. The simulation uses normality assumption; if cash distributions are skewed or fat-tailed, use higher Z or run more detailed simulation.

18.9. SUMMARY

Cash management ensures that firms have sufficient liquidity to meet obligations, while minimizing idle cash. It involves planning, forecasting, budgeting, investing surpluses, controlling cash inflows and outflows, and applying mathematical models. The Baumol and Miller–Orr models help determine optimal cash balances under certainty and uncertainty. Modern corporations use advanced analytics and digital systems to synchronize cash flows and enhance efficiency.

18.10. KEYWORDS

Cash Budget, Cash Forecast, Baumol Model, Miller–Orr Model, Liquidity Management, Cash Synchronization, Working Capital, Marketable Securities.

18.11 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS.

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (MCQs)
1. Cash held to meet daily operational needs is held under which motive?
a) Precautionary
b) Speculative
c) Transaction
d) Arbitrage
Answer: c
2. According to the Baumol model, the optimal cash balance moves inversely with:
a) Transaction cost
b) Interest rate
c) Total cash need
d) Sales volume
Answer: b
. Miller–Orr model is used when cash flows are:
a) Completely predictable
b) Constant each day
c) Highly uncertain and fluctuating
d) Non-cash in nature
Answer: c
4. Lock-box system is primarily used to:
a) Slow down payments
b) Accelerate collections

c) Increase float
d) Reduce inventory
Answer: b
5. Cash budget is NOT used for:
a) Identifying cash surpluses
b) Identifying cash deficits
c) Long-term capital structure decisions
d) Planning short-term financing
Answer: c
6. Marketable securities must have all of the following EXCEPT:
a) Liquidity
b) High safety
c) High maturity period
d) Low transaction cost
Answer: c
7. Compensating balances are required by:
a) RBI
b) Commercial banks
c) Credit rating agencies
d) Creditors
Answer: b
8. Float refers to:
a) Cash in vault
b) Delay between cheque issue and presentation
c) Inventory just-in-time
d) Capital expenditures
Answer: b
9. The Miller–Orr model sets:
a) Only an upper limit
b) Only a lower limit
c) Upper, lower, and return point
d) No limit
Answer: c
10. Cash turnover ratio indicates:
a) Speed at which cash is generated
b) Profit margins
c) Fixed asset utilization
d) Credit policy efficiency
Answer: a
11. Cash budget typically includes all EXCEPT:
a) Opening balances
b) Depreciation
c) Cash receipts
d) Cash payments
Answer: b
12. The speculative motive relates to:
a) Meeting emergencies
b) Taking advantage of unexpected opportunities
c) Routine payments

d) Banking requirements
Answer: b
13. Which technique speeds cash collection?
a) Centralized payments
b) Ageing analysis
c) Concentration banking
d) Extending credit
Answer: c
14. In Baumol model, cash is assumed to be converted from:
a) Fixed assets
b) Long-term debt
c) Marketable securities
d) Accounts payable
Answer: c
15. One major objective of cash management is:
a) Maximizing accounts receivable
b) Minimizing cost of holding cash
c) Increasing fixed assets
d) Maximizing depreciation
Answer: b
16. The primary tool for short-term cash planning is:
a) Cash budget
b) Balance sheet
c) Income statement
d) Ledger accounts
Answer: a
17. In Miller–Orr, increasing transaction cost (F) will:
a) Reduce spread
b) Increase spread
c) Set spread = 0
d) Has no effect
Answer: b
18. Cash discount offered to customers affects:
a) Inventory turnover
b) Debt-to-equity ratio
c) Cash inflow timing
d) Depreciation
Answer: c
19. “Float” is created when:
a) Funds are invested long term
b) Cheques take time to clear
c) Marketable securities mature
d) Borrowings are repaid
Answer: b
20. Optimal cash balance lies between:
a) Cash inflows & fixed cost
b) Upper & lower cash limits
c) Sales & stock turnover

d) ROA & ROE
Answer: b

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (SAQs)

1. Define cash management and explain its objectives.
2. What is the transaction motive for holding cash? Give an example.
3. Differentiate between concentration banking and lock-box systems.
4. State any two assumptions of the Baumol cash model.
5. What is float? Explain components of float.
6. Explain the concept of cash budgeting.
7. What is compensating balance and why do banks require it?
8. Explain how cash collection can be accelerated.
9. Why is the Miller–Orr model suitable for uncertain cash flows?
10. Explain synchronization of cash flows with an example.

. LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS (ESSAY QUESTIONS)

1. Describe the motives for holding cash and their relevance in modern organizations.
2. Explain the process of cash planning and preparation of a cash budget with an illustration.
3. Discuss the Baumol Model of cash management. Derive the formula and interpret results.
4. Evaluate the Miller–Orr Model and contrast it with the Baumol Model.
5. Explain in detail the techniques used to accelerate cash collections and delay cash payments.
6. Discuss the relationship between liquidity and profitability in cash management.
7. Explain how multinational corporations manage cash using global cash pools and treasury centers.
8. Prepare a comprehensive two-month cash budget using hypothetical numbers and interpret results.
9. Discuss the strategic importance of cash forecasting in risk management and financing decisions.
10. Critically evaluate how digital payments, ERP systems, and AI-based forecasting have transformed cash management practices.

CASE STUDY (WITH DISCUSSION QUESTIONS & MODEL ANALYSIS)

CASE STUDY: Cash Management at MedTech Devices Ltd.
Background
MedTech Devices Ltd. is a medium-sized healthcare equipment manufacturer supplying ventilators, patient monitors, and oxygen concentrators to hospitals across India. The company has experienced rapid sales growth in the last two years due to increased demand in the medical sector. Despite rising revenues and profits, MedTech is facing severe cash shortages, leading to delayed payments to suppliers and increased dependence on bank overdrafts.
Key Details

- Annual sales: ₹120 crore
- 60% sales on credit; average collection period = 65 days
- Supplier credit: 30 days

- Inventory holding period: 55 days
- Monthly fixed cash costs: ₹1.2 crore
- Variable cost ratio: 65%
- Bank overdraft interest rate: 12%
- Surplus cash, when available, is invested in 30-day T-bills generating 5% annually

Recent Issues

1. Three major customers delayed payments by 30 additional days, worsening liquidity.
2. The company missed a bulk-purchase discount of 4% because it lacked cash.
3. Suppliers have threatened to shift MedTech to cash-on-delivery terms.
4. Internal cash forecasts are highly inaccurate due to manual spreadsheets.
5. CFO is considering implementing Baumol and Miller–Orr models for cash balance optimization.

DISCUSSION QUESTIONS

1. Identify and explain the major causes of MedTech's cash shortages.
2. Evaluate the impact of delayed receivables on the company's operating cycle.
3. How would better cash forecasting have prevented the liquidity crisis?
4. Should MedTech revise its credit policy? Why or why not?
5. How can the Baumol Model help MedTech optimize its cash balance?
6. How can the Miller–Orr Model help given the uncertain nature of collections?
7. Recommend a comprehensive cash management strategy for MedTech.

MODEL ANALYSIS (FOR FACULTY USE)

Problem Diagnosis

- Operating cycle has lengthened due to:
    1. Delayed receivables → cash inflow uncertainty
    2. Increasing inventory days
    3. Supplier credit (30 days) is insufficient
- High dependence on overdraft → expensive financing
- Poor cash forecasting → mismatched inflows and outflows
- Missed discount = lost profit
- Risk of losing supplier goodwill

Quantitative Insight

Operating cycle:

$$\text{Receivables (65 + 30 delay)} + \text{Inventory (55)} - \text{Payables (30)}$$
$$= 95 + 55 - 30 = 120 \text{ days}$$

A 120-day cycle is very high for a growing firm.

Model Application

- Baumol model: Helps determine fixed cash replenishment amounts from investments.
- Miller–Orr model: Useful because collections are unpredictable; can set upper and lower bounds.
- Cash Budget: Must be redesigned using rolling weekly forecasts.

Strategic Recommendations

1. Introduce ERP-based automated cash forecasting.
2. Implement stricter credit controls & offer discounts for early payment.
3. Introduce lock-box & digital payment collection (UPI/RTGS).
4. Negotiate extended credit from suppliers.

5. Reduce inventory using JIT principles.
6. Use Miller–Orr to manage volatility.
7. Explore invoice financing / factoring for large customers.

18.12 STANDARD TEXTBOOK REFERENCES

1. Brigham, Eugene F. & Ehrhardt, Michael C. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*. Cengage Learning, 2021.
2. Titman, Sheridan; Keown, Arthur J.; Martin, John D. *Financial Management: Principles and Applications*. Pearson, 2020.
3. Sagner, James. *Essentials of Working Capital Management*. Wiley, 2014.
4. Bhalla, V.K. *Working Capital Management*. Himalaya Publishing House, 2018.
5. Chandra, Prasanna. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice*. McGraw-Hill Education, 2020.
6. Pandey, I.M. *Financial Management*. Vikas Publishing House, 2019.
7. Van Horne, James C. & Wachowicz Jr., John M. *Fundamentals of Financial Management*. Pearson, 2016.
8. Bragg, Steven M. *Treasury Management: The Practitioner's Guide*. Wiley, 2019.
9. Chatterjee, Rupak. *Corporate Treasury Management*. Oxford University Press, 2010.
10. Bhattacharya, Hrishikes. *Working Capital Management: Strategies and Techniques*. PHI Learning, 2008.

Prof. R. Siva Rama Prasad

LESSON - 19

RECEIVABLES MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, learners will be able to:

- Understand the meaning, scope, and importance of receivables management.
- Explain the objectives of maintaining accounts receivable in a firm.
- Describe the essential elements of credit policy and customer evaluation.
- Apply cost–benefit analysis to credit extension decisions.
- Evaluate the impact of credit standards, credit terms, and collection efforts on profitability.
- Analyse trade-credit decisions using numerical techniques.
- Understand and propose effective collection and bad-debt control systems.
- Apply practical tools used in large organizations to reduce receivables risk.

19.0 STRUCTURE OF THE LESSON

19.1 INTRODUCTION

In every business transaction where goods or services are sold on credit, a time gap arises between the moment revenue is recognized and the moment cash is actually received. This gap creates what are known as receivables—claims that a firm holds against its customers. While credit sales can be an effective competitive tool for expanding market reach, strengthening customer relationships, and stimulating demand, they also create a unique managerial challenge: the firm must continue financing its operations while awaiting payment. This means that receivables represent funds tied up in the operating cycle which could otherwise be used for production, investment, or other profitable activities.

Receivables management, therefore, lies at the intersection of marketing strategy and financial prudence. On one side, sales departments often push for more liberal credit, arguing that easy credit conditions help attract customers and increase sales. On the other side, finance managers emphasize the inherent risks—possibility of delayed payments, increased working-capital requirements, higher financing costs, and the threat of bad debts. The financial implications of receivables are especially significant in industries such as textiles, construction, automobiles, pharmaceuticals, electronics, and B2B distribution, where credit sales constitute a large share of transactions.

In the modern business environment, managing receivables is even more complex. Competitive pressures force firms to extend credit, while economic uncertainty, customer defaults, and supply chain disruptions increase credit risk. Technology has simultaneously created new tools—ERP systems, AI-based credit scoring, real-time credit monitoring—but has also heightened customer expectations for flexibility and convenience. All these factors make receivables management a strategic function that contributes to liquidity, profitability, solvency, and long-term sustainability.

19 .2 MEANING AND IMPORTANCE OF RECEIVABLES

Receivables represent the amounts owed to the business by its customers arising from credit sales. They appear as current assets on the balance sheet, but unlike cash or marketable securities, they are not immediately available for use. Instead, they are promises to pay, dependent on the financial health and integrity of customers.

The importance of receivables stems primarily from the fact that they constitute an investment. Like any other investment, they involve a commitment of resources and carry both a cost and a return. The "return" comes indirectly through increased sales and customer goodwill, while the "cost" appears in the form of additional financing needs and the risk of non-payment. The larger the receivable balance, the greater the burden on the working capital of the firm.

Further, receivables influence several key financial parameters: the cash conversion cycle, working capital turnover, liquidity position, and even profitability measures such as return on investment. Excessive receivables slow down the operating cycle and may force the firm to borrow, thus increasing interest costs. On the other hand, extremely restrictive credit policies can reduce sales and weaken customer relationships. Therefore, the management of receivables must strike a delicate balance between maintaining adequate liquidity and promoting business growth.

For example, Maruti Suzuki India Ltd., with its vast dealer network, has an elaborate system of receivable controls to ensure that the flow of funds from dealers aligns with the production and distribution plans. Similarly, Amazon Business uses sophisticated algorithms to determine creditworthiness and credit limits for millions of sellers and buyers. These examples reflect the essential role receivables management plays in modern enterprises.

19.3 OBJECTIVES OF RECEIVABLES MANAGEMENT

Receivables management does not merely aim at collecting dues. It is a comprehensive framework designed to achieve several interconnected objectives. At its core, it seeks to ensure that credit is extended to the right customers, for the right duration, under the right terms, and at an acceptable level of risk. It aims to promote sales without exposing the firm to financial distress or excessive working-capital requirements.

The principal objective is to achieve an optimal level of receivables—neither excessive nor insufficient. Too much investment in receivables strains cash resources and increases the probability of default, while too little may hinder sales growth. The objective is not to eliminate receivables but to manage them in a manner that maximizes net benefits to the firm.

Another important objective is to strengthen customer relationships through fair and consistent credit practices. In many industries, credit terms are perceived as an extension of customer service. Firms offering reasonable and industry-aligned credit periods often build long-term commercial relationships that enhance brand loyalty and repeat sales.

Furthermore, receivables management seeks to minimize the cost associated with financing receivables. Since receivables effectively lock up funds, they must often be financed through bank loans or internal resources. Efficient management reduces the duration and magnitude of this blockage, thereby reducing interest and opportunity costs.

Finally, effective receivables management ensures that default risk is kept within acceptable limits. This includes developing credit evaluation systems, setting prudent credit limits, monitoring overdue accounts, and taking timely corrective actions. Thus, the broader objective is to integrate sales strategy with financial discipline, ensuring that the pursuit of higher revenue is backed by sound risk management.

19.4 CREDIT POLICY AND ITS COMPONENTS

A firm's credit policy lays down the framework within which credit decisions are made. It is a strategic tool that influences both the volume of sales and the firm's risk exposure. A well-designed credit policy ensures uniformity in decision-making, avoids arbitrary judgments, and aligns credit practices with the firm's financial position and competitive environment.
The credit policy typically encompasses four major components: credit standards, credit terms, credit limits, and collection policy.

Credit standards refer to the criteria used to judge the creditworthiness of potential customers. These standards determine the minimum acceptable level of financial stability, payment history, and commercial reputation required for a customer to qualify for credit. Firms with liberal credit standards may see higher sales but face a greater chance of delayed payments and bad debts. Conversely, strict standards reduce credit risk but may turn away potentially profitable customers. Therefore, setting the appropriate level of credit standards requires careful evaluation of market conditions and competitive pressures.

Credit terms specify the conditions under which credit is granted, such as the length of the credit period and any cash discount offered for early payment. Longer credit periods may attract new customers, especially in competitive markets, but also lengthen the receivables cycle. Cash discounts (e.g., "2/10, net 30") are used to accelerate payments, reduce financing needs, and lower bad-debt risk, but they also reduce profit margins. Firms must evaluate whether the benefits of quicker collections outweigh the cost of discounting.

Credit limits define the maximum amount of credit that can be extended to a customer at any point. The limit protects the firm from overexposure to any single customer and ensures that risk is diversified. Large corporations often use credit scoring models or rating systems to determine these limits objectively.

Collection policy outlines the procedures to be followed when customers do not pay on time. These may range from sending reminders and making follow-up calls to withholding further supplies and initiating legal action in severe cases. An effective collection policy strikes a balance between firmness and customer goodwill. In practice, it is dynamic rather than static, responding to changes in economic environment and customer behaviour.

19.5 EVALUATING CREDIT APPLICANTS

Evaluating the creditworthiness of potential customers is a critical aspect of receivables management. The consequences of poor credit evaluation can be severe, including delayed payments, bad debts, loss of profitability, and impaired cash flow. Therefore, businesses rely on systematic evaluations rather than intuition or informal judgment.

The classical approach to credit evaluation is the "5 Cs of Credit"—character, capacity, capital, collateral, and conditions. Though simple in appearance, these factors encapsulate all relevant dimensions of customer risk.

"Character" refers to the customer's intention to pay. It is assessed through past payment records, industry reputation, and feedback from other suppliers. "Capacity" relates to the customer's ability to pay, determined through analysis of income sources, sales patterns, and repayment history. "Capital" examines the financial strength of the customer, typically assessed through balance sheet ratios such as debt-equity, liquidity ratios, and net worth. "Collateral" is any security that the buyer can provide to reduce the seller's risk. "Conditions" refer to external factors such as economic climate, competitive intensity, and industry trends that may influence the customer's ability to pay.

Modern credit evaluation often incorporates financial statement analysis, credit bureau reports, statistical scoring models, and automated credit-rating systems. Companies such as Dun & Bradstreet, CRISIL, and ICRA provide detailed credit reports that firms use to assess customers objectively. In large organizations, ERP systems like SAP or Oracle provide real-time credit monitoring and block orders automatically when credit limits are breached.

19.6 COST–BENEFIT ANALYSIS OF CREDIT EXTENSION

Every modification in credit policy—whether relaxing credit standards, extending credit period, offering discounts, or adjusting collection efforts—has financial consequences. Thus, cost–benefit analysis becomes an essential tool in deciding whether a change in policy is economically justified.

When credit is extended or liberalized, the firm generally expects increased sales. The benefit of this increase is measured as the contribution margin earned from additional sales. However, credit extension simultaneously leads to higher receivables, which means more funds are tied up in working capital. These additional funds must be financed, either through internal funds or borrowing, both of which carry a cost. Furthermore, liberal credit terms typically lead to higher bad-debt losses and increased administrative expenses.

Thus, the overall effect of a credit policy change is determined by comparing incremental profits with incremental costs. If incremental benefits exceed incremental costs, the policy change is financially justified. If not, the firm must reconsider its decision.

For instance, if a firm extends its credit period to attract more customers, it may achieve higher sales, but if the customers take longer to pay, the firm will need additional financing, increasing interest costs. Thus, receivables management requires a careful balancing act between sales expansion and risk containment.

19.7 COLLECTION PROCEDURES AND RECEIVABLES MONITORING

Once credit is extended, the focus shifts to ensuring timely payment. Collection procedures aim to convert receivables into cash as quickly and efficiently as possible. A systematic collection policy ensures that overdue accounts are identified early and acted upon promptly. Firms typically follow a graduated approach—beginning with polite reminders,

followed by phone calls, formal notices, suspension of supply, and legal proceedings as a last resort.

Monitoring the quality of receivables is equally important. Financial managers rely on tools such as ageing schedules, which categorize receivables by the length of time outstanding; the average collection period (ACP); and the Days Sales Outstanding (DSO). These metrics help detect deteriorating payment patterns, identify problematic customers, and evaluate the effectiveness of the credit policy. Advanced systems provide daily dashboards that alert managers to overdue accounts or patterns of delinquency.

Companies like Asian Paints and Coca-Cola India maintain highly integrated receivables systems that automatically trigger reminders and escalate overdue cases. Such systems ensure that collection efforts are timely, consistent, and effective without damaging customer relationships.

19.8 CONTROL OF BAD DEBTS

Bad debts represent the portion of receivables that cannot be collected. They directly reduce profits and can create severe liquidity problems if they constitute a significant share of credit sales. Effective control of bad debts begins with thorough credit evaluation and prudent credit limits. However, even with these precautions, some defaults are inevitable, particularly during economic downturns or in industries prone to volatility.

The firm must therefore develop a robust framework for managing and minimizing bad debts. This includes regular monitoring of receivables, early identification of overdue accounts, and timely initiation of collection efforts. Financial ratios like receivables turnover, ageing analysis, and customer-wise payment track records help in identifying accounts likely to turn delinquent.

Additionally, firms may adopt tools such as factoring, invoice discounting, credit insurance, and collateralization to mitigate credit risk. Factoring allows the firm to transfer receivables to a third party at a discount, thereby converting credit sales into immediate cash and reducing exposure to defaults. Credit insurance protects firms against catastrophic losses arising from customer bankruptcy or prolonged default.

Ultimately, controlling bad debts requires a combination of strong credit evaluation, efficient monitoring, and timely corrective action. Firms must treat credit sales not merely as a marketing incentive but as an investment that requires careful appraisal and ongoing supervision.

19.9. NUMERICAL PROBLEMS (WITH SOLUTIONS)

Problem 1 : Effect of Relaxing Credit Standards
A firm's data:

- Current annual credit sales = ₹20,00,000
- Contribution margin = 25%
- Proposed increase in credit period from 30 to 45 days → expected sales increase by 10%
- Bad debts increase from 1% to 3%
- Cost of capital = 12%

Solution:
Sales increase = 10% of 20,00,000 = ₹2,00,000
Incremental contribution = 2,00,000 × 0.25 = ₹50,000

Incremental bad debts = New BD – Old BD
= (3% × 22,00,000) – (1% × 20,00,000)
= 66,000 – 20,000 = ₹46,000

Incremental receivables:
Old ACP = 30 days
New ACP = 45 days
Receivables = (45 − 30)/360 × 22,00,000
= 15/360 × 22,00,000 = ₹91,667

Financing cost = 91,667 × 0.12 = ₹11,000
Net Benefit
= Incremental contribution – bad debts – financing cost
= 50,000 – 46,000 – 11,000
= –₹7,000 (loss)
Conclusion: Do NOT extend credit.

Problem 2 : Cash Discount Evaluation
Terms: 2/10, net 30
Average collection period = 30 days
Annual credit sales = ₹18 lakh
60% customers will take discount.
Contribution margin = 30%.

Solution:
Discount customers pay in 10 days → reduces receivables.
Receivables before discount:
= 30/360 × 18,00,000 = ₹1,50,000
After introducing discount:
Receivables =
(10/360 × 60% × 18,00,000)

- (30/360 × 40% × 18,00,000)
  = 30,000 + 60,000 = ₹90,000

Reduction = 1,50,000 – 90,000 = ₹60,000
Financing savings = 60,000 × 0.12 = ₹7,200
Cost of discount = 2% × 60% × 18,00,000
= ₹21,600
Net impact = 7,200 – 21,600 = –₹14,400
Not advisable.

Problem 3 : Credit Policy Comparison Using Incremental Analysis
A company, Electra Motors Ltd., currently follows a net-30 credit policy. Management is considering relaxing the credit period to net-45 to increase sales. The following data are available:
Current Situation (Policy A)

- Annual credit sales: ₹40,00,000
- Average collection period: 30 days
- Bad-debt losses: 1% of sales
- Variable cost ratio: 70%

- Required return on investment (cost of capital): 14%

Proposed Policy (Policy B – Net-45)

- Expected increase in sales: 20%
- New bad-debt loss rate: 3%
- Average collection period expected: 45 days
- No change in selling price or cost structure.

Required:

1. Evaluate whether the credit period should be extended from 30 to 45 days.
2. Use incremental analysis:
    - Incremental contribution
    - Incremental investment in receivables
    - Incremental bad debts
    - Financing cost
    - Net benefit or loss

SOLUTION — STEP BY STEP (FULLY WORKED)

STEP 1: Compute New Sales Under Proposed Policy

Increase = 20% of ₹40,00,000

$$\text{Increase in Sales} = 0.20 \times 40{,}00{,}000 = ₹8{,}00{,}000$$

$$\text{New Sales} = 40{,}00{,}000 + 8{,}00{,}000 = ₹48{,}00{,}000$$

STEP 2: Compute Incremental Contribution Margin

Contribution % = 1 − Variable cost ratio

= 1 − 0.70 = 30%

Incremental Contribution = 30% of ₹8,00,000

$$= 0.30 \times 8{,}00{,}000 = ₹2{,}40{,}000$$

STEP 3: Compute Investment in Receivables

A. Under Present Policy (30 days)

$$\text{Receivables} = \frac{30}{360} \times 40{,}00{,}000$$

$$= \frac{1}{12} \times 40{,}00{,}000 = ₹3{,}33{,}333$$

B. Under Proposed Policy (45 days)

$$\text{Receivables} = \frac{45}{360} \times 48{,}00{,}000 = \frac{1}{8} \times 48{,}00{,}000$$

$$= ₹6{,}00{,}000$$

C. Incremental Receivables

$$\Delta\text{Receivables} = 6{,}00{,}000 - 3{,}33{,}333 = ₹2{,}66{,}667$$

STEP 4: Compute Financing Cost on Additional Receivables

Cost of capital = 14%

$$\text{Financing Cost} = 2{,}66{,}667 \times 0.14 = ₹37{,}333$$

STEP 5: Compute Incremental Bad-Debt Losses

Under current policy:

$$0.01 \times 40{,}00{,}000 = ₹40{,}000$$

Under proposed policy:

$$0.03 \times 48{,}00{,}000 = ₹1{,}44{,}000$$

Incremental Bad Debt

$$1{,}44{,}000 - 40{,}000 = ₹1{,}04{,}000$$

STEP 6: Compute Net Benefit (Incremental Profit)

Net Benefit = Incremental Contribution − Incremental Bad Debts − Financing Cost

Substitute:

$$= 2{,}40{,}000 - 1{,}04{,}000 - 37{,}333$$
$$= 98{,}667$$

FINAL DECISION :Since Net Benefit = ₹98,667 (positive), relaxing the credit policy to net-45 is financially justified. Electra Motors Ltd. should adopt the proposed credit policy, as it increases overall profit despite higher bad-debt losses and investment in receivables.

✓ SUMMARY OF FINDINGS

Component	Amount (₹)
Incremental Contribution	2,40,000
Incremental Bad Debts	(1,04,000)
Incremental Financing Cost	(37,333)
Net Benefit	98,667

Decision: Accept the new credit policy (Net-45).

A. PROBLEM 4 (Multiple Credit Policy Options)

A company, Galaxy Pipes Ltd., currently sells on net-30 terms. The management is considering three alternative credit policies to increase sales in a competitive market. The following information is available:

Current Policy (Policy A: Net 30)

Annual credit sales: ₹60,00,000

Average collection period: 30 days

Bad-debt losses: 1% of sales

Variable cost ratio: 70%

Required return on receivables (cost of capital): 15%

Proposed Policies

Policy B – Net-45

- Expected sales increase: 10%
- Average collection period: 45 days
- Bad debts: 2% of sales

Policy C – Net-60

- Expected sales increase: 25%
- Average collection period: 60 days

- Bad debts: 5% of sales

Policy D – 2/10, net-30 with discount

- Expected sales increase: 15%
- 50% of customers will take discount
- Bad debts: 1.5%
- Customers not taking discount pay in 30 days
- Customers taking discount pay in 10 days

REQUIRED

Use incremental analysis to determine which credit policy is best:

- Incremental sales & contribution
- Incremental bad debts
- Investment in receivables
- Financing cost
- Net benefit

Assume 360-day year.

COMPLETE SOLUTION

STEP 1: Current Policy Values

(Current Sales = ₹60,00,000)

Contribution margin = 1 – VC ratio = 1 – 0.70 = 30%

$$\text{Current Receivables} = \frac{30}{360} \times 60,00,000 = ₹5,00,000$$

$$\text{Current Bad Debts} = 0.01 \times 60,00,000 = ₹60,000$$

POLICY B – NET-45

1. New Sales

$$\text{Sales} = 60,00,000 \times 1.10 = ₹66,00,000$$

Incremental Sales = ₹6,00,000

2. Incremental Contribution

$$0.30 \times 6,00,000 = ₹1,80,000$$

3. Bad Debts

$$\text{New BD} = 0.02 \times 66,00,000 = ₹1,32,000$$

Incremental BD = 1,32,000 – 60,000 = ₹72,000

4. Receivables Investment

$$\text{New AR} = \frac{45}{360} \times 66,00,000 = ₹8,25,000$$

Incremental receivables:

$$= 8,25,000–5,00,000 = ₹3,25,000$$

Financing cost:

$$3,25,000 \times 0.15 = ₹48,750$$

Net Benefit (Policy B)

$$1,80,000 - 72,000 - 48,750 = ₹59,250$$

POLICY C – NET-60

1. New Sales

$$= 60,00,000 \times 1.25 = ₹75,00,000$$

Incremental = ₹15,00,000

2. Contribution

$$0.30 \times 15{,}00{,}000 = ₹4{,}50{,}000$$

3. Bad Debts

$$\text{New BD} = 0.05 \times 75{,}00{,}000 = ₹3{,}75{,}000$$

Incremental BD = 3,75,000 – 60,000 = ₹3,15,000

4. Receivables

$$\text{AR} = \frac{60}{360} \times 75{,}00{,}000 = ₹12{,}50{,}000$$

Incremental:

$$12{,}50{,}000 – 5{,}00{,}000 = ₹7{,}50{,}000$$

Financing cost:

$$7{,}50{,}000 \times 0.15 = ₹1{,}12{,}500$$

Net Benefit (Policy C)

$$4{,}50{,}000 - 3{,}15{,}000 - 1{,}12{,}500 = -₹(-) = -₹(-77{,}500)$$

→ Policy C results in LOSS.

POLICY D – 2/10, NET-30 DISCOUNT POLICY

1. New Sales

$$= 60{,}00{,}000 \times 1.15 = ₹69{,}00{,}000$$

Incremental = ₹9,00,000

2. Contribution

$$0.30 \times 9{,}00{,}000 = ₹2{,}70{,}000$$

3. Bad Debts

$$\text{New BD} = 0.015 \times 69{,}00{,}000 = ₹1{,}03{,}500$$

Incremental BD = 1,03,500 – 60,000 = ₹43,500

4. Receivables Investment

50% pay in 10 days

50% pay in 30 days

$$\text{ACP} = 0.5(10) + 0.5(30) = 20 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{AR} = \frac{20}{360} \times 69{,}00{,}000 = ₹3{,}83{,}333$$

Incremental AR:

$$3{,}83{,}333 – 5{,}00{,}000 = \text{Reduction of } ₹1{,}16{,}667$$

Financing savings:

$$1{,}16{,},{,}667 \times 0.15 = ₹17{,}500 \text{ approx}$$

5. Cost of Discount

$$\text{Discount Customers} = 50\% \times 69{,}00{,}000 = 34{,}50{,}000$$

$$\text{Discount Cost} = 0.02 \times 34{,}50{,}000 = ₹69{,}000$$

Net Benefit (Policy D)

$$\text{Net Benefit} = 2{,}70{,}000 - 43{,}500 + 17{,}500 - 69{,}000$$

$$= ₹1{,}75{,}{,}000$$

FINAL RECOMMENDATION

Policy	Net Benefit
A (Current)	baseline
B: Net-45	+₹59,250
C: Net-60	–₹77,500 (LOSS)
D: 2/10, net-30	+₹1,75,000 (BEST)

The best policy is Policy D – 2/10, net-30 with cash discount, because it generates the highest net benefit.

FULL NUMERICAL ASSIGNMENT

Problem 1 — Simple ACP Calculation
A firm has credit sales of ₹12,00,000 and average receivables of ₹1,50,000.
Find the average collection period (ACP).

Problem 2 — Impact of New Credit Period
Sales = ₹18,00,000
Variable cost = 70%
Credit period increased from 30 to 45 days → sales increase 8%
Cost of capital = 12%
Bad debts rise from 1% to 2%.
Should the firm relax credit policy?

Problem 3 — Cost of Discount
Terms: 2/10, net 30
80% customers take discount
Sales = ₹24,00,000
Find cost of discount and new ACP.

Problem 4 — Change in Credit Standards
Current bad debts = 1%, proposed = 3%
Sales increase from ₹20,00,000 to ₹25,00,000
Contribution margin = 40%
Evaluate whether change is beneficial.

Problem 5 — Receivables Turnover
Credit sales = ₹48,00,000
Receivables turnover = 8 times
Find ACP and receivables amount.

Problem 6 — Advanced Incremental Receivables
Sales increase = ₹12,00,000
New ACP = 60 days
Old ACP = 30 days
Contribution margin = 25%
Cost of capital = 14%
Bad debts increase by ₹25,000
Find net benefit.

Problem 7 — Discount vs Non-discount Customers
Terms: 3/15 net 45
40% customers pay in 15 days
Remaining 60% pay in 45 days
Sales = ₹36,00,000
Compute:

(a) ACP
(b) Receivables investment

Problem 8 — Factoring Decision
A factor offers:

- 2% commission
- 80% advance on receivables
- Bad-debt protection
  Current ACP = 60 days → reduced to 40 days with factoring
  Sales = ₹90,00,000
  Cost of capital = 15%

Should the firm accept factoring?

Problem 9 — Sensitivity Analysis
Given:
Contribution = ₹4,00,000
Bad debts = ₹1,00,000
Cost of capital = 12%
ACP changes from 40 to 55 days
Perform sensitivity analysis to see how net benefit changes if:

- sales rise by 5%, 10%, 15%
- bad debts rise by 1%, 2%, 3%

19.10. SUMMARY

Receivables management is essential for balancing liquidity and profitability. It includes establishing credit standards, determining credit terms, evaluating customers, performing cost–benefit analysis, monitoring collections, and minimizing bad debts. Effective management can significantly shorten the cash conversion cycle and reduce financial risk.

19. 11. KEY WORDS

Receivables, Ageing Schedule, Credit Standards, Credit Terms, Bad Debts, DSO, Factoring, Credit Evaluation.

19. 12 SELF-ASSESSMENT QUESTIONS

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (WITH ANSWERS)

1. Receivables arise due to:
a) Delay in payment to suppliers
b) Credit sales made to customers
c) Cash sales
d) Depreciation charges
Answer: b

2. The primary objective of receivables management is to:
a) Maximize cash balance
b) Minimize inventory

c) Optimize trade-off between sales and credit risk
d) Increase fixed assets
Answer: c

3. “2/10, net 30” means:
a) 2% discount for payment within 30 days
b) 2% discount for payment within 10 days; otherwise full amount in 30 days
c) Payment must be made in 2 days
d) No discount is offered
Answer: b

4. The credit standard refers to:
a) The length of the credit period
b) Minimum criteria customers must satisfy to obtain credit
c) The amount of discount offered
d) Steps taken in collection
Answer: b

5. Relaxing credit standards generally leads to:
a) Higher sales and lower receivables
b) Higher sales and higher receivables
c) Lower sales and lower receivables
d) No change in receivables
Answer: b

6. Which of the following tools is used for monitoring receivables?
a) EOQ
b) Ageing schedule
c) Economic value added
d) Capital structure ratio
Answer: b

7. A firm offering cash discounts does so primarily to:
a) Reduce selling price
b) Encourage early payments
c) Increase inventory turnover
d) Increase bad-debt losses
Answer: b

8. Bad-debt losses are likely to increase when:
a) Credit standards become stricter
b) Collection procedures become more aggressive
c) Credit periods are extended
d) Discount is offered
Answer: c

9. The cost of funds tied up in receivables is measured using:
a) Contribution margin
b) Cost of capital

c) Liquidity ratio
d) Market capitalization
Answer: b

10. Evaluating credit applicants using "5 Cs" does NOT include:
a) Character
b) Conditions
c) Capacity
d) Consumption
Answer: d

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

1. Define receivables and explain how they arise.
2. What are credit standards?
3. Explain the 5 Cs of credit evaluation.
4. Why is ageing schedule important?
5. What is the cost of extending credit?
6. What is collection effectiveness index?
7. State two methods of controlling bad debts.
8. What is meant by credit terms?

LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS

1. Explain the objectives and importance of receivables management.
2. Describe the components of a firm's credit policy.
3. Explain the process of evaluating credit applicants.
4. Discuss the cost–benefit analysis involved in credit policy changes.
5. Explain collection procedures and bad debt control systems.

CASE STUDY: Zenith Electronics Ltd

Background: Zenith Electronics manufactures home appliances and sells through 400+ dealers in India. Due to aggressive competition, Zenith relaxed its credit terms from "net 30" to "net 45" and introduced a cash discount of 1.5% for payment within 10 days. Sales increased by 15%, but receivables doubled, bad debts rose, and the firm faced cash shortages.

Discussion Questions:

1. What mistakes did Zenith make in modifying credit policy?
2. Compute the impact of relaxing credit terms (data will be given if needed).
3. Should Zenith continue the current credit terms?
4. Suggest methods to control rising bad debts.
5. Recommend appropriate collection strategies.

19.16. REFERENCES

- Prasanna Chandra – *Financial Management*, McGraw Hill, 2020
- I.M. Pandey – *Financial Management*, Vikas Publishing, 2019
- Van Horne – *Financial Management and Policy*, Pearson, 2016
- Brigham & Ehrhardt – *Financial Management: Theory & Practice*, Cengage, 2021

Prof. R. Siva Rama Prasad

LESSON – 20

INVENTORY MANAGEMENT

OBJECTIVES

After completing this lesson, learners will be able to:

- Understand the nature, meaning, and classification of inventory.
- Appreciate the strategic importance of inventory in business operations.
- Explain the objectives and functions of inventory management.
- Understand and apply classical models such as EOQ and reorder-point models.
- Explain selective control techniques such as ABC, VED, and FSN analysis.
- Understand modern approaches like JIT, Kanban, MRP, ERP, and SCM-based inventory control.
- Analyse the concept of safety stock and inventory turnover.
- Evaluate the financial and operational implications of inventory decisions.
- Solve numerical problems relating to EOQ, reorder levels, and safety stocks.
- Apply concepts to real-world supply chain and operations scenarios.

20.0 STRUCTURE OF THE LESSON

20.1 INTRODUCTION

In every production or service organization, inventory represents the essential materials, components, goods, or supplies that support the continuity of operations. The presence of inventory helps bridge the gap between the timing of supply and the timing of demand. Without inventory, most organizations would face regular disruptions in the flow of production, irregular deliveries to customers, or costly last-minute procurement. Inventory

therefore serves as a buffer between different stages of the supply chain, ensuring smooth operations and uninterrupted production.

However, maintaining inventory is not without cost. While inventory ensures safety against uncertainty and demand fluctuations, it also ties up a considerable amount of capital. Money blocked in inventory could otherwise have been invested in productive ventures, earning returns for the firm. In addition, excessive inventory leads to storage costs, obsolescence, wastage, and risk of spoilage. On the other hand, too little inventory exposes the firm to stockouts, production stoppages, delays, and customer dissatisfaction. Inventory management therefore serves the dual purpose of ensuring operational continuity while minimizing the cost of holding and maintaining inventory.

In the modern business environment, inventory management has evolved significantly. With the growth of global supply chains, longer lead times, complex product varieties, and demand uncertainty, inventory management has become a strategic function. Organizations like Toyota, Dell, Walmart, Amazon, and Asian Paints have demonstrated how excellence in inventory management can lead to competitive advantages through reduced costs, improved customer service, and greater responsiveness.

Thus, inventory management today is not merely a clerical or warehouse-related activity, but a sophisticated managerial process involving forecasting, procurement planning, material coordination, scientific classification, cost optimization, real-time analytics, and advanced technology systems.

20.2 NATURE AND MEANING OF INVENTORY

Inventory can be defined as the stock of goods, raw materials, and other resources held by an organization for future production or sales. It includes everything that the organization possesses at any point in time to support its operations. The nature of inventory is such that it enables the decoupling of different stages of operations. For example, in manufacturing, the supplier of raw materials, the production department, and the sales department operate at different paces. Inventory ensures that variations in one stage do not interrupt the others.

Inventories also represent a trade-off between risk and efficiency. They help protect firms from uncertainties in supply times, variations in customer demand, delays in transportation, and unexpected shortages. At the same time, maintaining large inventories can be inefficient and expensive, especially in industries where products become obsolete quickly, such as electronics, fashion, or pharmaceuticals.

Nature of inventory also varies with the industry. In manufacturing, inventories represent raw materials, components, work-in-progress, and finished goods. In retail, inventory may consist of merchandise purchased for resale. In service organizations like hospitals, hotels, and airlines, inventory includes consumables, supplies, and spare parts necessary for uninterrupted service delivery.

Thus, inventory is both a necessary asset for operational continuity and a financial investment requiring careful management.

20.3 TYPES AND CLASSIFICATION OF INVENTORY

Inventories are generally classified into several categories depending on their role in operations. Understanding the types of inventory allows managers to design appropriate control systems for each category.

Raw materials represent the basic inputs purchased from suppliers. These materials undergo transformation through manufacturing processes. Raw material inventories serve as a buffer to ensure that production does not stop due to late deliveries or fluctuations in supply.
Work-in-progress (WIP) consists of partially completed units in various stages of production. The value of WIP depends on the extent of processing. High WIP levels indicate bottlenecks or inefficiencies in production flow, while low WIP levels reflect streamlined processes.
Finished goods represent completed products ready for sale to customers. These inventories play a crucial role in meeting market demand. Industries like FMCG, automobile, and electronics maintain significant finished-good inventories to ensure timely customer delivery.
Maintenance, Repair, and Operating (MRO) supplies include lubricants, tools, spare parts, packaging materials, and other items needed to maintain production facilities and service operations.
Some organizations also maintain pipeline or transit inventory, representing materials in transit between locations.
Selective control techniques (ABC, VED, FSN) classify inventory based on value, criticality, and movement characteristics, helping managers allocate more attention to items that matter most.

20.4 OBJECTIVES AND IMPORTANCE OF INVENTORY MANAGEMENT

The objective of inventory management is to maintain an adequate and efficient level of inventory that ensures smooth functioning of operations while keeping costs under control. Inventory management aims to balance two conflicting goals—minimizing investment in inventory and ensuring that inventory is available whenever required.
A vital objective is to ensure continuity in production and sales. Without adequate inventory, production processes may halt, sales may be lost, and customers may turn to competitors. This is especially important in industries such as automotive, pharmaceuticals, and FMCG, where uninterrupted supply is critical.
Another important objective is cost reduction. Inventory holding costs—covering warehousing, insurance, deterioration, pilferage, and obsolescence—can be substantial. By optimizing inventory levels using scientific tools such as EOQ, reorder points, and ABC analysis, firms can significantly reduce costs.
Inventory management also supports better cash flow. Money tied up in inventory cannot be used elsewhere. Therefore, reducing inventory levels improves liquidity and working capital efficiency.
In addition, inventory management enhances responsiveness to customer demand. Companies like Dell and Amazon have built global reputations by delivering products quickly through sophisticated inventory strategies and warehouse networks.
Thus, effective inventory management contributes to profitability, efficiency, customer satisfaction, and overall competitiveness.

20.5 INVENTORY COSTS: ORDERING, CARRYING AND SHORTAGE COSTS

Inventory levels influence several types of costs, and understanding these costs is fundamental to determining optimal inventory policies.
Ordering costs are the costs associated with placing and receiving orders. These include administrative expenses, processing purchase orders, follow-up and communication costs, inspection and handling, and transportation charges. For manufacturing firms, setup costs—expenses incurred in preparing machines for production—are analogous to ordering costs.

Carrying (or holding) costs refer to the expenses incurred for holding inventory. These consist of storage charges, rent, insurance, deterioration, obsolescence, interest on capital, and losses due to theft or pilferage. Carrying costs generally increase with the quantity of inventory held. Shortage or stockout costs arise when inventory is insufficient to meet demand. Stockouts lead to lost sales, production stoppages, customer dissatisfaction, and sometimes damage to the firm's reputation. In industries where customer loyalty is low, stockouts can lead to permanent loss of customers.

The goal of inventory management is to minimize the total inventory cost by finding an optimal balance between these three categories of costs. The Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model is built on this principle.

20.6 THE ECONOMIC ORDER QUANTITY (EOQ) MODEL

The EOQ model is one of the most widely applied inventory management tools. It identifies the replenishment quantity that minimizes the total cost of inventory by balancing ordering costs and carrying costs. EOQ is based on the assumption that demand is constant, lead times are known, and orders are replenished instantaneously.

The EOQ formula is:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

Where:

D = annual demand

S = ordering cost per order

H = carrying cost per unit per year

The EOQ model shows that ordering too frequently results in higher ordering costs, while ordering too much results in higher carrying costs. EOQ identifies the point where both costs are minimized, leading to the lowest total cost.

Although simple, the EOQ model forms the foundation for advanced models used in modern supply chains. Even companies using ERP systems or JIT principles often begin planning with EOQ-based estimates.

20.7 REORDER LEVEL, SAFETY STOCK AND LEAD TIME

The reorder level indicates the point at which a new order must be placed to avoid stockouts. It depends on daily usage and lead time—the time taken for an order to be delivered after it is placed.

$$Reorder\ Point = (Daily\ Demand \times Lead\ Time) + Safety\ Stock$$

Safety stock is additional inventory held to protect against uncertainties in demand or lead time. Industries facing high demand variability or supply chain disruptions—such as electronics, pharma raw materials, and seasonal FMCG—maintain higher safety stock.

Lead time plays a critical role. Longer or unpredictable lead times force firms to carry more safety stock. Companies like Walmart and Amazon use advanced forecasting to reduce safety stocks while maintaining high availability.

20.8 ABC, VED AND FSN ANALYSES (Selective Inventory Control)

Selective inventory control techniques help organizations focus managerial attention on critical items.

ABC analysis classifies inventory into three categories based on consumption value.

- "A" items are few in number but high in value (e.g., expensive machinery parts).
- "B" items have moderate value.
- "C" items are numerous but low in value.

This technique helps allocate resources efficiently. Companies give strict control to "A" items (tight records, continuous review), moderate control to "B," and simplified procedures for "C."
VED analysis classifies inventory based on criticality:
Vital (V), Essential (E), and Desirable (D).
Hospitals, airlines, and power plants rely heavily on VED analysis.
FSN analysis classifies items based on movement:
Fast-moving (F), Slow-moving (S), Non-moving (N).
These analyses are complementary and are often used together.

20.9 JUST-IN-TIME (JIT) AND KANBAN

Just-in-Time (JIT) is a Japanese inventory philosophy pioneered by Toyota. It aims to reduce inventory to the lowest possible level by producing and delivering components exactly when they are needed. JIT requires high-quality suppliers, stable production schedules, and flawless communication.
Kanban is a signaling system used to manage the flow of materials in JIT systems. It uses cards or digital signals to indicate when replenishment is required.
Organizations like Toyota, Honda, Maruti Suzuki, and Dell have mastered JIT to eliminate waste and improve manufacturing efficiency.

20.10 MODERN APPROACHES: MRP, ERP, AND VMI

Material Requirements Planning (MRP) is a computerized system that determines the timing and quantities of materials required for production. It uses the master production schedule to plan raw material purchases.
ERP systems integrate procurement, inventory, finance, and production to provide real-time information. Companies like Tata Steel, P&G, and Nestlé rely on ERP for global inventory optimization.
Vendor-Managed Inventory (VMI) allows suppliers to manage inventory levels for retailers.
This system is used by Walmart, Amazon, and Big Bazaar.

20.11 INVENTORY TURNOVER RATIO

The inventory turnover ratio measures how efficiently inventory is used.

$$Inventory\ Turnover = \frac{Cost\ of\ Goods\ Sold}{Average\ Inventory}$$

A high turnover indicates efficient inventory use; a low turnover indicates overstocking or obsolete goods.
Walmart and Amazon exhibit high turnover ratios due to streamlined supply chains.

20.12NUMERICAL PROBLEMS :

Problem 1 — Basic EOQ (Economic Order Quantity)
Data: Annual demand $D = 72{,}000$units. Ordering cost per order $S = ₹200$. Unit cost $C = ₹30$. Annual carrying cost rate $h = 20\%$of unit cost.

Find: EOQ, number of orders per year, and total annual inventory cost (ordering + holding). (Ignore purchase cost which is constant.)

Solution 1

First compute annual holding cost per unit:

$$H = h \times C = 0.20 \times 30 = ₹6 \text{ per unit per year}$$

EOQ formula:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H}}$$

Compute numerator $2DS = 2 \times 72{,}000 \times 200 = 28{,}800{,}000$.

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{28{,}800{,}000}{6}} = \sqrt{4{,}800{,}000}$$

Compute square root: $\sqrt{4{,}800{,}000}$.

We can compute: $4{,}800{,}000 = 48 \times 10^5$. Square root approx = $\sqrt{48} \times 10^{2.5}$. Simpler: use arithmetic: 2189.Let's do exact: 2,189.78...(safe to round)

So

$$EOQ \approx 2{,}190 \text{ units (rounded)}$$

Number of orders per year:

$$N = \frac{D}{EOQ} = \frac{72{,}000}{2{,}190} \approx 32.88 \approx 33 \text{ orders}$$

Average inventory = EOQ / 2 = 1,095 units.

Annual ordering cost = $N \times S \approx 33 \times 200 = ₹6{,}600$.

Annual holding cost = Average inventory × H = $1{,}095 \times 6 = ₹6{,}570$.

Total annual inventory cost (ordering + holding) ≈ $6{,}600 + 6{,}570 = ₹13{,}170$.

Answer: EOQ ≈ 2,190 units, ~33 orders/year, total annual inventory cost ≈ ₹13,170.

Problem 2 — EOQ when carrying cost given as % of unit cost (demonstration)

Data: $D = 36{,}000$units; $S = ₹150$per order; unit cost $C = ₹40$; carrying rate $h = 25\%$.

Find: EOQ and annual carrying cost and ordering cost at EOQ.

Solution 2

Holding cost per unit:

$$H = 0.25 \times 40 = ₹10$$

EOQ:

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 36{,}000 \times 150}{10}} = \sqrt{\frac{10{,}800{,}000}{10}} = \sqrt{1{,}080{,}000}$$

$\sqrt{1{,}080{,}000} \approx 1{,}039.23 \rightarrow$ round 1,039 units.

Number of orders ≈ $36{,}000/1{,}039 \approx 34.6 \approx 35$.

Average inventory = 519.5 units.

Annual ordering cost = 35 × 150 = ₹5,250 (approx).

Annual holding cost = 519.5 × 10 = ₹5,195.

Total ≈ ₹10,445.

Answer: EOQ ≈ 1,039 units, ordering cost ≈ ₹5,250, holding cost ≈ ₹5,195.

Problem 3 — EOQ with Quantity Discount (All-units discount)

A supplier offers unit price discounts:

- ₹50 per unit if order quantity < 2,000
- ₹47 per unit if order quantity ≥ 2,000

Other data: Annual demand $D = 8{,}000$units. Ordering cost $S = ₹120$. Carrying rate $h = 20\%$of unit cost.
Find: Optimal order quantity and total annual cost (purchase + ordering + holding).
Solution 3
We must evaluate EOQ at unit costs and compare to breakpoints.
Case 1: unit cost $C_1 = 50$. Holding cost $H_1 = 0.20 \times 50 = ₹10$.

$$EOQ_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H_1}} = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 8000 \times 120}{10}} = \sqrt{\frac{1{,}920{,}000}{10}} = \sqrt{192{,}000} \approx 438.18 \approx 438$$

EOQ1 = 438 < 2,000 (feasible in price band 1).
Total cost at EOQ1:

- Purchase cost = D × C1 = 8,000 × 50 = ₹400,000
- Ordering cost = (D/EOQ1) × S ≈ (8000/438)×120 ≈ 18.26×120 ≈ ₹2,191
- Holding cost = (EOQ1/2)×H1 ≈ (438/2)×10 = 219×10 = ₹2,190
  Total ≈ 400,000 + 2,191 + 2,190 = ₹404,381

Case 2: check breakpoint Q = 2,000 (lowest order that gets lower price). If order 2,000 or more, price = ₹47. Compute total cost at Q = 2,000 (we should also compute EOQ at new price to see if EOQ falls into band).
Unit cost $C_2 = 47$, holding $H_2 = 9.4$.
EOQ2:

$$EOQ_2 = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 8000 \times 120}{9.4}} = \sqrt{\frac{1{,}920{,}000}{9.4}} = \sqrt{204{,}255.32} \approx 451.95 \approx 452$$

EOQ2 = 452 < 2,000 → EOQ2 does NOT reach discount breakpoint. So the candidate order quantities are either EOQ1 (438) at higher price, or the smallest discount quantity 2,000.
Compute total cost at Q = 2,000 with C2:

- Purchase cost = 8,000 × 47 = ₹376,000
- Ordering cost = (8000/2000) × 120 = 4 × 120 = ₹480
- Holding cost = (2000/2) × 9.4 = 1,000 × 9.4 = ₹9,400
  Total ≈ 376,000 + 480 + 9,400 = ₹385,880

Compare totals:

- At EOQ1 (no discount): ₹404,381
- At Q=2000 (discount): ₹385,880 → lower

Therefore buying in quantities to get discount (Q=2000) yields lower total annual cost.
Answer: Optimal policy: order 2,000 units (take discount). Total annual cost ≈ ₹385,880.
Problem 4 — Economic Production Quantity (EPQ / Production EOQ)
A factory produces a component at production rate $p = 2{,}000$units/month. Demand rate $d = 1{,}200$units/month. Setup cost $S = ₹1{,}000$. Annual holding cost per unit $H = ₹4$. Annualize months: treat 12 months; we can work with rates per year: $p = 24{,}000$, $d = 14{,}400$per year.
Find: EPQ, average inventory, and total annual inventory cost (setup + holding).
Solution 4
EPQ formula:

$$EPQ = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H} \times \frac{p}{p-d}}$$

Here $D = d \times 12 = 14{,}400$(we already have annualized). p = 24,000.
Compute factor $p/(p-d) = 24{,}000/(24{,}000 - 14{,}400) = 24{,}000/9{,}600 = 2.5$.
Compute base EOQ part:

$$\frac{2DS}{H} = \frac{2 \times 14{,}400 \times 1{,}000}{4} = \frac{28{,}800{,}000}{4} = 7{,}200{,}000$$

Multiply by 2.5 → $7{,}200{,}000 \times 2.5 = 18{,}000{,}000$.
EPQ = sqrt(18,000,000) ≈ 4,242.64 → round 4,243 units.
Maximum inventory (when production stops): $EPQ \times (1 - d/p)$.

$$Max\ inventory = 4{,}243 \times (1 - 14{,}400/24{,}000) = 4{,}243 \times (1 - 0.6) = 4{,}243 \times 0.4 = 1{,}697.2 \approx 1{,}697$$

Average inventory = Max inventory / 2 ≈ 848.5 ≈ 849 units.
Annual setups = $D/EPQ = 14{,}400/4{,}243 \approx 3.394 \approx 3.39$setups → cost = 3.394×1,000 = ₹3,394.
Annual holding cost = average inventory × H = 849 × 4 = ₹3,396.
Total inventory cost ≈ 3,394 + 3,396 = ₹6,790 per year.
Answer: EPQ ≈ 4,243 units, average inventory ≈ 849 units, total cost ≈ ₹6,790.
Problem 5 — Deterministic Reorder Point (ROP)
Daily demand = 100 units/day. Lead time = 12 days. Safety stock = 400 units.
Find: Reorder point.
Solution 5
Reorder point = (daily demand × lead time) + safety stock = 100 × 12 + 400 = 1,200 + 400 = 1,600 units.
Answer: ROP = 1,600 units.
Problem 6 — Safety Stock using service level (probabilistic demand during lead time)
A product has average daily demand $\mu_d = 80$units, demand standard deviation per day $\sigma_d = 20$. Lead time $L = 10$days. Manager wants 95% service level (i.e., probability of no stockout during lead time = 0.95). Use z = 1.645.
Find: Safety stock and Reorder Point.
Solution 6
Demand during lead time mean:

$$\mu_L = \mu_d \times L = 80 \times 10 = 800$$

tandard deviation during lead time (assuming independent daily demand):

$$\sigma_L = \sigma_d \times \sqrt{L} = 20 \times \sqrt{10} = 20 \times 3.1623 = 63.246 \approx 63.25$$

Safety stock (SS) = $z \times \sigma_L = 1.645 \times 63.246 \approx 104.0$→ round 104 units.
Reorder Point = mean demand during lead time + safety stock = 800 + 104 = 904 units.
Answer: Safety stock ≈ 104 units; ROP ≈ 904 units.
Problem 7 — Reorder Point with variable lead time
Average demand per week = 2,000 units; standard deviation of weekly demand = 500 units.
Lead time is variable: average lead time = 3 weeks; standard deviation of lead time = 1 week.
We assume demand and lead time variability. Use approximation for variance of demand during lead time:

$$\sigma_{DL}^2 = (\mu_d)^2\sigma_L^2 + (\mu_L)^2\sigma_d^2$$

But simpler standard approximation (when weekly demand variance known):

$$\sigma_{DL} = \sqrt{(L \times \sigma_d^2) + (\mu_d^2 \times \sigma_L^2)}$$

where $\mu_d$mean weekly demand, $\sigma_d$sd weekly, $\mu_L$mean lead time in weeks, $\sigma_L$sd lead time.
Given: $\mu_d = 2{,}000$, $\sigma_d = 500$, $\mu_L = 3$, $\sigma_L = 1$. Desired service level 97.5% (z=1.96).
Find: Safety stock and ROP.
Solution 7
Compute variance term1: $L \times \sigma_d^2 = 3 \times (500^2) = 3 \times 250{,}000 = 750{,}000$.
Term2: $\mu_d^2 \times \sigma_L^2 = (2000^2) \times 1^2 = 4{,}000{,}000$.

So variance demand during lead time:

$$\sigma_{DL}^2 = 750{,}000 + 4{,}000{,}000 = 4{,}750{,}000$$

$$\sigma_{DL} = \sqrt{4{,}750{,}000} \approx 2{,}179.45$$

Safety stock = $z \times \sigma_{DL} = 1.96 \times 2{,}179.45 \approx 4{,}269.72 \approx 4{,}270$ units.
Mean demand during lead time = $\mu_d \times \mu_L = 2{,}000 \times 3 = 6{,}000$.
ROP = 6,000 + 4,270 = 10,270 units.
Answer: Safety stock ≈ 4,270 units; ROP ≈ 10,270 units.
Problem 8 — EOQ with Shortages Allowed (Backordering)
Annual demand $D = 24{,}000$units. Ordering cost $S = ₹250$. Annual holding cost per unit $H = ₹8$. Shortage cost per unit per year $\pi = ₹20$(cost when unit is backordered). Find optimal order quantity and maximum shortage.
EOQ with backorders (optimal Q and maximum backorder B*):
Formulas:

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{H} \times \frac{H+\pi}{\pi}}$$

Maximum shortage (backorder level) $B^* = Q^* \times \frac{H}{H+\pi}$
Solution 8
Compute base:

$$\frac{2DS}{H} = \frac{2 \times 24{,}000 \times 250}{8} = \frac{12{,}000{,}000}{8} = 1{,}500{,}000$$

Multiply by $(H+\pi)/\pi = (8+20)/20 = 28/20 = 1.4$.
So inside sqrt: $1{,}500{,}000 \times 1.4 = 2{,}100{,}000$.

$$Q^* = \sqrt{2{,}100{,}000} \approx 1{,}449.14 \approx 1{,}449 \text{ units}$$

Maximum shortage:

$$B^* = Q^* \times \frac{H}{H+\pi} = 1{,}449.14 \times \frac{8}{28} = 1{,}449.14 \times 0.285714 = 414.04 \approx 414 \text{ units}$$

Average inventory (excluding shortages) = $(Q^* - B^*)^2/(2Q^*)$but simpler avg positive inventory = (Q - B)/2 = (1,449 - 414)/2 = 1,035/2 = 517.5 units.
Total number of orders per year = D/Q* ≈ 24,000/1,449 ≈ 16.57 orders.
Compute annual costs roughly:

- Ordering cost = (D/Q)*S ≈ 16.57 × 250 ≈ ₹4,142
- Holding cost = average inventory × H ≈ 517.5 × 8 ≈ ₹4,140
- Shortage cost = average shortage × π = (B*/2) × π = (414/2)×20 = 207 × 20 = ₹4,140

Interesting: here holding and shortage cost are equal because of formula structure.
Total ≈ 4,142 + 4,140 + 4,140 ≈ ₹12,422.
Answer: $Q^* \approx 1{,}449$units; maximum backorder ≈ 414 units; total annual inventory cost ≈ ₹12,420.
Problem 9 — ABC Classification Example
Given 8 items with annual usage and unit cost:

Item	Annual usage (units)	Unit cost (₹)
A	1,200	1,200
B	2,500	40

Item	Annual usage (units)	Unit cost (₹)
C	800	3,000
D	6,000	10
E	500	2,000
F	10,000	2
G	300	5,000
H	4,000	25

Task: Compute annual consumption value = usage × unit cost, rank items by consumption value, compute cumulative % of consumption value and classify into A (top ~70%), B (~20%), C (~10%). (We'll use approximate splits for teaching).

Solution 9

Compute consumption values:

- A: 1,200×1,200 = ₹1,440,000
- B: 2,500×40 = ₹100,000
- C: 800×3,000 = ₹2,400,000
- D: 6,000×10 = ₹60,000
- E: 500×2,000 = ₹1,000,000
- F: 10,000×2 = ₹20,000
- G: 300×5,000 = ₹1,500,000
- H: 4,000×25 = ₹100,000

Now list items and values:

C: 2,400,000
G: 1,500,000
A: 1,440,000
E: 1,000,000
B: 100,000
H: 100,000
D: 60,000
F: 20,000

Total consumption value:

$$T = 2{,}400{,}000 + 1{,}500{,}000 + 1{,}440{,}000 + 1{,}000{,}000 + 100{,}000 + 100{,}000 + 60{,}000 + 20{,}000 = 6{,}620{,}000$$

Compute cumulative %:

1. C: 2,400,000 / 6,620,000 = 36.24% (cum 36.24%)
2. G: 1,500,000 / 6,620,000 = 22.65% (cum 58.89%)
3. A: 1,440,000 / 6,620,000 = 21.74% (cum 80.63%)
4. E: 1,000,000 / 6,620,000 = 15.10% (cum 95.73%)
5. B: 100,000 / 6,620,000 = 1.51% (cum 97.24%)
6. H: 100,000 → 1.51% (cum 98.76%)
7. D: 60,000 → 0.91% (cum 99.67%)
8. F: 20,000 → 0.30% (cum 99.97%)

Now classify (approx):

- A items: top ~70–80% consumption → C, G, A (cum 80.63%) → Items C, G, A
- B items: next ~15–20% → E (15.10%) maybe include B to reach ~95% → E (and maybe B) → We'll assign E as B (since A already ~80%, B should be next ~15%) → E
- C items: rest → B, H, D, F

Answer:
A-class: Items C, G, A (≈80.6% of value)
B-class: Item E (≈15.1%)
C-class: Items B, H, D, F (remaining ≈4.3%)
Managers then apply strict control to A items, routine controls to B, minimal controls to C.
Problem 10 — Inventory Turnover Ratio & Days of Inventory
A company reports Cost of Goods Sold (COGS) = ₹720 lakh. Average inventory during year = ₹60 lakh.
Find: Inventory turnover and average days inventory on hand (use 360-day year).
Solution 10
Inventory turnover = COGS / Avg inventory = 720 / 60 = 12 times per year.
Days inventory outstanding = 360 / turnover = 360 / 12 = 30 days.
Answer: Turnover = 12, days = 30 days.
Problem 11 — Kanban Card Calculation
A production line consumes a component at average demand 4,000 units per week. Lead time from supplier = 2 weeks. Container size = 200 units per Kanban (i.e., each Kanban holds 200 units). Manager wants safety factor of 20% (to cover variability). Calculate required number of Kanban cards.
Formula:

$$\text{Number of Kanbans} = \frac{D \times L \times (1 + S)}{C}$$

where D= weekly demand, L= lead time in weeks, S= safety fraction, C= container size.
Solution 11
Substitute:

$$D = 4{,}000,\ L = 2,\ S = 0.20,\ C = 200$$

Compute numerator:

$$4{,}000 \times 2 \times (1 + 0.2) = 8{,}000 \times 1.2 = 9{,}600$$

Number of Kanbans = 9,600 / 200 = 48.
Answer: 48 Kanban cards (i.e., 48 containers).
Problem 12 — Service Level vs Safety Stock — small cost trade-off example
A firm sells a component. Annual demand D = 120,000 units (i.e., 10,000 per month ≈ 333.33 per day). Daily demand sd σ_d = 50 units. Lead time = 7 days. Unit cost = ₹100. Annual holding rate h = 18% (so H = 18% × 100 = ₹18 per unit per year). Stockout cost per unit (penalty from lost sales including goodwill) is estimated at ₹900 per unit of unmet demand during lead time. We want to evaluate safety stock at z=1.28 (90% service) and z=1.645 (95% service). Compare approximate annual carrying cost of safety stock and expected stockout cost (approximation: expected units short per lead time ≈ φ(z)σL − (z)(1−Φ(z))σL? To keep it simple, we use the approximation that expected shortage per lead time ≈ (σL) × L(z) where L(z)= (standard loss function) — but for brevity we'll approximate expected stockouts per year ≈ (D/lead_periods_per_year) × probability of stockout × average shortage ≈ use simpler

method: approximate probability of stockout = 1 − Φ(z), and approximate average shortage when stockout occurs ≈ σL.)
We will do a simplified comparison: annual carrying cost of safety stock = SS × H; expected stockout cost per year ≈ (Number of lead time periods per year) × (probability of stockout per lead time) × (average shortage per stockout) × penalty. For approximate average shortage use 0.8 × σL (rule of thumb). This is an illustrative management exercise.
Find: For z=1.28 and z=1.645 compute SS, carrying cost, approximate expected stockout cost, and recommend z.

Solution 12

First compute demand during lead time SD:
σL = σ_d × sqrt(L) = 50 × sqrt(7) = 50 × 2.6458 = 132.29 ≈ 132.3 units.
Now compute SS for each z:

- For z=1.28 (≈90%): SS = z × σL = 1.28 × 132.3 ≈ 169.34 ≈ 169 units.
- For z=1.645 (95%): SS = 1.645 × 132.3 ≈ 217.69 ≈ 218 units.

Annual holding cost per unit H = ₹18. So annual carrying cost for safety stock:

- z=1.28: Carrying cost = 169 × 18 = ₹3,042 per year.
- z=1.645: Carrying cost = 218 × 18 = ₹3,924 per year.

Now approximate expected stockout cost.
Number of lead time periods per year = 360 / lead time (days). Lead time is 7 days → periods = 360/7 ≈ 51.43 lead-time periods per year.
Probability of stockout per lead time = 1 − Φ(z):

- z=1.28 → 1 − Φ(1.28) ≈ 1 − 0.8997 = 0.1003
- z=1.645 → 1 − Φ(1.645) ≈ 1 − 0.9500 = 0.05

Average shortage per stockout (approx) use 0.8 × σL (rule of thumb) = 0.8 × 132.3 = 105.84 units.
Expected stockout units per year ≈ lead periods × prob × avg shortage:

- z=1.28: units ≈ 51.43 × 0.1003 × 105.84 ≈ compute: 51.43×0.1003=5.16; ×105.84 ≈ 546.1 units/year.
- z=1.645: units ≈ 51.43 × 0.05 × 105.84 = 2.5715 × 105.84 ≈ 272.9 units/year.

Stockout penalty per unit = ₹900.
Expected annual stockout cost:

- z=1.28: 546.1 × 900 ≈ ₹491,490
- z=1.645: 272.9 × 900 ≈ ₹245,610

Now compute total relevant cost (carrying SS + expected stockout cost):

- z=1.28: 3,042 + 491,490 = ₹494,532
- z=1.645: 3,924 + 245,610 = ₹249,534

Comparison: Lower total cost at z=1.645 (95% service). The saving is large because stockout penalty is very high relative to holding cost.
Recommendation: Choose z ≈1.645 (95% service) because although carrying cost increases slightly, expected stockout costs fall substantially, reducing total expected cost.
Note: This is an illustrative approximation. A rigorous expected shortage calculation uses the loss function L(z) with exact integrals. But the exercise shows how trade off between holding and stockout costs is evaluated.

20.13. SUMMARY

Inventory management is the managerial and operational discipline of deciding what quantities of items to hold, when to replenish them, how to control their levels, and how to minimize the total costs associated with ordering, holding and stockouts while ensuring timely

supply to production and customers. Inventory exists to decouple production from supply and demand, to provide buffer against uncertainty in lead time and demand, and to permit economies of scale in procurement and production.

The key objectives of inventory management are continuity of operations, minimization of total inventory-related costs, efficient use of working capital, and achieving required service levels. To attain these objectives, managers rely on analytical models and classification techniques. The Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model mathematically balances ordering costs and carrying costs to identify the order size that minimizes total inventory cost under deterministic demand and known lead times. Its production analogue, the Economic Production Quantity (EPQ), incorporates the production rate and shows how lot-sizing changes when production and consumption occur simultaneously.

Selective control techniques such as ABC (value-based classification), VED (criticality), and FSN (movement-based classification) ensure that managerial effort and control resources are concentrated on items that matter most. Reorder point policies determine the precise moment to place orders taking lead time and safety stock into account. Safety stock itself is a function of demand variability, lead time variability, and the target service level: higher desired service levels require more safety stock and greater carrying costs.

Modern inventory strategies extend beyond static models. Just-in-Time (JIT) and Kanban systems strive to reduce inventory to minimal levels by synchronizing supply with demand, relying on high-quality suppliers, rapid replenishment, and precise scheduling. Enterprise systems—MRP and ERP—provide planning, visibility, and coordination across procurement, production, and sales. Vendor-managed inventory (VMI), consignment stocks, and collaborative planning are collaborative practices that shift some inventory responsibilities to suppliers, driving efficiencies across the supply chain.

Inventory metrics such as inventory turnover and days of inventory outstanding measure operational efficiency and financial intensity of inventory. Practical decisions must reconcile competing objectives — low costs, high availability, and flexibility — and require trade-offs that are evaluated through numerical analyses, scenario planning, and cross-functional coordination between procurement, operations, and finance.

20.14 KEY WORDS

1. Inventory; 2. Raw Materials; 3. Work-in-Progress (WIP); 4. Finished Goods; 5. Inventory Classification; 6. Inventory Management; 7. Ordering Cost; 8. Carrying Cost; 9. Holding Cost; 10. Shortage Cost; 11. Stockout Cost; 12. Economic Order Quantity (EOQ); 13. Reorder Level; 14. Safety Stock; 15. Lead Time; 16. ABC Analysis; 17. VED Analysis; 18. FSN Analysis; 19. Just-in-Time (JIT); 20. Japanese Inventory Practices; 21. Material Requirements Planning (MRP); 22. Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP); 23. Vendor-Managed Inventory (VMI); 24. Kanban System; 25. Inventory Turnover Ratio; 26. Optimum Inventory Level; 27. Demand Forecasting; 28. Buffer Stock.

20.15 Self – assessment questions

MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS (15 QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS)

1. Which of the following best describes the main purpose of holding inventory?
   A. To increase storage costs
   B. To decouple supply from demand and ensure continuity of operations
   C. To reduce product variety
   D. To increase lead time
   Answer: B

2. EOQ minimizes the sum of which two costs?
   A. Purchase cost and shortage cost
   B. Ordering cost and purchase cost
   C. Ordering cost and holding cost
   D. Holding cost and shortage cost
   Answer: C
3. In ABC analysis, "A" items typically represent:
   A. Low value, high volume items
   B. High value, low volume items
   C. Items with zero consumption
   D. Items that are non-essential
   Answer: B
4. The reorder point formula under deterministic demand is:
   A. EOQ × Lead time
   B. (Daily demand × Lead time) + Safety stock
   C. Annual demand / EOQ
   D. Safety stock − Daily demand
   Answer: B
5. Safety stock is primarily held to protect against:
   A. Overstocking for promotional season
   B. Uncertainty in demand and variability in lead time
   C. Reducing carrying costs
   D. Increasing order quantities
   Answer: B
6. Kanban is most closely associated with:
   A. Periodic review systems
   B. Just-in-Time (JIT) production systems
   C. Long-term contracts
   D. Static EOQ models
   Answer: B
7. In an EPQ model, as production rate approaches demand rate, maximum inventory:
   A. Approaches EOQ/2
   B. Decreases to zero
   C. Increases infinitely
   D. Gets multiplied by lead time
   Answer: B
   (Because if p→d, production barely exceeds demand so buildup disappears.)
8. Which classification considers item criticality to operations (e.g., spares for safety systems)?
   A. ABC
   B. FSN
   C. VED
   D. EOQ
   Answer: C
9. A high inventory turnover ratio generally indicates:
   A. Poor inventory management
   B. Efficient use of inventory and fast sales
   C. Excessive stock levels

D. Long production lead times
Answer: B

10. If ordering cost rises, EOQ will:
A. Decrease
B. Increase
C. Remain unchanged
D. Become zero
Answer: B
11. Vendor-managed inventory (VMI) typically shifts which responsibility to suppliers?
A. Managing finished goods sales to end customers
B. Maintaining inventory levels at retailer's location
C. Audit of fixed assets
D. Internal accounting for inventory write-offs
Answer: B
12. The principal disadvantage of JIT is:
A. Lower storage costs
B. Reduced lead times
C. Higher vulnerability to supply disruptions
D. Increased inventory turnover
Answer: C
13. The carrying cost per unit per year H is often expressed as:
A. Unit cost × carrying cost rate
B. Annual demand × unit cost
C. Ordering cost / number of orders
D. Lead time × daily demand
Answer: A
14. Economic Production Quantity (EPQ) differs from EOQ because EPQ:
A. Assumes instantaneous replenishment
B. Assumes continuous consumption and production during replenishment
C. Ignores holding costs
D. Assumes demand is zero
Answer: B
15. In probabilistic inventory models, an increase in desired service level (higher z) will:
A. Reduce safety stock
B. Increase safety stock
C. Not affect safety stock
D. Reduce lead time
Answer: B

SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS (10 QUESTIONS)

1. Define Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) and state its basic assumptions.
2. Explain the difference between EOQ and EPQ.
3. What is safety stock and why is it necessary?
4. How does ABC analysis help in inventory control?
5. What is a reorder point and how is it calculated under deterministic demand?
6. Briefly explain what Kanban cards do in a JIT system.
7. How is inventory turnover ratio computed and what does it indicate?
8. Describe vendor-managed inventory (VMI) in one sentence.

9. What are the main components of holding (carrying) costs?
10. How does lead time variability affect the level of safety stock?

LONG / ESSAY QUESTIONS (10 QUESTIONS)

1. Explain the EOQ model: derive the formula, explain each term, and discuss practical limitations.
2. Discuss the role of safety stock in inventory management. Show, with formulas, how safety stock varies with the desired service level and demand variability.
3. Compare and contrast ABC, VED and FSN classification methods. Explain a situation where each is most useful.
4. Describe the JIT philosophy. Discuss prerequisites for successful JIT implementation and list possible risks.
5. What is the Economic Production Quantity (EPQ) model? Derive the EPQ formula and explain its implications for production scheduling.
6. Explain how MRP and ERP systems transform inventory management in large manufacturing firms. Give examples of functionalities that support inventory optimization.
7. Discuss inventory costs in depth and explain how a firm can trade off ordering, carrying and shortage costs to minimize total inventory cost.
8. Prepare a detailed procedure for setting reorder levels and safety stocks in a company with variable demand and stochastic lead times.
9. Explain quantity discount models and how purchase decisions change when suppliers offer price breaks. Include worked numerical illustrations.
10. Critically evaluate the statement: "Zero inventory is the ideal objective of inventory management." Discuss practical constraints.

CASE STUDY — "FreshFoods Distribution Pvt. Ltd.: Managing Inventory for Seasonal Demand"

Background

FreshFoods Distribution Pvt. Ltd. (FFD) is a regional distributor of fresh fruit and packaged perishables serving supermarkets and grocery chains across three states. Rapid growth over five years has led to a network of 8 distribution centers (DCs). FreshFoods sources directly from farmers and processors, with procurement contracts and spot purchases. The business is seasonal: mangoes and litchis spike in summer months (Apr–Jun), while citrus and apples peak in Nov–Jan. FreshFoods faces the twin challenges of perishability and seasonality.

Key operational facts (annual basis, approximate):

- Annual units sold (all SKUs aggregated) = 3,600,000 units.
- Average lead time from primary suppliers = 6 days (but can vary between 3–12 days during monsoons).
- Average daily demand = 10,000 units/day (on average), but seasonally it ranges between 6,000/day (off-season) and 18,000/day (peak).
- CoGS per unit average = ₹30 (varies by item).
- Ordering (procurement) cost per order = ₹2,000 (includes transport admin, inspection).
- Holding cost rate = 22% p.a. of unit cost (storage, refrigeration, spoilage risk).
- Backorder/stockout cost (estimated lost margin + penalty + spoilage risk) = ₹120 per unit shortage during peak season and ₹40 per unit during off-season.
- Current policy: DCs use a fixed EOQ-based ordering system per SKU with safety stock set to cover 2 days of average demand; no seasonal adjustment. Inventory turnover averages 6 times per year across SKUs.

- FreshFoods currently experiences 8% spoilage on average due to overstocking of perishable items, and occasional stockouts during peaks resulting in emergency air shipments at high cost.

Strategic problems
Management believes:

1. The EOQ system with a flat safety stock is not appropriate given seasonality and perishability.
2. Firm needs to reduce spoilage and emergency shipments while maintaining service levels.
3. There is interest in piloting a vendor-managed inventory (VMI) program with two key suppliers for mangoes and citrus.
4. Management also wants an evaluation of whether to adopt a Kanban-like pull system for packaged, non-perishable SKUs.

Discussion Questions

1. Identify the inventory-related weaknesses in the current approach used by FreshFoods.
2. For a typical perishable SKU with average daily demand = 200 units, lead time = 6 days (sd of lead time = 2 days), daily demand sd = 80 units, compute safety stock for 95% service level and the reorder point. (Show calculations.)
3. Discuss the trade-offs between holding higher safety stock to reduce stockouts and the risk of spoilage. What decision framework would you suggest to balance these costs?
4. How could FreshFoods adjust EOQ or ordering policies to account for seasonality? Give specific recommendations.
5. Evaluate the pros and cons of implementing VMI for seasonal produce (mangoes and citrus) at FreshFoods.
6. Propose a hybrid policy that reduces spoilage while maintaining service levels during peak season. Include collection frequency, order sizes, and supplier agreements.
7. How would you pilot a Kanban approach for non-perishable packaged SKUs? Outline metrics to evaluate the pilot's success.
8. Suggest a set of KPIs (Key Performance Indicators) FreshFoods should track to monitor inventory performance post-intervention.

MODEL ANALYSIS / SUGGESTED ANSWERS (Instructor Guide)

Q1 – Weaknesses:
The flat EOQ with 2-day safety stock ignores seasonality and lead-time variability; it treats perishable SKUs like non-perishables, resulting in high spoilage (8%) and frequent emergency shipments; the system lacks supplier collaboration and dynamic forecasting.
Q2 – Calculation (Safety stock and ROP)
Given: daily mean demand = 200, lead time mean = 6 days, σ_lead = 2 days, σ_daily = 80.
First compute σ_during_LT:

$$\sigma_{LT} = \sqrt{(\mu_d^2 \cdot \sigma_L^2) + (L \cdot \sigma_d^2)}$$
$$= \sqrt{(200^2 \times 2^2) + (6 \times 80^2)} = \sqrt{(40{,}000 \times 4) + (6 \times 6{,}400)} = \sqrt{160{,}000 + 38{,}400}$$
$$= \sqrt{198{,}400} \approx 445.4$$

For 95% service level z ≈ 1.645: Safety stock = z × σ_LT ≈ 1.645 × 445.4 ≈ 732.8 ≈ 733 units.

Mean demand over lead time = 200 × 6 = 1,200 units.
ROP = 1,200 + 733 = 1,933 units.
Q3 – Trade-offs:
High safety stock reduces stockouts but increases holding cost and spoilage risk. For perishables, spoilage cost per unit must be weighed against stockout penalty. Use expected-cost framework: expected total cost = carrying cost + spoilage cost + stockout cost. Minimize expected total cost; apply dynamic safety stock (higher before peak demand but limited by shelf life).
Q4 – Seasonality adjustment:
Use time-phased demand forecast and compute EOQ per season (shorter replenishment cycles with smaller lot sizes during peaks), employ forward buying for longer shelf-life items, and adopt promotions to smooth peaks.
Q5 – VMI evaluation:
Pros: suppliers can better match harvest cycles to demand, reduce lead time variance, share risk. Cons: requires data sharing, trust, and process alignment; suppliers may demand longer contracts.
Q6 – Hybrid policy:
Use smaller, more frequent orders for perishables during peaks, concurrent with vendor capacity commitments; include contingency clauses for emergency supply; set maximum inventory age; set dynamic safety stock tied to shelf life.
Q7 – Kanban pilot:
Select few high-volume, non-perishable SKUs; set Kanban container sizes, compute number of kanbans using demand × lead time × (1 + safety factor) / container size; monitor stockouts, carrying cost, fill rates during pilot.
Q8 – KPIs:
Inventory turnover, days of inventory, spoilage percentage, service level (fill rate), stockout frequency, emergency procurement cost, carrying cost as % of inventory value, order lead time variance.

20.16. REFERENCE BOOKS

1. Chandra, Prasanna. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice.* McGraw-Hill Education, 2020.
2. Pandey, I.M. *Financial Management.* Vikas Publishing House, 2019.
3. Brigham, Eugene F. & Ehrhardt, Michael C. *Financial Management: Theory and Practice.* Cengage Learning, 2021.
4. Van Horne, James C. & Wachowicz Jr., John M. *Fundamentals of Financial Management.* Pearson, 2016.
5. Bhattacharya, Hrishikes. *Working Capital Management: Strategies and Techniques.* PHI Learning, 2008.
6. Sagner, James. *Essentials of Working Capital Management.* Wiley, 2014.
7. Bragg, Steven M. *Treasury Management: The Practitioner's Guide.* Wiley, 2019.
8. Heizer, Jay; Render, Barry; Munson, Chuck. *Operations Management: Sustainability and Supply Chain Management.* Pearson, 2017.
9. Slack, N., Brandon-Jones, A., & Johnston, R. *Operations Management.* Pearson, 2016.
10. Christopher, Martin. *Logistics & Supply Chain Management.* Pearson, 2016.

Prof. R. Siva Rama Prasad